

# 2008 Saturn VUE Owner Manual

<b>Seats and Restraint Systems</b> .....	1-1	<b>Driving Your Vehicle</b> .....	4-1
Head Restraints .....	1-2	Your Driving, the Road, and Your Vehicle .....	4-2
Front Seats .....	1-4	Towing .....	4-41
Rear Seats .....	1-12	<b>Service and Appearance Care</b> .....	5-1
Safety Belts .....	1-14	Service .....	5-3
Child Restraints .....	1-33	Fuel .....	5-5
Airbag System .....	1-55	Checking Things Under the Hood .....	5-10
Restraint System Check .....	1-72	All-Wheel Drive .....	5-41
<b>Features and Controls</b> .....	2-1	Headlamp Aiming .....	5-43
Keys .....	2-3	Bulb Replacement .....	5-46
Doors and Locks .....	2-9	Windshield Wiper Blade Replacement .....	5-50
Windows .....	2-12	Tires .....	5-51
Theft-Deterrent Systems .....	2-14	Appearance Care .....	5-87
Starting and Operating Your Vehicle .....	2-18	Vehicle Identification .....	5-95
Mirrors .....	2-33	Electrical System .....	5-96
OnStar <sup>®</sup> System .....	2-35	Capacities and Specifications .....	5-104
Universal Home Remote System .....	2-38	<b>Maintenance Schedule</b> .....	6-1
Storage Areas .....	2-43	Maintenance Schedule .....	6-2
Sunroof .....	2-49	<b>Customer Assistance Information</b> .....	7-1
<b>Instrument Panel</b> .....	3-1	Customer Assistance and Information .....	7-2
Instrument Panel Overview .....	3-4	Reporting Safety Defects .....	7-14
Climate Controls .....	3-19	Vehicle Data Recording and Privacy .....	7-16
Warning Lights, Gages, and Indicators .....	3-30	<b>Index</b> .....	1
Driver Information Center (DIC) .....	3-49		
Audio System(s) .....	3-52		



SATURN, the SATURN Emblem, and the name VUE are registered trademarks of Saturn Corporation. GENERAL MOTORS and GM are registered trademarks of General Motors Corporation.

This manual includes the latest information at the time it was printed. Saturn reserves the right to make changes after that time without further notice.

This manual describes features that may or may not be on your specific vehicle.

Keep this manual in the vehicle for quick reference.

## Canadian Owners

A French language copy of this manual can be obtained from your dealer/retailer or from:

Helm, Incorporated  
P.O. Box 07130  
Detroit, MI 48207

1-800-551-4123  
[www.helminc.com](http://www.helminc.com)

## Propriétaires Canadiens

On peut obtenir un exemplaire de ce guide en français auprès de concessionnaire ou à l'adresse suivante:

Helm Incorporated  
P.O. Box 07130  
Detroit, MI 48207

1-800-551-4123  
[www.helminc.com](http://www.helminc.com)

## About Driving Your Vehicle

As with other vehicles of this type, failure to operate this vehicle correctly may result in loss of control or an accident. Be sure to read the “on-pavement” and “off-road” driving guidelines in this manual. See *Driving Your Vehicle on page 4-2* and *Off-Road Driving on page 4-15*.

## Using this Manual

Read this owner manual from beginning to end to learn about the vehicle’s features and controls. Pictures and words work together to explain things.

## Index

To quickly locate information about the vehicle use the Index in the back of the manual. It is an alphabetical list of what is in the manual and the page number where it can be found.

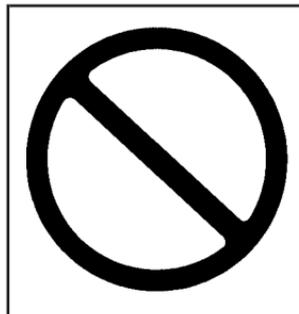
## Safety Warnings and Symbols

There are a number of safety cautions in this book. A box with the word CAUTION is used to tell about things that could hurt you or others if you were to ignore the warning.

### CAUTION:

**These mean there is something that could hurt you or other people.**

Cautions tell what the hazard is and what to do to avoid or reduce the hazard. Read these cautions.



A circle with a slash through it is a safety symbol which means “Do Not,” “Do Not do this” or “Do Not let this happen.”

## Vehicle Damage Warnings

Notices are also used in this manual.

**Notice:** These mean there is something that could damage your vehicle.

A notice tells about something that can damage the vehicle. Many times, this damage would not be covered by the vehicle's warranty, and it could be costly. The notice tells what to do to help avoid the damage.

When you read other manuals, you might see CAUTION and NOTICE warnings in different colors or in different words.

There are also warning labels on the vehicle which use the same words, CAUTION or NOTICE.

## Vehicle Symbols

The vehicle has components and labels that use symbols instead of text. Symbols are shown along with the text describing the operation or information relating to a specific component, control, message, gage, or indicator.

# Section 1 Seats and Restraint Systems

---

<b>Head Restraints</b> .....	1-2	Where to Put the Restraint .....	1-41
<b>Front Seats</b> .....	1-4	Lower Anchors and Tethers for Children (LATCH) .....	1-43
Manual Seats .....	1-4	Securing a Child Restraint in a Rear Seat Position .....	1-49
Seat Height Adjuster .....	1-5	Securing a Child Restraint in the Right Front Seat Position .....	1-51
Power Seat .....	1-5	<b>Airbag System</b> .....	1-55
Manual Lumbar .....	1-6	Where Are the Airbags? .....	1-58
Heated Seats .....	1-6	When Should an Airbag Inflate? .....	1-61
Reclining Seatbacks .....	1-7	What Makes an Airbag Inflate? .....	1-63
Passenger Folding Seatback .....	1-10	How Does an Airbag Restrain? .....	1-63
<b>Rear Seats</b> .....	1-12	What Will You See After an Airbag Inflates? .....	1-64
Split Folding Rear Seat .....	1-12	Passenger Sensing System .....	1-65
<b>Safety Belts</b> .....	1-14	Servicing Your Airbag-Equipped Vehicle .....	1-70
Safety Belts: They Are for Everyone .....	1-14	Adding Equipment to Your Airbag-Equipped Vehicle .....	1-70
How to Wear Safety Belts Properly .....	1-19	<b>Restraint System Check</b> .....	1-72
Lap-Shoulder Belt .....	1-27	Checking the Restraint Systems .....	1-72
Safety Belt Use During Pregnancy .....	1-32	Replacing Restraint System Parts After a Crash .....	1-73
Safety Belt Extender .....	1-32		
<b>Child Restraints</b> .....	1-33		
Older Children .....	1-33		
Infants and Young Children .....	1-36		
Child Restraint Systems .....	1-39		

## Head Restraints

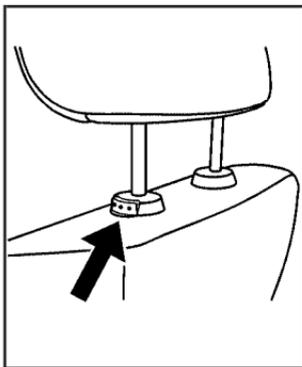
The vehicle's front and rear seats have adjustable head restraints in the outboard seating positions.

### CAUTION:

**With head restraints that are not installed and adjusted properly, there is a greater chance that occupants will suffer a neck/spinal injury in a crash. Do not drive until the head restraints for all occupants are installed and adjusted properly.**



Adjust the head restraint so that the top of the restraint is at the same height as the top of the occupant's head. This position reduces the chance of a neck injury in a crash.



Pull the head restraint up to raise it. To lower the head restraint, press the button, located on the top of the seatback, and push the restraint down.

Push down on the head restraint after the button is released to make sure that it is locked in place.

The vehicle's head restraints are not designed to be removed.

### **Active Head Restraint System**

The vehicle has an active head restraint system in the front outboard seating positions. These automatically tilt forward to reduce the risk of neck injury if the vehicle is hit from behind.

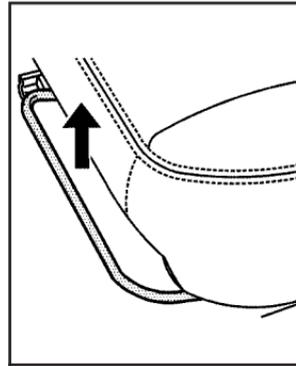
# Front Seats

## Manual Seats

### CAUTION:

You can lose control of the vehicle if you try to adjust a manual driver's seat while the vehicle is moving. The sudden movement could startle and confuse you, or make you push a pedal when you do not want to. Adjust the driver's seat only when the vehicle is not moving.

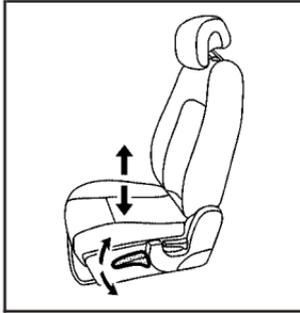
To move a manual seat forward or rearward:



1. Lift the bar to unlock the seat.
2. Slide the seat to the desired position and release the bar.

Try to move the seat with your body to be sure the seat is locked in place.

## Seat Height Adjuster

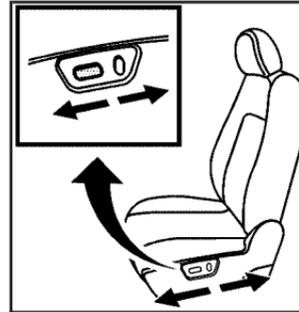


If your vehicle has a manual driver seat height adjuster, it is located on the outboard side of the seat near the front of the seat cushion.

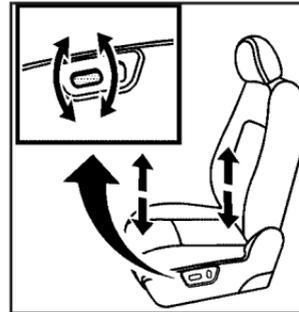
To raise the seat, move the lever upward repeatedly until the seat is at the desired height. To lower the seat, move the lever downward repeatedly until the seat is at the desired height.

## Power Seat

(): To adjust the seat:



Move the seat forward or rearward.



Raise or lower the front or rear part of the seat cushion.

## Manual Lumbar



If your vehicle has this feature, the knob is located on the inboard side of the driver's seatback.

Turn the knob clockwise or counterclockwise to increase or decrease the lumbar support.

## Heated Seats

On vehicles with heated front seats the controls are located on the center console. To operate the heated seats the engine must be running.

 **(Heated Seat):** Press this button to turn on the heated seat.

The light on the button will come on to indicate that the feature is working. Press the button to cycle through the temperature settings of high, medium, and low and to turn the heat to the seat off. Indicator lights show the level of heat selected: three for high, two for medium, and one for low.

The passenger seat may take longer to heat up.

If your vehicle has remote vehicle start and is started using the remote keyless entry transmitter, the front heated seats will be turned on to the high setting if it is cold outside. See "Remote Vehicle Start" under *Remote Keyless Entry (RKE) System Operation on page 2-5*. When the key is inserted into the ignition and the ignition is turned on, the heated seat feature will turn off. To turn the heated seat feature back on, press the desired button.

## Reclining Seatbacks

### Manual Reclining Seatbacks

#### CAUTION:

You can lose control of the vehicle if you try to adjust a manual driver's seat while the vehicle is moving. The sudden movement could startle and confuse you, or make you push a pedal when you do not want to. Adjust the driver's seat only when the vehicle is not moving.

#### CAUTION:

If the seatback is not locked, it could move forward in a sudden stop or crash. That could cause injury to the person sitting there. Always push and pull on the seatback to be sure it is locked.



On seats with manual reclining seatbacks, the lever used to operate them is located on the outboard side of the seat.

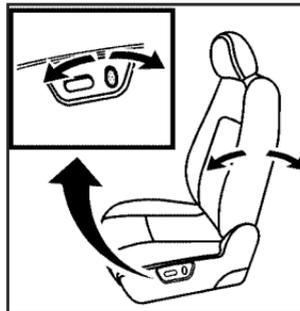
To recline the seatback:

1. Lift the recline lever.
2. Move the seatback to the desired position, then release the lever to lock the seatback in place.
3. Push and pull on the seatback to make sure it is locked.

To return the seatback to an upright position:

1. Lift the lever fully without applying pressure to the seatback and the seatback returns to the upright position.
2. Push and pull on the seatback to make sure it is locked.

## Power Reclining Seatbacks



If the seats have power reclining seatbacks, the control used to recline them is located on the outboard side of the seat.

- To recline the seatback, tilt the top of the control rearward.
- To bring the seatback forward, tilt the top of the control forward.

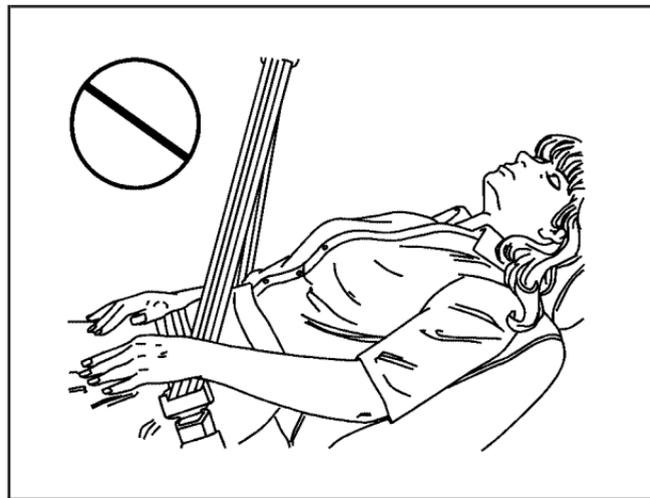
**⚠ CAUTION:**

Sitting in a reclined position when your vehicle is in motion can be dangerous. Even if you buckle up, your safety belts cannot do their job when you are reclined like this.

The shoulder belt cannot do its job. In a crash, you could go into it, receiving neck or other injuries.

The lap belt cannot do its job either. In a crash the belt could go up over your abdomen. The belt forces would be there, not at your pelvic bones. This could cause serious internal injuries.

For proper protection when the vehicle is in motion, have the seatback upright. Then sit well back in the seat and wear your safety belt properly.



Do not have a seatback reclined if your vehicle is moving.

## Passenger Folding Seatback

The front passenger's seatback may fold flat.

### CAUTION:

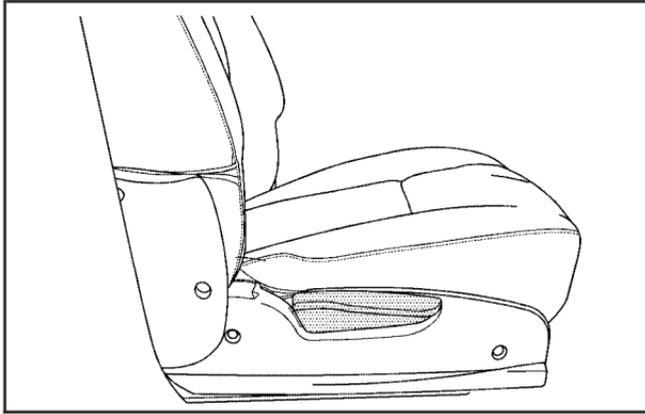
If you fold the seatback forward to carry longer objects, such as skis, be sure any such cargo is not near an airbag. In a crash, an inflating airbag might force that object toward a person. This could cause severe injury or even death. Secure objects away from the area in which an airbag would inflate. For more information, see *Where Are the Airbags?* on page 1-58 and *Loading Your Vehicle* on page 4-35.

### CAUTION:

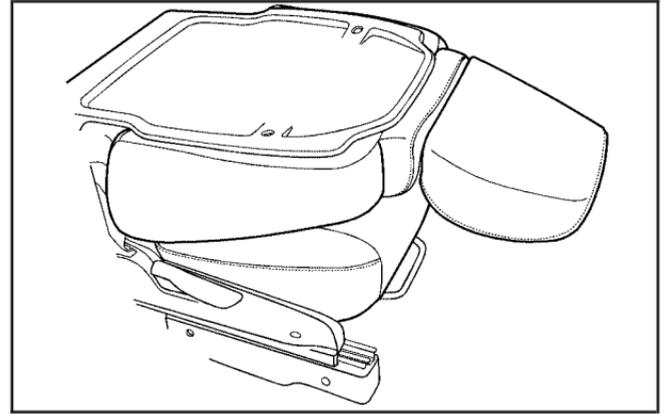
Things you put on this seatback can strike and injure people in a sudden stop or turn, or in a crash. Remove or secure all items before driving.

To fold the seatback, do the following:

1. Lower the head restraint all the way.
2. Lift the bar under the front of the seat to unlock it. Slide the seat as far back as it will go and release the bar. Try to move the seat back and forth to make sure it is locked into place.



3. Lift the recliner lever, located on the outboard side of the seat, up fully and fold the seatback forward until it disengages.



4. Continue to fold the seat forward until it locks in the folded position.
5. Pull up on the seatback to be sure it is locked.

To raise the seatback, do the following:

1. Lift the recliner lever, located on the outboard side of the seat, up fully and push up on the seatback.
2. Continue raising the seatback until the seatback re-engages.

 **CAUTION:**

**If the seatback is not locked, it could move forward in a sudden stop or crash. That could cause injury to the person sitting there. Always push and pull on the seatback to be sure it is locked.**

3. Push and pull on the seatback to make sure it is locked in place.

The recliner lever is also used to recline the seatback while a passenger is seated. See *Reclining Seatbacks* on page 1-7.

## Rear Seats

### Split Folding Rear Seat

The rear split bench seatbacks can be folded forward, upright, or partially reclined, independent of the other seatback position.

 **CAUTION:**

**If the seatback is not locked, it could move forward in a sudden stop or crash. That could cause injury to the person sitting there. Always push and pull on the seatback to be sure it is locked.**

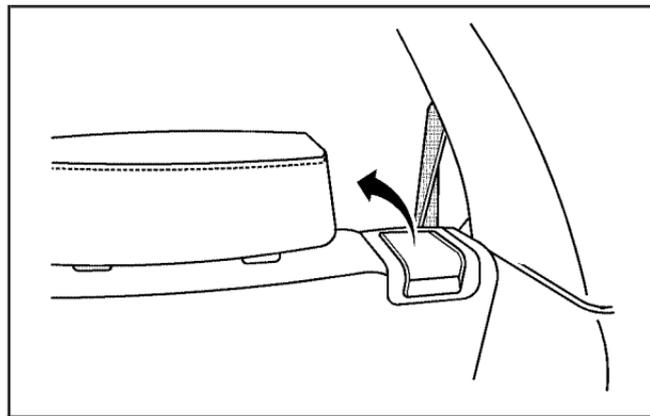
**⚠ CAUTION:**

A safety belt that is improperly routed, not properly attached, or twisted will not provide the protection needed in a crash. The person wearing the belt could be seriously injured. After raising the rear seatback, always check to be sure that the safety belts are properly routed and attached, and are not twisted.

To fold the seatback down:

**Notice:** Folding a rear seat with the safety belts still fastened may cause damage to the seat or the safety belts. Always unbuckle the safety belts and return them to their normal stowed position before folding a rear seat.

1. Unbuckle all three safety belts and put the front seatback in an upright position.



2. Lift the lever located on the top of the seatback to release the seatback and fold the seatback forward.

To recline the seatback:

1. Lift and hold the lever located on top of the seatback.
2. Tilt the seatback rearward, then release the lever.

# Safety Belts

## Safety Belts: They Are for Everyone

This part of the manual tells you how to use safety belts properly. It also tells you some things you should not do with safety belts.

### CAUTION:

**Do not let anyone ride where he or she cannot wear a safety belt properly. If you are in a crash and you are not wearing a safety belt, your injuries can be much worse. You can hit things inside the vehicle harder or be ejected from it and be seriously injured or killed. In the same crash, you might not be, if you are buckled up. Always fasten your safety belt, and check that your passenger(s) are restrained properly too.**

### CAUTION:

**It is extremely dangerous to ride in a cargo area, inside or outside of a vehicle. In a collision, people riding in these areas are more likely to be seriously injured or killed. Do not allow people to ride in any area of your vehicle that is not equipped with seats and safety belts. Be sure everyone in your vehicle is in a seat and using a safety belt properly.**

Your vehicle has indicators as a reminder to buckle your safety belts. See *Safety Belt Reminders on page 3-32*.

In most states and in all Canadian provinces, the law requires wearing safety belts. Here is why:

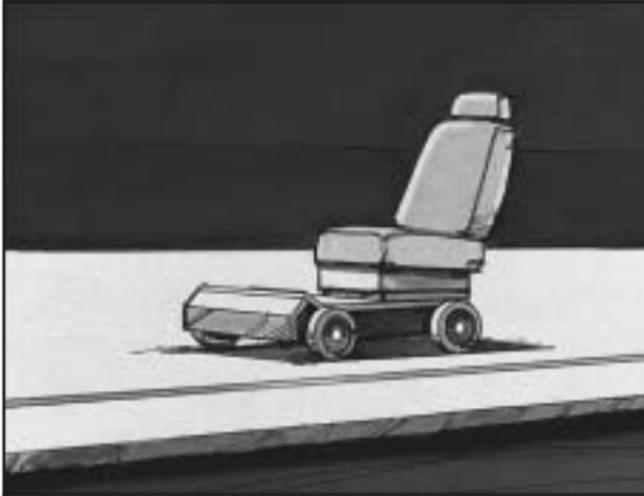
You never know if you will be in a crash. If you do have a crash, you do not know if it will be a serious one.

A few crashes are mild, and some crashes can be so serious that even buckled up, a person would not survive. But most crashes are in between. In many of them, people who buckle up can survive and sometimes walk away. Without belts they could have been badly hurt or killed.

After more than 40 years of safety belts in vehicles, the facts are clear. In most crashes buckling up does matter... a lot!

## Why Safety Belts Work

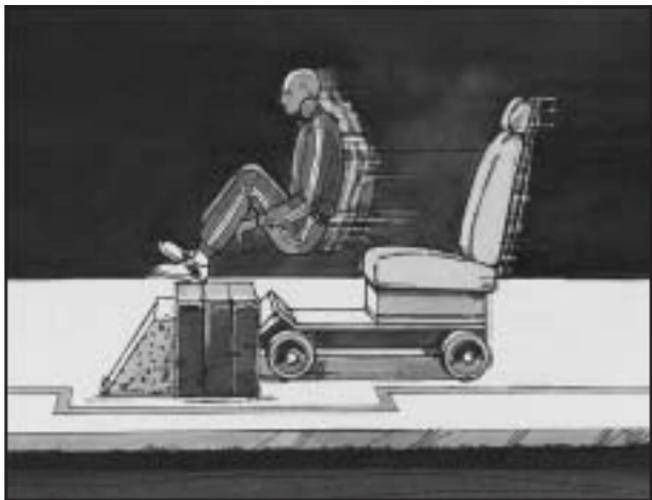
When you ride in or on anything, you go as fast as it goes.



Take the simplest vehicle. Suppose it is just a seat on wheels.



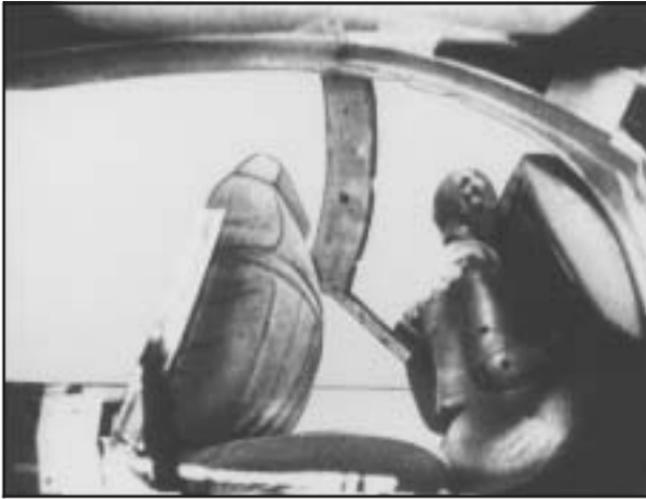
Put someone on it.



Get it up to speed. Then stop the vehicle.  
The rider does not stop.



The person keeps going until stopped by something.  
In a real vehicle, it could be the windshield...



or the instrument panel...



or the safety belts!

With safety belts, you slow down as the vehicle does. You get more time to stop. You stop over more distance, and your strongest bones take the forces. That is why safety belts make such good sense.

## Questions and Answers About Safety Belts

**Q:** Will I be trapped in the vehicle after a crash if I am wearing a safety belt?

**A:** You *could* be — whether you are wearing a safety belt or not. But your chance of being conscious during and after an accident, so you *can* unbuckle and get out, is *much* greater if you are belted. And you can unbuckle a safety belt, even if you are upside down.

**Q:** If my vehicle has airbags, why should I have to wear safety belts?

**A:** Airbags are supplemental systems only; so they work *with* safety belts — not instead of them. Whether or not an airbag is provided, all occupants still have to buckle up to get the most protection. That is true not only in frontal collisions, but especially in side and other collisions.

**Q:** If I am a good driver, and I never drive far from home, why should I wear safety belts?

**A:** You may be an excellent driver, but if you are in a crash — even one that is not your fault — you and your passenger(s) can be hurt. Being a good driver does not protect you from things beyond your control, such as bad drivers.

Most accidents occur within 25 miles (40 km) of home. And the greatest number of serious injuries and deaths occur at speeds of less than 40 mph (65 km/h).

Safety belts are for everyone.

## How to Wear Safety Belts Properly

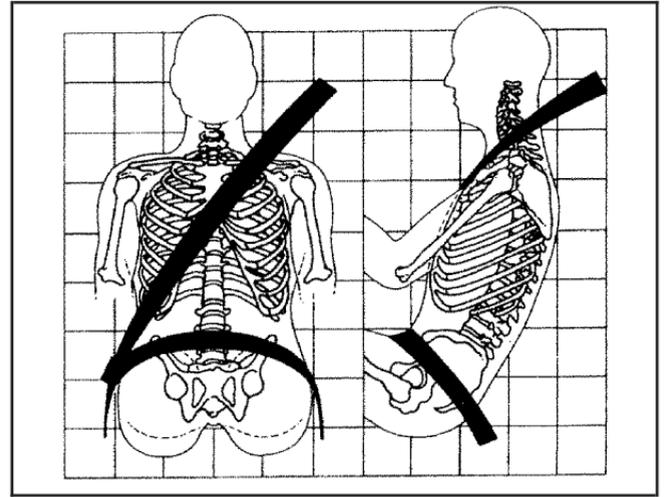
This section is only for people of adult size.

Be aware that there are special things to know about safety belts and children. And there are different rules for smaller children and babies. If a child will be riding in your vehicle, see *Older Children on page 1-33* or *Infants and Young Children on page 1-36*. Follow those rules for everyone's protection.

It is very important for all occupants to buckle up. Statistics show that unbelted people are hurt more often in crashes than those who are wearing safety belts.

Occupants who are not buckled up can be thrown out of the vehicle in a crash. And they can strike others in the vehicle who are wearing safety belts.

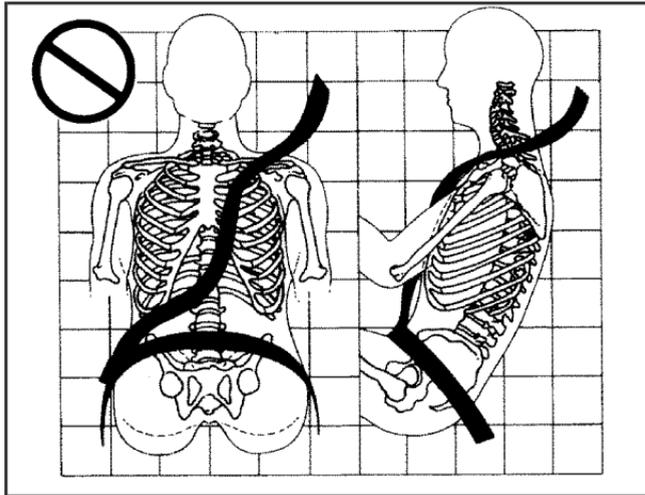
First, before you or your passenger(s) wear a safety belt, there is important information you should know.



Sit up straight and always keep your feet on the floor in front of you. The lap part of the belt should be worn low and snug on the hips, just touching the thighs. In a crash, this applies force to the strong pelvic bones and you would be less likely to slide under the lap belt. If you slid under it, the belt would apply force on your abdomen. This could cause serious or even fatal injuries. The shoulder belt should go over the shoulder and across the chest. These parts of the body are best able to take belt restraining forces.

The shoulder belt locks if there is a sudden stop or crash.

**Q:** What is wrong with this?

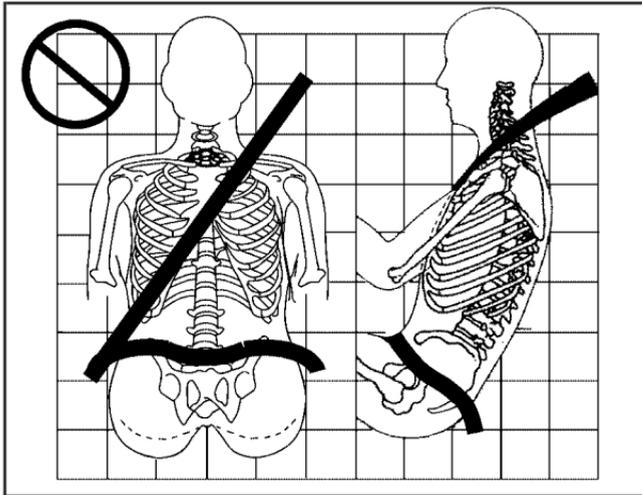


**⚠ CAUTION:**

You can be seriously hurt if your shoulder belt is too loose. In a crash, you would move forward too much, which could increase injury. The shoulder belt should fit snugly against your body.

**A:** The shoulder belt is too loose. It will not give as much protection this way.

**Q:** What is wrong with this?

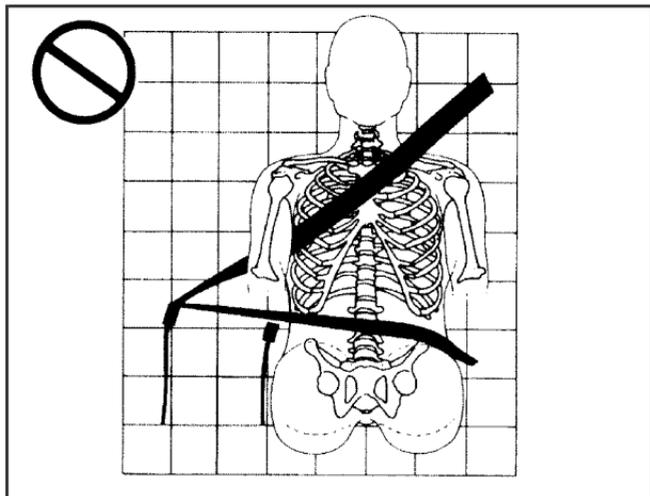


**A:** The lap belt is too loose. It will not give nearly as much protection this way.

**⚠ CAUTION:**

You can be seriously hurt if your lap belt is too loose. In a crash, you could slide under the lap belt and apply force on your abdomen. This could cause serious or even fatal injuries. The lap belt should be worn low and snug on the hips, just touching the thighs.

**Q:** What is wrong with this?

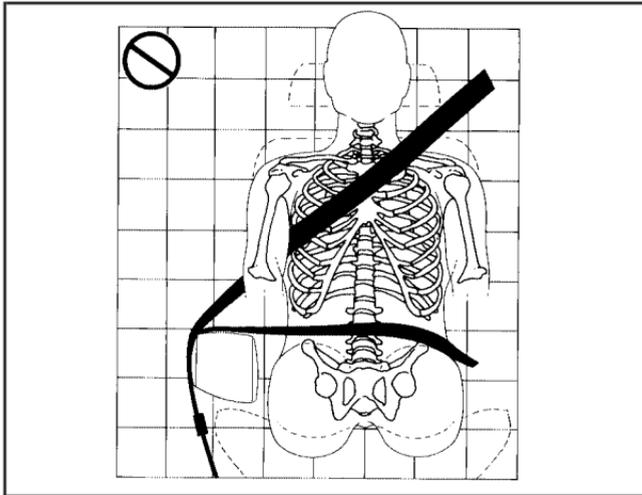


**A:** The belt is buckled in the wrong place.

**⚠ CAUTION:**

You can be seriously injured if your belt is buckled in the wrong place like this. In a crash, the belt would go up over your abdomen. The belt forces would be there, not on the pelvic bones. This could cause serious internal injuries. Always buckle your belt into the buckle nearest you.

**Q:** What is wrong with this?

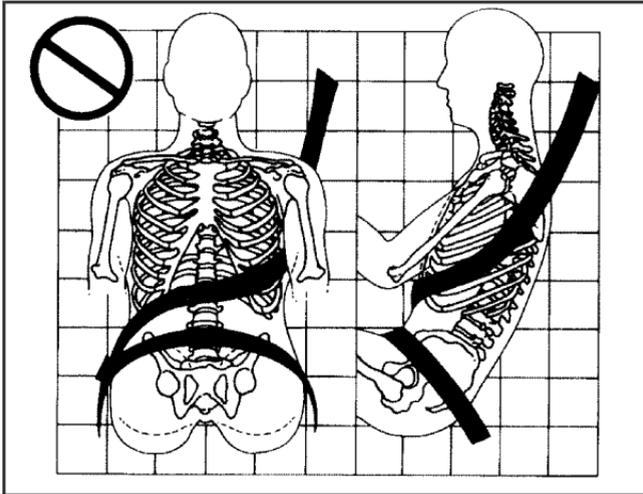


**A:** The belt is over an armrest.

**⚠ CAUTION:**

You can be seriously injured if your belt goes over an armrest like this. The belt would be much too high. In a crash, you can slide under the belt. The belt force would then be applied on the abdomen, not on the pelvic bones, and that could cause serious or fatal injuries. Be sure the belt goes under the armrests.

**Q:** What is wrong with this?

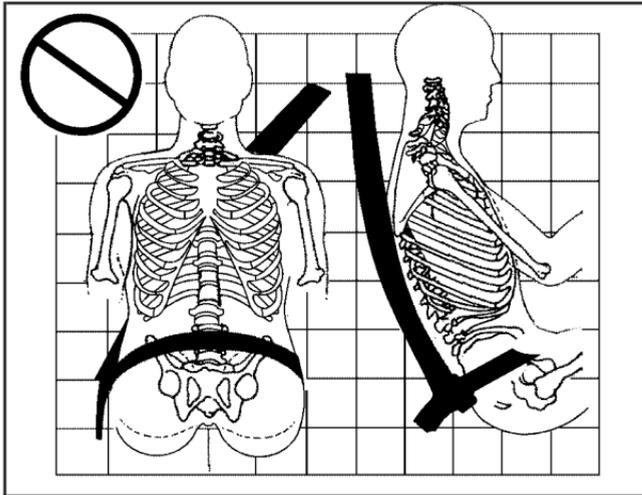


**A:** The shoulder belt is worn under the arm.  
It should be worn over the shoulder at all times.

**⚠ CAUTION:**

You can be seriously injured if you wear the shoulder belt under your arm. In a crash, your body would move too far forward, which would increase the chance of head and neck injury. Also, the belt would apply too much force to the ribs, which are not as strong as shoulder bones. You could also severely injure internal organs like your liver or spleen. The shoulder belt should go over the shoulder and across the chest.

**Q:** What is wrong with this?

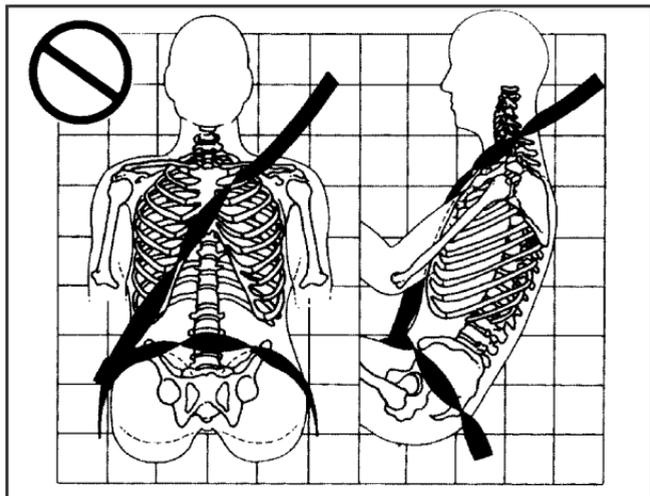


**A:** The belt is behind the body.

**⚠ CAUTION:**

You can be seriously injured by not wearing the lap-shoulder belt properly. In a crash, you would not be restrained by the shoulder belt. Your body could move too far forward increasing the chance of head and neck injury. You might also slide under the lap belt. The belt force would then be applied right on the abdomen. That could cause serious or fatal injuries. The shoulder belt should go over the shoulder and across the chest.

**Q:** What is wrong with this?



**A:** The belt is twisted across the body.

**⚠ CAUTION:**

You can be seriously injured by a twisted belt. In a crash, you would not have the full width of the belt to spread impact forces. If a belt is twisted, make it straight so it can work properly, or ask your dealer/retailer to fix it.

## Lap-Shoulder Belt

All seating positions in your vehicle have a lap-shoulder belt.

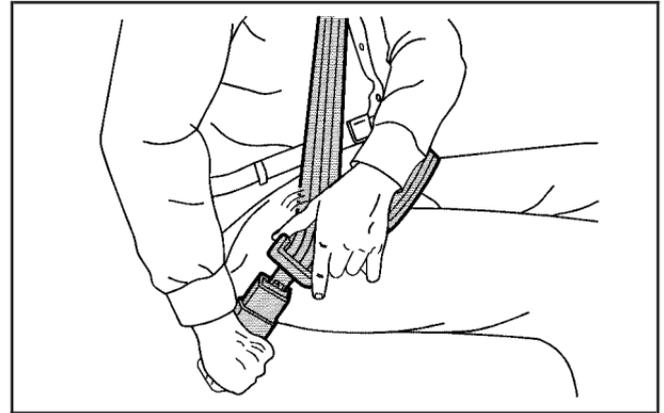
Here is how to wear a lap-shoulder belt properly.

1. Adjust the seat, if the seat is adjustable, so you can sit up straight. To see how, see “Seats” in the Index.
2. Pick up the latch plate and pull the belt across you. Do not let it get twisted.

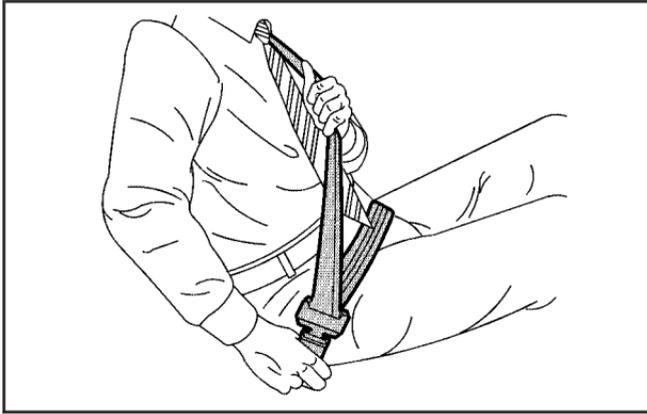
The lap-shoulder belt may lock if you pull the belt across you very quickly. If this happens, let the belt go back slightly to unlock it. Then pull the belt across you more slowly.

If you ever pull the shoulder portion of a passenger belt out all the way, you may engage the child restraint locking feature. If this happens, just let the belt go back all the way and start again.

Engaging the child restraint locking feature may affect the passenger sensing system. See *Passenger Sensing System on page 1-65*.

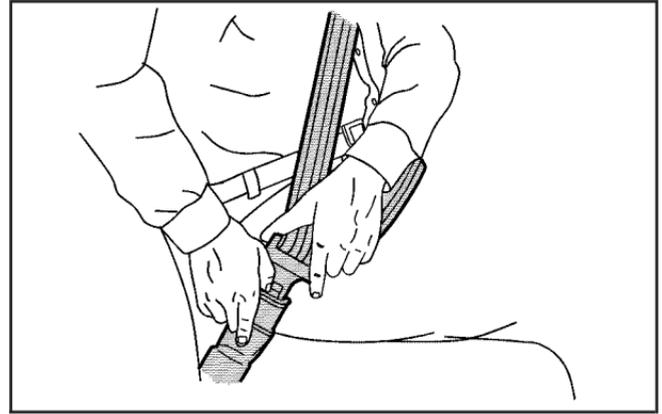


3. Push the latch plate into the buckle until it clicks. Pull up on the latch plate to make sure it is secure. If the belt is not long enough, see *Safety Belt Extender on page 1-32*.  
Make sure the release button on the buckle is positioned so you would be able to unbuckle the safety belt quickly if necessary.
4. If equipped with a shoulder belt height adjuster, move it to the height that is right for you. Improper shoulder belt height adjustment could reduce the effectiveness of the safety belt in a crash. See “Shoulder Belt Height Adjustment” later in this section.



5. To make the lap part tight, pull up on the shoulder belt.

It may be necessary to pull stitching on the safety belt through the latch plate to fully tighten the lap belt on smaller occupants.



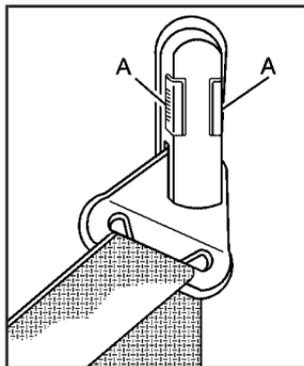
To unlatch the belt, just push the button on the buckle. The belt should go back out of the way. When the safety belt is not in use, slide the latch plate up the safety belt webbing. The latch plate should rest on the stitching on the safety belt, near the guide loop on the side wall.

Before you close a door, be sure the belt is out of the way. If you slam the door on it, you can damage both the belt and your vehicle.

## Shoulder Belt Height Adjuster

Your vehicle has a shoulder belt height adjuster for the driver and right front passenger.

Adjust the height so that the shoulder portion of the belt is centered on your shoulder. The belt should be away from your face and neck, but not falling off your shoulder. Improper shoulder belt height adjustment could reduce the effectiveness of the safety belt in a crash.



To move it up or down, squeeze the release buttons (A) together and move the height adjuster to the desired position.

After you move the height adjuster to where you want it, try to move it up or down without squeezing the release buttons to make sure it has locked into position.

## Safety Belt Pretensioners

Your vehicle has safety belt pretensioners for front outboard occupants. Although you cannot see them, they are part of the safety belt assembly. They can help tighten the safety belts during the early stages of a moderate to severe frontal, near frontal, or rear crash if the threshold conditions for pretensioner activation are met. And, if your vehicle has side impact airbags, safety belt pretensioners can help tighten the safety belts in a side crash or a rollover event.

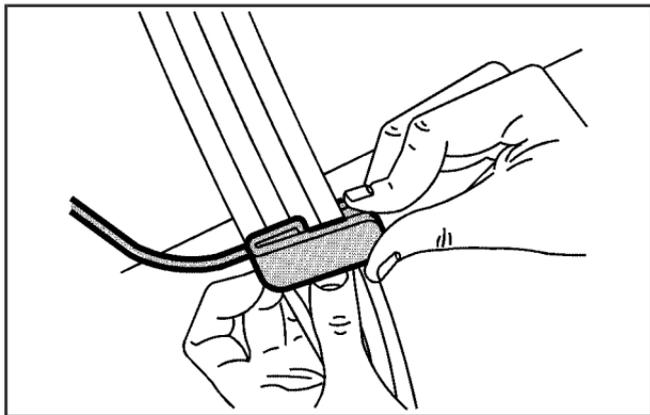
Pretensioners work only once. If they activate in a crash, you will need to get new ones, and probably other new parts for your safety belt system. See *Replacing Restraint System Parts After a Crash* on page 1-73.

## Rear Safety Belt Comfort Guides

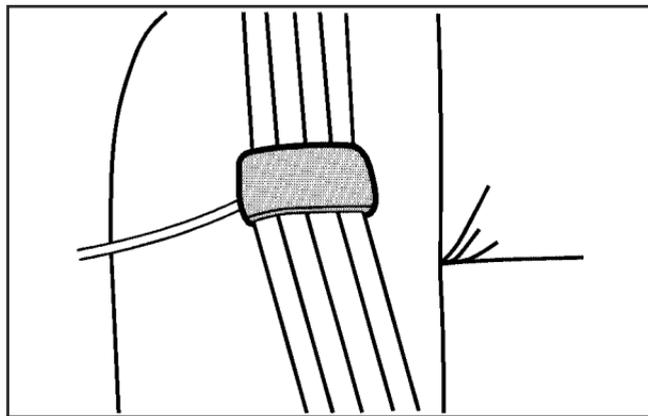
Rear shoulder belt comfort guides may provide added safety belt comfort for older children who have outgrown booster seats and for some adults. When installed on a shoulder belt, the comfort guide positions the belt away from the neck and head.

There is one guide for each outboard passenger position in the rear seat. Here is how to install a comfort guide to the safety belt:

1. Remove the guide from its storage location, which is a pocket on the side of the seat.



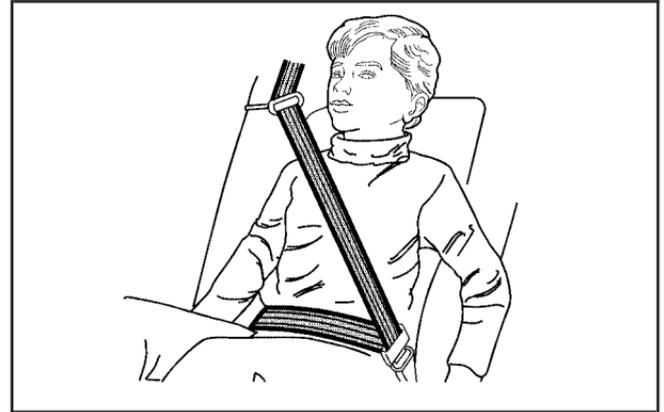
2. Place the guide over the belt, and insert the two edges of the belt into the slots of the guide.



3. Be sure that the belt is not twisted and it lies flat. The elastic cord must be under the belt and the guide on top.

**⚠ CAUTION:**

**A safety belt that is not properly worn may not provide the protection needed in a crash. The person wearing the belt could be seriously injured. The shoulder belt should go over the shoulder and across the chest. These parts of the body are best able to take belt restraining forces.**

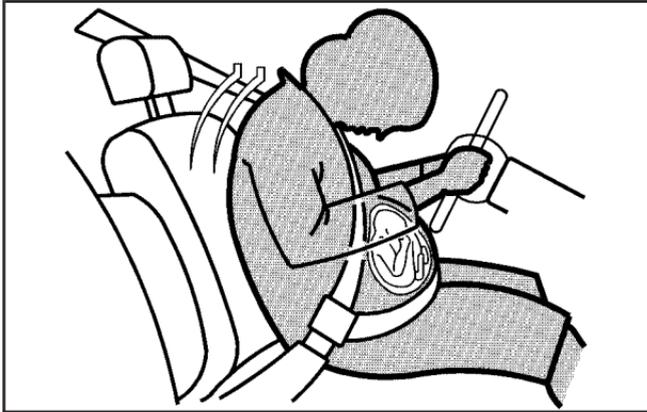


4. Buckle, position, and release the safety belt as described previously in this section. Make sure that the shoulder belt crosses the shoulder.

To remove and store the comfort guide, squeeze the belt edges together so that you can take them out of the guide. Store the comfort guide in its storage location, which is a pocket on the side of the seat.

## Safety Belt Use During Pregnancy

Safety belts work for everyone, including pregnant women. Like all occupants, they are more likely to be seriously injured if they do not wear safety belts.



A pregnant woman should wear a lap-shoulder belt, and the lap portion should be worn as low as possible, below the rounding, throughout the pregnancy.

The best way to protect the fetus is to protect the mother. When a safety belt is worn properly, it is more likely that the fetus will not be hurt in a crash. For pregnant women, as for anyone, the key to making safety belts effective is wearing them properly.

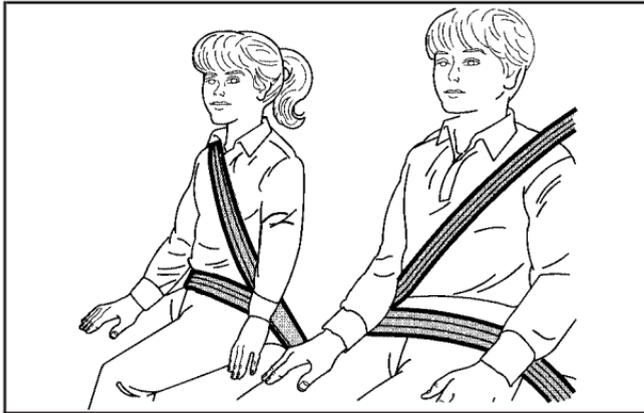
## Safety Belt Extender

If the safety belt will fasten around you, you should use it.

But if a safety belt is not long enough, your dealer/retailer will order you an extender. When you go in to order it, take the heaviest coat you will wear, so the extender will be long enough for you. To help avoid personal injury, do not let someone else use it, and use it only for the seat it is made to fit. The extender has been designed for adults. Never use it for securing child seats. To wear it, attach it to the regular safety belt. For more information, see the instruction sheet that comes with the extender.

# Child Restraints

## Older Children



Older children who have outgrown booster seats should wear the vehicle's safety belts.

The manufacturer's instructions that come with the booster seat state the weight and height limitations for that booster. Use a booster seat with a lap-shoulder belt until the child passes the below fit test:

- Sit all the way back on the seat. Do the knees bend at the seat edge? If yes, continue. If no, return to the booster seat.
- Buckle the lap-shoulder belt. Does the shoulder belt rest on the shoulder? If yes, continue. If no, try using the rear safety belt comfort guide. See "Rear Safety Belt Comfort Guides" under *Lap-Shoulder Belt* on page 1-27 for more information. If the shoulder belt still does not rest on the shoulder, then return to the booster seat.
- Does the lap belt fit low and snug on the hips, touching the thighs? If yes, continue. If no, return to the booster seat.
- Can proper safety belt fit be maintained for the length of the trip? If yes, continue. If no, return to the booster seat.

**Q: What is the proper way to wear safety belts?**

**A:** An older child should wear a lap-shoulder belt and get the additional restraint a shoulder belt can provide. The shoulder belt should not cross the face or neck. The lap belt should fit snugly below the hips, just touching the top of the thighs. This applies belt force to the child's pelvic bones in a crash. It should never be worn over the abdomen, which could cause severe or even fatal internal injuries in a crash.

Also see "Rear Safety Belt Comfort Guides" under *Lap-Shoulder Belt on page 1-27*.

According to accident statistics, children and infants are safer when properly restrained in the rear seating positions than in the front seating positions.

In a crash, children who are not buckled up can strike other people who are buckled up, or can be thrown out of the vehicle. Older children need to use safety belts properly.

**⚠ CAUTION:**

**Never do this.**

**Here two children are wearing the same belt. The belt cannot properly spread the impact forces. In a crash, the two children can be crushed together and seriously injured. A belt must be used by only one person at a time.**



**⚠ CAUTION:**

**Never do this.**

**Here a child is sitting in a seat that has a lap-shoulder belt, but the shoulder part is behind the child. In a crash, the child would not be restrained by the shoulder belt. The child might slide under the lap belt. The belt force would then be applied right on the abdomen. That could cause serious or fatal injuries. The child could also move too far forward increasing the chance of head and neck injury. The shoulder belt should go over the shoulder and across the chest.**



## Infants and Young Children

Everyone in a vehicle needs protection! This includes infants and all other children. Neither the distance traveled nor the age and size of the traveler changes the need, for everyone, to use safety restraints. In fact, the law in every state in the United States and in every Canadian province says children up to some age must be restrained while in a vehicle.

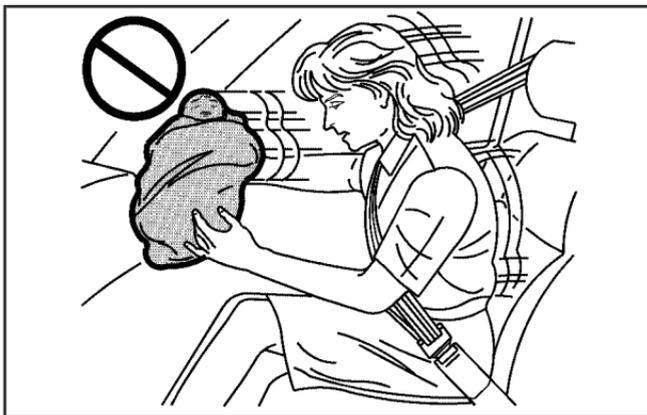
### CAUTION:

**Children can be seriously injured or strangled if a shoulder belt is wrapped around their neck and the safety belt continues to tighten. Never leave children unattended in a vehicle and never allow children to play with the safety belts.**

Every time infants and young children ride in vehicles, they should have the protection provided by appropriate restraints. Children who are not restrained properly can strike other people, or can be thrown out of the vehicle. In addition, young children should not use the vehicle's adult safety belts alone; they need to use a child restraint.

### CAUTION:

**People should never hold an infant in their arms while riding in a vehicle. An infant does not weigh much — until a crash. During a crash an infant will become so heavy it is not possible to hold it. For example, in a crash at only 25 mph (40 km/h), a 12 lb (5.5 kg) infant will suddenly become a 240 lb (110 kg) force on a person's arms. An infant should be secured in an appropriate restraint.**



**CAUTION: (Continued)**

Neither the vehicle's safety belt system nor its airbag system is designed for them. Young children and infants need the protection that a child restraint system can provide.

**⚠ CAUTION:**

Children who are up against, or very close to, any airbag when it inflates can be seriously injured or killed. Airbags plus lap-shoulder belts offer protection for adults and older children, but not for young children and infants.

**CAUTION: (Continued)**



**Q:** What are the different types of add-on child restraints?

**A:** Add-on child restraints, which are purchased by the vehicle's owner, are available in four basic types. Selection of a particular restraint should take into consideration not only the child's weight, height, and age but also whether or not the restraint will be compatible with the motor vehicle in which it will be used.

For most basic types of child restraints, there are many different models available. When purchasing a child restraint, be sure it is designed to be used in a motor vehicle. If it is, the restraint will have a label saying that it meets federal motor vehicle safety standards.

The restraint manufacturer's instructions that come with the restraint state the weight and height limitations for a particular child restraint. In addition, there are many kinds of restraints available for children with special needs.

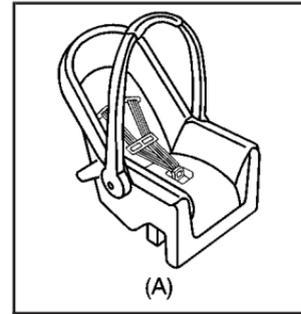
 **CAUTION:**

**Newborn infants need complete support, including support for the head and neck. This is necessary because a newborn infant's neck is weak and its head weighs so much compared with the rest of its body. In a crash, an infant in a rear-facing seat settles into the restraint, so the crash forces can be distributed across the strongest part of an infant's body, the back and shoulders. Infants should always be secured in appropriate infant restraints.**

**⚠ CAUTION:**

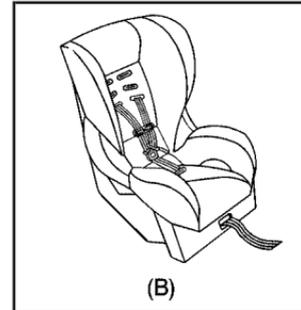
The body structure of a young child is quite unlike that of an adult or older child, for whom the safety belts are designed. A young child's hip bones are still so small that the vehicle's regular safety belt may not remain low on the hip bones, as it should. Instead, it may settle up around the child's abdomen. In a crash, the belt would apply force on a body area that is unprotected by any bony structure. This alone could cause serious or fatal injuries. Young children should always be secured in appropriate child restraints.

## Child Restraint Systems



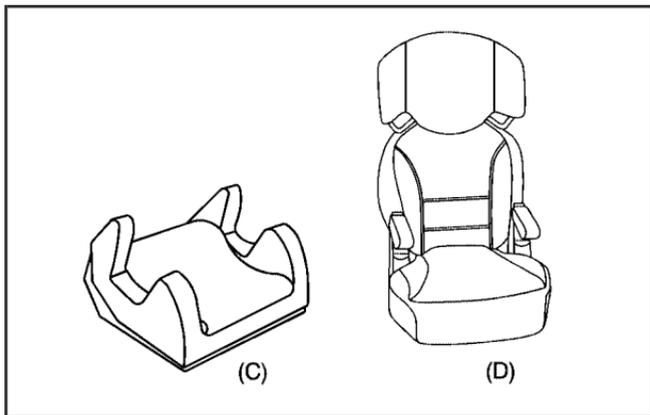
A rear-facing infant seat (A) provides restraint with the seating surface against the back of the infant.

The harness system holds the infant in place and, in a crash, acts to keep the infant positioned in the restraint.



A forward-facing child seat (B) provides restraint for the child's body with the harness.

## Securing an Add-On Child Restraint in the Vehicle



A booster seat (C-D) is a child restraint designed to improve the fit of the vehicle's safety belt system. A booster seat can also help a child to see out the window.

### CAUTION:

**A child can be seriously injured or killed in a crash if the child restraint is not properly secured in the vehicle. Make sure the child restraint is properly installed in the vehicle using the vehicle's safety belt or LATCH system, following the instructions that came with that restraint, and also the instructions in this manual.**

To help reduce the chance of injury, the child restraint must be secured in the vehicle. Child restraint systems must be secured in vehicle seats by lap belts or the lap belt portion of a lap-shoulder belt, or by the LATCH system. See *Lower Anchors and Tethers for Children (LATCH)* on page 1-43 for more information. A child can be endangered in a crash if the child restraint is not properly secured in the vehicle.

When securing an add-on child restraint, refer to the instructions that come with the restraint which may be on the restraint itself or in a booklet, or both, and to this manual. The child restraint instructions are important, so if they are not available, obtain a replacement copy from the manufacturer.

Keep in mind that an unsecured child restraint can move around in a collision or sudden stop and injure people in the vehicle. Be sure to properly secure any child restraint in your vehicle — even when no child is in it.

## Securing the Child Within the Child Restraint

### CAUTION:

**A child can be seriously injured or killed in a crash if the child is not properly secured in the child restraint. Because there are different systems, it is important to refer to the instructions that come with the restraint. Make sure the child is properly secured, following the instructions that came with that restraint.**

## Where to Put the Restraint

Accident statistics show that children are safer if they are restrained in the rear rather than the front seat.

We recommend that children and child restraints be secured in a rear seat, including: an infant or a child riding in a rear-facing child restraint; a child riding in a forward-facing child seat; an older child riding in a booster seat; and children, who are large enough, using safety belts.

A label on the sun visor says, “Never put a rear-facing child seat in the front.” This is because the risk to the rear-facing child is so great, if the airbag deploys.

 **CAUTION:**

**A child in a rear-facing child restraint can be seriously injured or killed if the right front passenger’s airbag inflates. This is because the back of the rear-facing child restraint would be very close to the inflating airbag.**

**Even if the passenger sensing system has turned off the right front passenger’s frontal airbag, no system is fail-safe. No one can guarantee that an airbag will not deploy under some unusual circumstance, even though it is turned off. Rear-facing child restraints should be secured in a rear seat, even if the airbag is off.**

**CAUTION: (Continued)**

**CAUTION: (Continued)**

**If you secure a forward-facing child restraint in the right front seat, always move the front passenger seat as far back as it will go. It is better to secure the child restraint in a rear seat.**

**See *Passenger Sensing System* on page 1-65 for additional information.**

If the vehicle does not have a rear seat that will accommodate a rear-facing child restraint, a rear-facing child restraint should not be installed in the vehicle, even if the airbag is off.

When securing a child restraint in a rear seating position, study the instructions that came with your child restraint to make sure it is compatible with this vehicle.

Wherever you install a child restraint, be sure to secure the child restraint properly.

Keep in mind that an unsecured child restraint can move around in a collision or sudden stop and injure people in the vehicle. Be sure to properly secure any child restraint in your vehicle — even when no child is in it.

## Lower Anchors and Tethers for Children (LATCH)

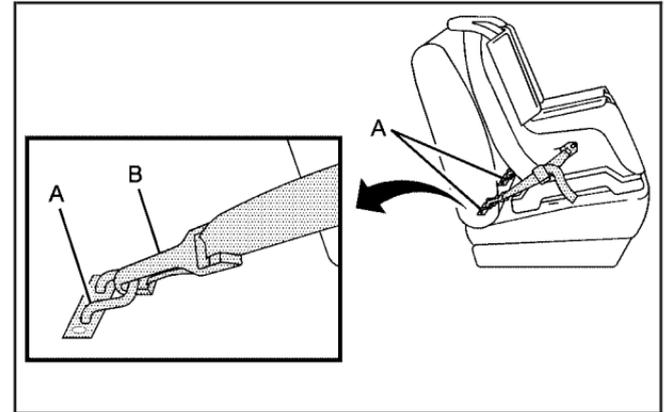
The LATCH system holds a child restraint during driving or in a crash. This system is designed to make installation of a child restraint easier. The LATCH system uses anchors in the vehicle and attachments on the child restraint that are made for use with the LATCH system.

Make sure that a LATCH-compatible child restraint is properly installed using the anchors, or use the vehicle's safety belts to secure the restraint, following the instructions that came with that restraint, and also the instructions in this manual. When installing a child restraint with a top tether, you must also use either the lower anchors or the safety belts to properly secure the child restraint. A child restraint must never be installed using only the top tether and anchor.

In order to use the LATCH system in your vehicle, you need a child restraint that has LATCH attachments. The child restraint manufacturer will provide you with instructions on how to use the child restraint and its attachments. The following explains how to attach a child restraint with these attachments in your vehicle.

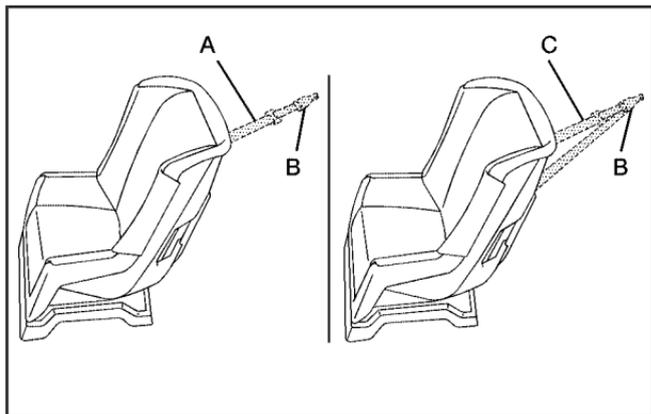
Not all vehicle seating positions or child restraints have lower anchors and attachments or top tether anchors and attachments.

### Lower Anchors



Lower anchors (A) are metal bars built into the vehicle. There are two lower anchors for each LATCH seating position that will accommodate a child restraint with lower attachments (B).

## Top Tether Anchor



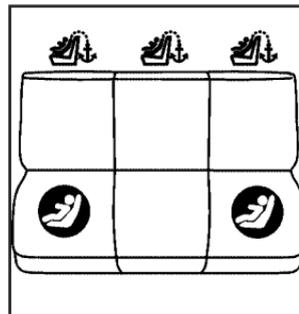
A top tether (A, C) anchors the top of the child restraint to the vehicle. A top tether anchor is built into the vehicle. The top tether attachment (B) on the child restraint connects to the top tether anchor in the vehicle in order to reduce the forward movement and rotation of the child restraint during driving or in a crash.

Your child restraint may have a single tether (A) or a dual tether (C). Either will have a single attachment (B) to secure the top tether to the anchor.

Some child restraints that have top tethers are designed for use with or without the top tether being attached. Others require the top tether always to be attached. In Canada, the law requires that forward-facing child restraints have a top tether, and that the tether be attached. Be sure to read and follow the instructions for your child restraint.

If the child restraint does not have a top tether, one can be obtained, in kit form, for many child restraints. Ask the child restraint manufacturer whether or not a kit is available.

## Lower Anchor and Top Tether Anchor Locations



Rear Seat

 (Top Tether Anchor):  
Seating positions with top tether anchors.

 (Lower Anchor):  
Seating positions with two lower anchors.

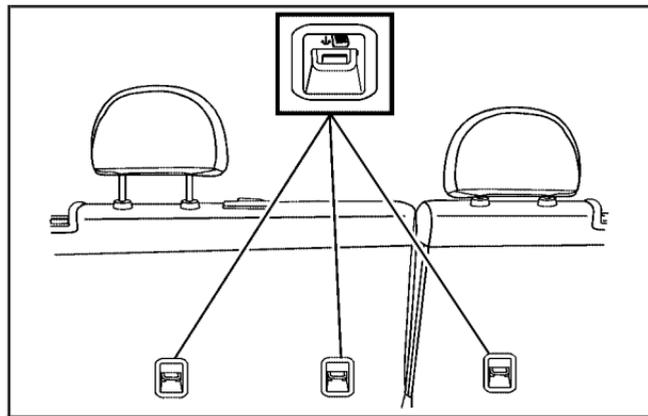


To assist you in locating the lower anchors, each seating position with lower anchors has two labels, near the crease between the seatback and the seat cushion.



To assist you in locating the top tether anchors, the top tether anchor symbol is located near the top tether anchors.

The top tether anchors are located on the back of the rear seatback. Be sure to use an anchor located on the same side of the vehicle as the seating position where the child restraint will be placed.



Do not secure a child restraint in a position without a top tether anchor if a national or local law requires that the top tether be attached, or if the instructions that come with the child restraint say that the top tether must be attached.

Accident statistics show that children are safer if they are restrained in the rear rather than the front seat. See *Where to Put the Restraint on page 1-41* for additional information.

## Securing a Child Restraint Designed for the LATCH System

### CAUTION:

If a LATCH-type child restraint is not attached to anchors, the restraint will not be able to protect the child correctly. In a crash, the child could be seriously injured or killed. Make sure that a LATCH-type child restraint is properly installed using the anchors, or use the vehicle's safety belts to secure the restraint, following the instructions that came with that restraint, and also the instructions in this manual.

### CAUTION:

Each top tether anchor and lower anchor in the vehicle is designed to hold only one child restraint. Attaching more than one child restraint to a single anchor could cause the anchor or attachment to come loose or even break during a crash. A child or others could be injured if this happens. To help prevent injury to people and damage to your vehicle, attach only one child restraint per anchor.

 **CAUTION:**

Children can be seriously injured or strangled if a shoulder belt is wrapped around their neck and the safety belt continues to tighten. Secure any unused safety belts behind the child restraint so children cannot reach them. Pull the shoulder belt all the way out of the retractor to set the lock, if your vehicle has one, after the child restraint has been installed. Be sure to follow the instructions of the child restraint manufacturer.

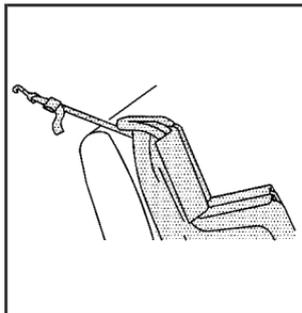
**Notice:** Contact between the child restraint LATCH attachment parts and the vehicle's safety belt assembly may cause damage to these parts. Make sure when securing unused safety belts behind the child restraint that there is no contact between the child restraint LATCH attachment parts and the vehicle's safety belt assembly.

**Folding an empty rear seat with the safety belts secured may cause damage to the safety belt or the seat. When removing the child restraint, always remember to return the safety belts to their normal, stowed position before folding the rear seat.**

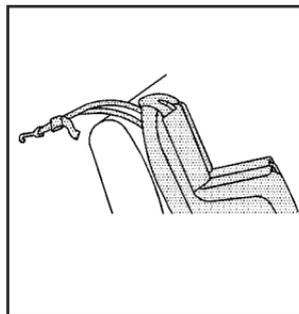
1. Attach and tighten the lower attachments to the lower anchors. If the child restraint does not have lower attachments or the desired seating position does not have lower anchors, secure the child restraint with the top tether and the safety belts. Refer to your child restraint manufacturer instructions and the instructions in this manual.
  - 1.1. Find the lower anchors for the desired seating position.
  - 1.2. Put the child restraint on the seat.
  - 1.3. Attach and tighten the lower attachments on the child restraint to the lower anchors.

2. If the child restraint manufacturer recommends that the top tether be attached, attach and tighten the top tether to the top tether anchor, if equipped. Refer to the child restraint instructions and the following steps:

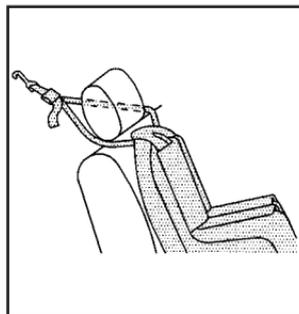
- 2.1. Find the top tether anchor.
- 2.2. Route, attach, and tighten the top tether according to your child restraint instructions and the following instructions:



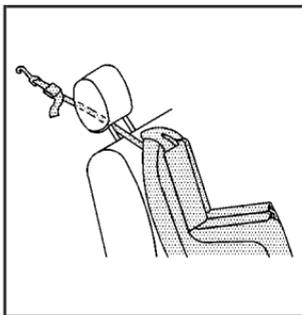
If the position you are using does not have a headrest or head restraint and you are using a single tether, route the tether over the seatback.



If the position you are using does not have a headrest or head restraint and you are using a dual tether, route the tether over the seatback.



If the position you are using has an adjustable headrest or head restraint and you are using a dual tether, route the tether around the headrest or head restraint.



If the position you are using has an adjustable headrest or head restraint and you are using a single tether, raise the headrest or head restraint and route the tether under the headrest or head restraint and in between the headrest or head restraint posts.

3. Push and pull the child restraint in different directions to be sure it is secure.

## Securing a Child Restraint in a Rear Seat Position

When securing a child restraint in a rear seating position, study the instructions that came with your child restraint to make sure it is compatible with this vehicle.

If your child restraint has the LATCH system, see *Lower Anchors and Tethers for Children (LATCH) on page 1-43* for how and where to install your child restraint using LATCH. If you secure a child restraint using a safety belt and it uses a top tether, see *Lower Anchors and Tethers for Children (LATCH) on page 1-43* for top tether anchor locations.

Do not secure a child restraint in a position without a top tether anchor if a national or local law requires that the top tether be anchored, or if the instructions that come with the child restraint say that the top strap must be anchored.

In Canada, the law requires that forward-facing child restraints have a top tether, and that the tether be attached.

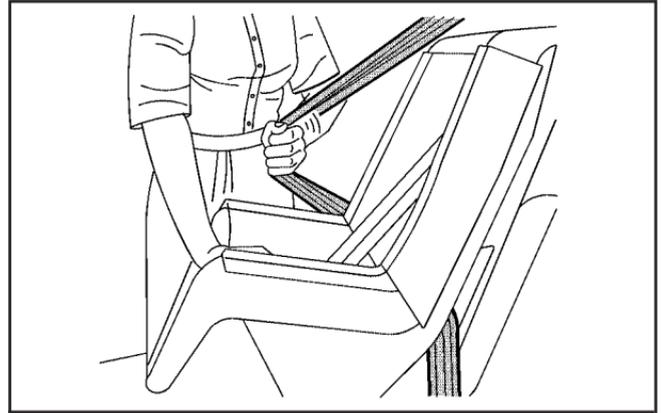
If your child restraint does not have the LATCH system, you will be using the safety belt to secure the child restraint in this position. Be sure to follow the instructions that came with the child restraint. Secure the child in the child restraint when and as the instructions say.

If you need to install more than one child restraint in the rear seat, be sure to read *Where to Put the Restraint on page 1-41*.

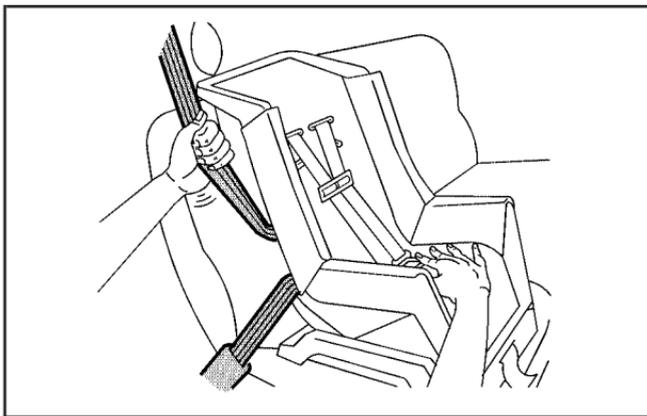
1. Put the child restraint on the seat.
2. Pick up the latch plate, and run the lap and shoulder portions of the vehicle's safety belt through or around the restraint. The child restraint instructions will show you how.



3. Push the latch plate into the buckle until it clicks. Make sure the release button is positioned so you would be able to unbuckle the safety belt quickly if necessary.



4. Pull the rest of the shoulder belt all the way out of the retractor to set the lock.



5. To tighten the belt, push down on the child restraint, pull the shoulder portion of the belt to tighten the lap portion of the belt, and feed the shoulder belt back into the retractor. If you are using a forward-facing child restraint, you may find it helpful to use your knee to push down on the child restraint as you tighten the belt.

6. If your child restraint has a top tether, follow the child restraint manufacturer's instructions regarding the use of the top tether. See *Lower Anchors and Tethers for Children (LATCH)* on page 1-43 for more information.
7. Push and pull the child restraint in different directions to be sure it is secure.

To remove the child restraint, unbuckle the vehicle safety belt and let it return to the stowed position. If the top tether is attached to a top tether anchor, disconnect it.

## Securing a Child Restraint in the Right Front Seat Position

Your vehicle has airbags. A rear seat is a safer place to secure a forward-facing child restraint. See *Where to Put the Restraint* on page 1-41.

In addition, your vehicle has a passenger sensing system which is designed to turn off the right front passenger's frontal airbag under certain conditions. See *Passenger Sensing System* on page 1-65 and *Passenger Airbag Status Indicator* on page 3-34 for more information on this, including important safety information.

A label on your sun visor says, “Never put a rear-facing child seat in the front.” This is because the risk to the rear-facing child is so great, if the airbag deploys.

 **CAUTION:**

**A child in a rear-facing child restraint can be seriously injured or killed if the right front passenger’s airbag inflates. This is because the back of the rear-facing child restraint would be very close to the inflating airbag.**

**Even if the passenger sensing system has turned off the right front passenger’s frontal airbag, no system is fail-safe. No one can guarantee that an airbag will not deploy under some unusual circumstance, even though it is turned off. Rear-facing child restraints should be secured in a rear seat, even if the airbag is off.**

**CAUTION: (Continued)**

**CAUTION: (Continued)**

**If you secure a forward-facing child restraint in the right front seat, always move the front passenger seat as far back as it will go. It is better to secure the child restraint in a rear seat.**

**See *Passenger Sensing System* on page 1-65 for additional information.**

If your vehicle does not have a rear seat that will accommodate a rear-facing child restraint, we recommend that rear-facing child restraints not be transported in your vehicle, even if the airbag is off.

If your child restraint has the LATCH system, see *Lower Anchors and Tethers for Children (LATCH)* on page 1-43 for how to install your child restraint using LATCH. If you secure a child restraint using a safety belt and it uses a top tether, see *Lower Anchors and Tethers for Children (LATCH)* on page 1-43 for top tether anchor locations.

Do not secure a child seat in a position without a top tether anchor if a national or local law requires that the top tether be anchored, or if the instructions that come with the child restraint say that the top strap must be anchored.

In Canada, the law requires that forward-facing child restraints have a top tether, and that the tether be attached.

You will be using the lap-shoulder belt to secure the child restraint in this position. Follow the instructions that came with the child restraint.

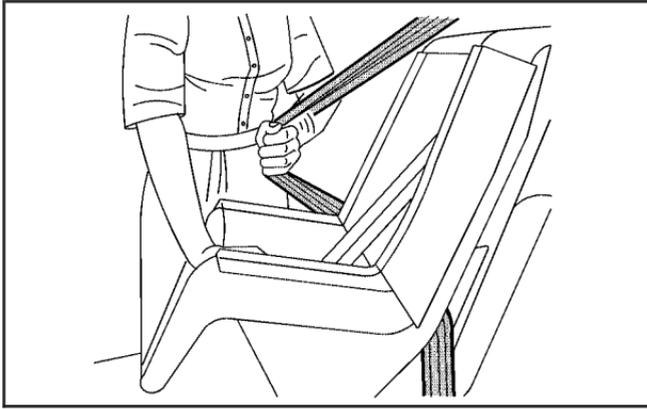
1. Move the seat as far back as it will go before securing the forward-facing child restraint.

When the passenger sensing system has turned off the right front passenger's frontal airbag, the off indicator on the passenger airbag status indicator should light and stay lit when you start the vehicle. See *Passenger Airbag Status Indicator on page 3-34*.

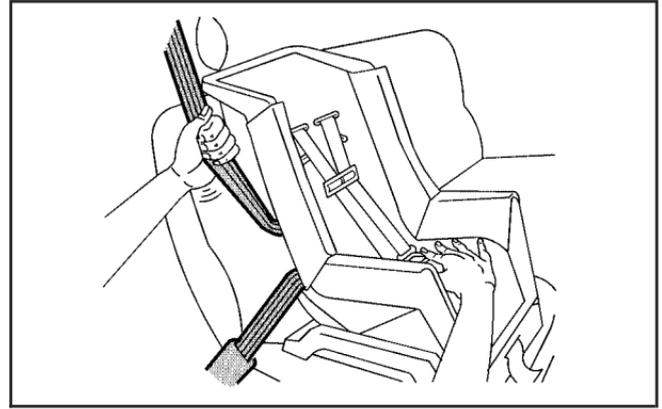
2. Put the child restraint on the seat.
3. Pick up the latch plate, and run the lap and shoulder portions of the vehicle's safety belt through or around the restraint. The child restraint instructions will show you how.



4. Push the latch plate into the buckle until it clicks. Make sure the release button is positioned so you would be able to unbuckle the safety belt quickly if necessary.



5. Pull the rest of the shoulder belt all the way out of the retractor to set the lock.



6. To tighten the belt, push down on the child restraint, pull the shoulder portion of the belt to tighten the lap portion of the belt and feed the shoulder belt back into the retractor. If you are using a forward-facing child restraint, you may find it helpful to use your knee to push down on the child restraint as you tighten the belt.
7. If your vehicle does not have a rear seat and your child restraint has a top tether, follow the child restraint manufacturer's instructions regarding the use of the top tether. See *Lower Anchors and Tethers for Children (LATCH)* on page 1-43 for more information.
8. Push and pull the child restraint in different directions to be sure it is secure.

If the airbag is off, the off indicator in the passenger airbag status indicator will come on and stay on when the vehicle is started.

If a child restraint has been installed and the on indicator is lit, turn the vehicle off. Remove the child restraint from the vehicle and reinstall the child restraint.

If, after reinstalling the child restraint and restarting the vehicle, the on indicator is still lit, check to make sure that the vehicle's seatback is not pressing the child restraint into the seat cushion. If this happens, slightly recline the vehicle's seatback and adjust the seat cushion if possible. Also make sure the child restraint is not trapped under the vehicle head restraint. If this happens, adjust the head restraint.

Remove any additional material from the seat such as blankets, cushions, seat covers, seat heaters or seat massagers before reinstalling or securing the child restraint.

If the on indicator is still lit, secure the child in the child restraint in a rear seat position in the vehicle and check with your dealer/retailer. If no rear seat is available, do not install a child restraint in this vehicle and check with your dealer/retailer.

To remove the child restraint, unbuckle the vehicle's safety belt and let it go back all the way. If the top tether is attached to a top tether anchor, disconnect it.

## Airbag System

Your vehicle has the following airbags:

- A frontal airbag for the driver.
- A frontal airbag for the right front passenger.
- A seat-mounted side impact airbag for the driver.
- A seat-mounted side impact airbag for the right front passenger.
- A roof-rail airbag for the driver and the passenger seated directly behind the driver.
- A roof-rail airbag for the right front passenger and the passenger seated directly behind the right front passenger.

All of the airbags in your vehicle will have the word AIRBAG embossed in the trim or on an attached label near the deployment opening.

For frontal airbags, the word AIRBAG will appear on the middle part of the steering wheel for the driver and on the instrument panel for the right front passenger.

With seat-mounted side impact airbags, the word AIRBAG will appear on the side of the seatback closest to the door.

With roof-rail airbags, the word AIRBAG will appear along the headliner or trim.

If your vehicle does not have a right front passenger seat, the frontal passenger airbag is disabled. The frontal passenger airbag is still in the vehicle, but it should not deploy in a crash. Even if the airbag is disabled, do not place cargo in front of this or any airbag.

 **CAUTION:**

**Be sure that cargo is not near an airbag. In a crash, an inflating airbag might force that object toward a person. This could cause severe injury or even death. Secure objects away from the area in which an airbag would inflate. For more information, see *Where Are the Airbags? on page 1-58* and *Loading Your Vehicle on page 4-35*.**

Airbags are designed to supplement the protection provided by safety belts. Even though today's airbags are also designed to help reduce the risk of injury from the force of an inflating bag, all airbags must inflate very quickly to do their job.

Here are the most important things to know about the airbag system:

 **CAUTION:**

**You can be severely injured or killed in a crash if you are not wearing your safety belt — even if you have airbags. Wearing your safety belt during a crash helps reduce your chance of hitting things inside the vehicle or being ejected from it. Airbags are “supplemental restraints” to the safety belts. All airbags are designed to work with safety belts, but do not replace them.**

 **CAUTION:**

Frontal airbags are designed to deploy in moderate to severe frontal and near frontal crashes. They are not designed to inflate in rollover, rear crashes, or in many side crashes.

Seat-mounted side impact airbags are designed to inflate in moderate to severe crashes where something hits the side of your vehicle. They are not designed to inflate in frontal, in rollover, or in rear crashes.

Rollover capable roof-rail airbags are designed to inflate in moderate to severe crashes where something hits the side of your vehicle, during a vehicle rollover, or in a severe frontal impact. They are not designed to inflate in rear crashes.

Everyone in your vehicle should wear a safety belt properly — whether or not there is an airbag for that person.

 **CAUTION:**

Airbags inflate with great force, faster than the blink of an eye. Anyone who is up against, or very close to, any airbag when it inflates can be seriously injured or killed. Do not sit unnecessarily close to the airbag, as you would be if you were sitting on the edge of your seat or leaning forward. Safety belts help keep you in position before and during a crash. Always wear your safety belt, even with airbags. The driver should sit as far back as possible while still maintaining control of the vehicle.

Occupants should not lean on or sleep against the door or side windows in seating positions with seat-mounted side impact airbags and/or roof-rail airbags.

**⚠ CAUTION:**

Airbags plus lap-shoulder belts offer the best protection for adults, but not for young children and infants. Neither the vehicle's safety belt system nor its airbag system is designed for them. Young children and infants need the protection that a child restraint system can provide. Always secure children properly in your vehicle. To read how, see *Older Children on page 1-33* or *Infants and Young Children on page 1-36*.



There is an airbag readiness light on the instrument panel cluster, which shows the airbag symbol.

The system checks the airbag electrical system for malfunctions. The light tells you if there is an electrical problem. See *Airbag Readiness Light on page 3-33* for more information.

## Where Are the Airbags?



The driver's frontal airbag is in the middle of the steering wheel.



The right front passenger's frontal airbag is in the instrument panel on the passenger's side.



**Driver Side shown, Passenger Side similar**

The seat-mounted side impact airbags for the driver and right front passenger are in the side of the seatbacks closest to the door.



**Driver Side shown, Passenger Side similar**

The roof-rail airbags for the driver, right front passenger, and second row outboard passengers are in the ceiling above the side windows.

**⚠ CAUTION:**

If something is between an occupant and an airbag, the airbag might not inflate properly or it might force the object into that person causing severe injury or even death. The path of an inflating airbag must be kept clear. Do not put anything between an occupant and an airbag, and do not attach or put anything on the steering wheel hub or on or near any other airbag covering.

Do not use seat accessories that block the inflation path of a seat-mounted side impact airbag.

If your vehicle has roof-rail airbags, never secure anything to the roof of your vehicle by routing the rope or tie down through any door or window opening. If you do, the path of an inflating roof-rail airbag will be blocked.

## When Should an Airbag Inflate?

Frontal airbags are designed to inflate in moderate to severe frontal or near-frontal crashes to help reduce the potential for severe injuries mainly to the driver's or right front passenger's head and chest. However, they are only designed to inflate if the impact exceeds a predetermined deployment threshold. Deployment thresholds are used to predict how severe a crash is likely to be in time for the airbags to inflate and help restrain the occupants.

Whether your frontal airbags will or should deploy is not based on how fast your vehicle is traveling. It depends largely on what you hit, the direction of the impact, and how quickly your vehicle slows down.

Frontal airbags may inflate at different crash speeds. For example:

- If the vehicle hits a stationary object, the airbags could inflate at a different crash speed than if the vehicle hits a moving object.
- If the vehicle hits an object that deforms, the airbags could inflate at a different crash speed than if the vehicle hits an object that does not deform.
- If the vehicle hits a narrow object (like a pole), the airbags could inflate at a different crash speed than if the vehicle hits a wide object (like a wall).
- If the vehicle goes into an object at an angle, the airbags could inflate at a different crash speed than if the vehicle goes straight into the object.

Thresholds can also vary with specific vehicle design.

Frontal airbags are not intended to inflate during vehicle rollovers, rear impacts, or in many side impacts.

In addition, your vehicle has dual-stage frontal airbags. Dual-stage airbags adjust the restraint according to crash severity. Your vehicle has electronic frontal sensors, which help the sensing system distinguish between a moderate frontal impact and a more severe frontal impact. For moderate frontal impacts, dual-stage airbags inflate at a level less than full deployment. For more severe frontal impacts, full deployment occurs.

Your vehicle has seat-mounted side impact and roof-rail airbags. See *Airbag System on page 1-55*. Seat-mounted side impact and roof-rail airbags are intended to inflate in moderate to severe side crashes. In addition, these roof-rail airbags are intended to inflate during a rollover or in a severe frontal impact. Seat-mounted side impact and roof-rail airbags will inflate if the crash severity is above the system's designed threshold level. The threshold level can vary with specific vehicle design.

Seat-mounted side impact airbags are not intended to inflate in frontal impacts, near-frontal impacts, rollovers, or rear impacts. Roof-rail airbags are not intended to inflate in rear impacts. A seat-mounted side impact airbag is intended to deploy on the side of the vehicle that is struck. Both roof-rail airbags will deploy when either side of the vehicle is struck, or if the sensing system predicts that the vehicle is about to roll over, or in a severe frontal impact.

In any particular crash, no one can say whether an airbag should have inflated simply because of the damage to a vehicle or because of what the repair costs were. For frontal airbags, inflation is determined by what the vehicle hits, the angle of the impact, and how quickly the vehicle slows down. For seat-mounted side impact and roof-rail airbags, deployment is determined by the location and severity of the side impact. In a rollover event, roof-rail airbag deployment is determined by the direction of the roll.

## What Makes an Airbag Inflate?

In a deployment event, the sensing system sends an electrical signal triggering a release of gas from the inflator. Gas from the inflator fills the airbag causing the bag to break out of the cover and deploy. The inflator, the airbag, and related hardware are all part of the airbag module.

Frontal airbag modules are located inside the steering wheel and instrument panel. For vehicles with seat-mounted side impact airbags, there are airbag modules in the side of the front seatbacks closest to the door. For vehicles with roof-rail airbags, there are airbag modules in the ceiling of the vehicle, near the side windows that have occupant seating positions.

## How Does an Airbag Restrain?

In moderate to severe frontal or near frontal collisions, even belted occupants can contact the steering wheel or the instrument panel. In moderate to severe side collisions, even belted occupants can contact the inside of the vehicle.

Airbags supplement the protection provided by safety belts. Frontal airbags distribute the force of the impact more evenly over the occupant's upper body, stopping the occupant more gradually. Seat-mounted side impact and roof-rail airbags distribute the force of the impact more evenly over the occupant's upper body.

Rollover capable roof-rail airbags are designed to help contain the head and chest of occupants in the outboard seating positions in the first and second rows. The rollover capable roof-rail airbags are designed to help reduce the risk of full or partial ejection in rollover events, although no system can prevent all such ejections.

But airbags would not help in many types of collisions, primarily because the occupant's motion is not toward those airbags. See *When Should an Airbag Inflate?* on page 1-61 for more information.

Airbags should never be regarded as anything more than a supplement to safety belts.

## What Will You See After an Airbag Inflates?

After the frontal airbags and seat-mounted side impact airbags inflate, they quickly deflate, so quickly that some people may not even realize an airbag inflated. Roof-rail airbags may still be at least partially inflated for some time after they deploy. Some components of the airbag module may be hot for several minutes. For location of the airbag modules, see *What Makes an Airbag Inflate?* on page 1-63.

The parts of the airbag that come into contact with you may be warm, but not too hot to touch. There may be some smoke and dust coming from the vents in the deflated airbags. Airbag inflation does not prevent the driver from seeing out of the windshield or being able to steer the vehicle, nor does it prevent people from leaving the vehicle.

### CAUTION:

**When an airbag inflates, there may be dust in the air. This dust could cause breathing problems for people with a history of asthma or other breathing trouble. To avoid this, everyone in the vehicle should get out as soon as it is safe to do so. If you have breathing problems but cannot get out of the vehicle after an airbag inflates, then get fresh air by opening a window or a door. If you experience breathing problems following an airbag deployment, you should seek medical attention.**

Your vehicle has a feature that may automatically unlock the doors, turn the interior lamps on, and turn the hazard warning flashers on when the airbags inflate. You can lock the doors, turn the interior lamps off, and turn the hazard warning flashers off by using the controls for those features. You must first, however, turn your ignition key to the following ignition switch positions:

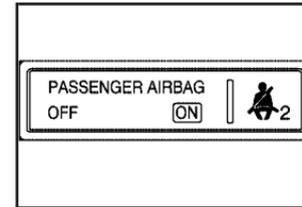
1. Turn the ignition key to LOCK/OFF.
2. Turn the ignition key to ON/RUN.

In many crashes severe enough to inflate the airbag, windshields are broken by vehicle deformation. Additional windshield breakage may also occur from the right front passenger airbag.

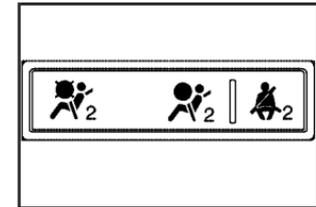
- Airbags are designed to inflate only once. After an airbag inflates, you will need some new parts for the airbag system. If you do not get them, the airbag system will not be there to help protect you in another crash. A new system will include airbag modules and possibly other parts. The service manual for your vehicle covers the need to replace other parts.
- Your vehicle has a crash sensing and diagnostic module which records information after a crash. See *Vehicle Data Recording and Privacy on page 7-16* and *Event Data Recorders on page 7-16*.
- Let only qualified technicians work on the airbag systems. Improper service can mean that an airbag system will not work properly. See your dealer/retailer for service.

## Passenger Sensing System

If your vehicle has a right front passenger seat, your vehicle has a passenger sensing system for the right front passenger position. The passenger airbag status indicator will be visible on the instrument panel when you start your vehicle.



**United States**



**Canada**

The words ON and OFF, or the symbol for on and off, will be visible during the system check. When the system check is complete, either the word ON or the word OFF, or the symbol for on or off, will be visible. See *Passenger Airbag Status Indicator on page 3-34*.

The passenger sensing system will turn off the right front passenger frontal airbag under certain conditions. The driver airbags are not part of the passenger sensing system.

The passenger sensing system works with sensors that are part of the right front passenger seat and safety belt. The sensors are designed to detect the presence of a properly-seated occupant and determine if the right front passenger frontal airbag should be enabled (may inflate) or not.

Accident statistics show that children are safer if they are restrained in the rear rather than the front seat.

We recommend that children be secured in a rear seat, including: an infant or a child riding in a rear-facing child restraint; a child riding in a forward-facing child seat; an older child riding in a booster seat; and children, who are large enough, using safety belts.

A label on your sun visor says, "Never put a rear-facing child seat in the front." This is because the risk to the rear-facing child is so great, if the airbag deploys.

## **CAUTION:**

**A child in a rear-facing child restraint can be seriously injured or killed if the right front passenger's airbag inflates. This is because the back of the rear-facing child restraint would be very close to the inflating airbag.**

**Even if the passenger sensing system has turned off the right front passenger's frontal airbag, no system is fail-safe. No one can guarantee that an airbag will not deploy under some unusual circumstance, even though it is turned off. Rear-facing child restraints should be secured in a rear seat, even if the airbag is off.**

**If you secure a forward-facing child restraint in the right front seat, always move the front passenger seat as far back as it will go. It is better to secure the child restraint in a rear seat.**

If your vehicle does not have a rear seat that will accommodate a rear-facing child restraint, we recommend that rear-facing child restraints not be transported in your vehicle, even if the airbag is off.

The passenger sensing system is designed to turn off the right front passenger frontal airbag if:

- The right front passenger seat is unoccupied.
- The system determines that an infant is present in a rear-facing infant seat.
- The system determines that a small child is present in a child restraint.
- The system determines that a small child is present in a booster seat.
- A right front passenger takes his/her weight off of the seat for a period of time.
- The right front passenger seat is occupied by a smaller person, such as a child who has outgrown child restraints.
- Or, if there is a critical problem with the airbag system or the passenger sensing system.

When the passenger sensing system has turned off the right front passenger frontal airbag, the off indicator will light and stay lit to remind you that the airbag is off. See *Passenger Airbag Status Indicator on page 3-34*.

If a child restraint has been installed and the on indicator is lit, turn the vehicle off. Remove the child restraint from the vehicle and reinstall the child restraint following the child restraint manufacturer's directions and refer to *Securing a Child Restraint in the Right Front Seat Position on page 1-51*.

If, after reinstalling the child restraint and restarting the vehicle, the on indicator is still lit, check to make sure that the vehicle's seatback is not pressing the child restraint into the seat cushion. If this happens, slightly recline the vehicle's seatback and adjust the seat cushion if possible. Also make sure the child restraint is not trapped under the vehicle head restraint. If this happens, adjust the head restraint. See *Head Restraints on page 1-2*.

Remove any additional material from the seat such as blankets, cushions, seat covers, seat heaters, or seat massagers before reinstalling or securing the child restraint.

If the on indicator is still lit, secure the child in the child restraint in a rear seat position in the vehicle, and check with your dealer/retailer. If no rear seat is available, do not install a child restraint in this vehicle, and check with your dealer/retailer.

The passenger sensing system is designed to enable (may inflate) the right front passenger frontal airbag anytime the system senses that a person of adult size is sitting properly in the right front passenger seat.

When the passenger sensing system has allowed the airbag to be enabled, the on indicator will light and stay lit to remind you that the airbag is active.

For some children who have outgrown child restraints and for very small adults, the passenger sensing system may or may not turn off the right front passenger frontal airbag, depending upon the person's seating posture and body build. Everyone in your vehicle who has outgrown child restraints should wear a safety belt properly — whether or not there is an airbag for that person.

If a person of adult-size is sitting in the right front passenger seat, but the off indicator is lit, it could be because that person is not sitting properly in the seat. If this happens, turn the vehicle off, remove any additional material from the seat, such as blankets, cushions, seat covers, seat heaters or seat massagers and ask the person to place the seatback in the fully upright position, then sit upright in the seat, centered on the seat cushion, with the person's legs comfortably extended. Restart the vehicle and have the person remain in this position for two to three minutes. This will allow the system to detect that person and then enable the right front passenger frontal airbag.



Safety belts help keep the passenger in position on the seat during vehicle maneuvers and braking, which helps the passenger sensing system maintain the passenger airbag status. See “Safety Belts” and “Child Restraints” in the Index for additional information about the importance of proper restraint use.

If you ever pull the shoulder portion of the belt out all the way, you will engage the child restraint locking feature. This may unintentionally cause the passenger sensing system to turn the airbag(s) off for some adult size occupants. If this happens, just let the belt go back all the way and start again.

 **CAUTION:**

**If the airbag readiness light in the instrument panel cluster ever comes on and stays on, it means that something may be wrong with the airbag system. If this ever happens, have the vehicle serviced promptly, because an adult-size person sitting in the right front passenger's seat may not have the protection of the airbag(s). See *Airbag Readiness Light on page 3-33* for more on this, including important safety information.**

A thick layer of additional material, such as a blanket or cushion, or aftermarket equipment such as seat covers, seat heaters, and seat massagers can affect how well the passenger sensing system operates. We recommend that you not use seat covers or other aftermarket equipment other than any that GM has approved for your specific vehicle. See *Adding Equipment to Your Airbag-Equipped Vehicle on page 1-70* for more information about modifications that can affect how the system operates.

 **CAUTION:**

**Stowing of articles under the passenger's seat or between the passenger's seat cushion and seatback may interfere with the proper operation of the passenger sensing system.**

## Servicing Your Airbag-Equipped Vehicle

Airbags affect how your vehicle should be serviced. There are parts of the airbag system in several places around your vehicle. Your dealer/retailer and the service manual have information about servicing your vehicle and the airbag system. To purchase a service manual, see *Service Publications Ordering Information on page 7-15*.

### CAUTION:

**For up to 10 seconds after the ignition is turned off and the battery is disconnected, an airbag can still inflate during improper service. You can be injured if you are close to an airbag when it inflates. Avoid yellow connectors. They are probably part of the airbag system. Be sure to follow proper service procedures, and make sure the person performing work for you is qualified to do so.**

## Adding Equipment to Your Airbag-Equipped Vehicle

**Q: Is there anything I might add to or change about the vehicle that could keep the airbags from working properly?**

**A:** Yes. If you add things that change your vehicle's frame, bumper system, height, front end or side sheet metal, they may keep the airbag system from working properly. Changing or moving any parts of the front seats, safety belts, the airbag sensing and diagnostic module, steering wheel, instrument panel, roof-rail airbag modules, ceiling headliner or pillar garnish trim, front sensors, side impact sensors, rollover sensor module, or airbag wiring can affect the operation of the airbag system.

In addition, your vehicle has a passenger sensing system for the right front passenger's position, which includes sensors that are part of the passenger's seat. The passenger sensing system may not operate properly if the original seat trim is replaced with non-GM covers, upholstery or trim, or with GM covers, upholstery or trim designed for a different vehicle. Any object, such as an aftermarket seat heater or a comfort enhancing pad or device, installed under or on top of the seat fabric, could also interfere with the operation of the passenger sensing system. This could either prevent proper deployment of the passenger airbag(s) or prevent the passenger sensing system from properly turning off the passenger airbag(s). See *Passenger Sensing System on page 1-65*.

If you have any questions about this, you should contact Customer Assistance before you modify your vehicle. The phone numbers and addresses for Customer Assistance are in Step Two of the Customer Satisfaction Procedure in this manual. See *Customer Satisfaction Procedure on page 7-2*.

If your vehicle has rollover roof-rail airbags, see *Different Size Tires and Wheels on page 5-70* for additional important information.

**Q: Because I have a disability, I have to get my vehicle modified. How can I find out whether this will affect my airbag system?**

**A:** If you have questions, call Customer Assistance. The phone numbers and addresses for Customer Assistance are in Step Two of the Customer Satisfaction Procedure in this manual. See *Customer Satisfaction Procedure on page 7-2*.

In addition, your dealer/retailer and the service manual have information about the location of the airbag sensors, sensing and diagnostic module and airbag wiring.

# Restraint System Check

## Checking the Restraint Systems

### Safety Belts

Now and then, make sure the safety belt reminder light and all your belts, buckles, latch plates, retractors and anchorages are working properly.

Look for any other loose or damaged safety belt system parts. If you see anything that might keep a safety belt system from doing its job, have it repaired.

Torn or frayed safety belts may not protect you in a crash. They can rip apart under impact forces. If a belt is torn or frayed, get a new one right away.

Make sure the safety belt reminder light is working. See *Safety Belt Reminders on page 3-32* for more information.

Keep safety belts clean and dry. See *Care of Safety Belts on page 5-89*.

### Airbags

The airbag system does not need regularly scheduled maintenance or replacement. Make sure the airbag readiness light is working. See *Airbag Readiness Light on page 3-33* for more information.

**Notice:** If an airbag covering is damaged, opened, or broken, the airbag may not work properly. Do not open or break the airbag coverings. If there are any opened or broken airbag covers, have the airbag covering and/or airbag module replaced. For the location of the airbag modules, see *What Makes an Airbag Inflate? on page 1-63*. See your dealer/retailer for service.

## Replacing Restraint System Parts After a Crash

### CAUTION:

**A crash can damage the restraint systems in your vehicle. A damaged restraint system may not properly protect the person using it, resulting in serious injury or even death in a crash. To help make sure your restraint systems are working properly after a crash, have them inspected and any necessary replacements made as soon as possible.**

If you have had a crash, do you need new belts or LATCH system (if equipped) parts?

After a very minor crash, nothing may be necessary. But the belt assemblies that were used during any crash may have been stressed or damaged. See your dealer/retailer to have your safety belt assemblies inspected or replaced.

If your vehicle has the LATCH system and it was being used during a crash, you may need new LATCH system parts.

New parts and repairs may be necessary even if the belt or LATCH system (if equipped), was not being used at the time of the crash.

If an airbag inflates, you will need to replace airbag system parts. See the part on the airbag system earlier in this section.

Have your safety belt pretensioners checked if your vehicle has been in a crash, if your airbag readiness light stays on after you start your vehicle, or while you are driving. See *Airbag Readiness Light* on page 3-33.



## Section 2 Features and Controls

---

<b>Keys</b> .....	2-3	<b>Starting and Operating Your Vehicle</b> .....	2-18
Remote Keyless Entry (RKE) System .....	2-4	New Vehicle Break-In .....	2-18
Remote Keyless Entry (RKE) System		Ignition Positions .....	2-18
Operation .....	2-5	Retained Accessory Power (RAP) .....	2-19
Remote Vehicle Start .....	2-7	Starting the Engine .....	2-20
<b>Doors and Locks</b> .....	2-9	Engine Coolant Heater .....	2-21
Door Locks .....	2-9	Automatic Transmission Operation (Base) .....	2-22
Power Door Locks .....	2-9	Automatic Transmission Operation (Uplevel) .....	2-25
Delayed Locking .....	2-9	Parking Brake .....	2-28
Automatic Door Lock .....	2-9	Shifting Into PARK (P)	
Automatic Door Unlock .....	2-10	(Automatic Transmission) .....	2-29
Rear Door Security Locks .....	2-10	Shifting Out of PARK (P) .....	2-31
Lockout Protection .....	2-10	Parking Over Things That Burn .....	2-31
Liftgate .....	2-11	Engine Exhaust .....	2-32
<b>Windows</b> .....	2-12	Running the Vehicle While Parked .....	2-32
Power Windows .....	2-13	<b>Mirrors</b> .....	2-33
Sun Visors .....	2-14	Manual Rearview Mirror .....	2-33
<b>Theft-Deterrent Systems</b> .....	2-14	Automatic Dimming Rearview Mirror .....	2-33
Content Theft-Deterrent .....	2-14	Outside Power Mirrors .....	2-34
PASS-Key® III+ Electronic Immobilizer .....	2-16	Outside Convex Mirror .....	2-34
PASS-Key® III+ Electronic Immobilizer		<b>OnStar® System</b> .....	2-35
Operation .....	2-16	<b>Universal Home Remote System</b> .....	2-38
		Universal Home Remote System Operation	
		(With One Triangular LED) .....	2-39

## Section 2 Features and Controls

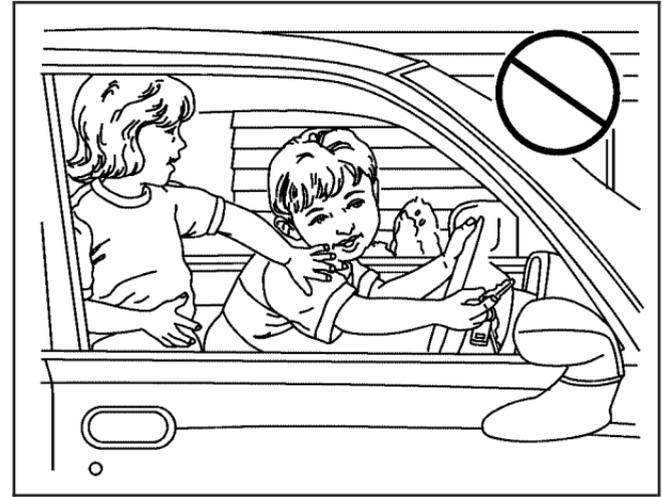
---

<b>Storage Areas</b> .....	2-43	Luggage Carrier .....	2-46
Glove Box .....	2-43	Rear Seat Armrest .....	2-47
Cupholders .....	2-44	Convenience Net .....	2-47
Instrument Panel Storage .....	2-44	Cargo Cover .....	2-47
Sunglasses Storage Compartment .....	2-44	Cargo Tie Downs .....	2-48
Front Storage Area .....	2-44	Cargo Management System .....	2-48
Center Console Storage .....	2-45	<b>Sunroof</b> .....	2-49

# Keys

## CAUTION:

Leaving children in a vehicle with the ignition key is dangerous for many reasons, children or others could be badly injured or even killed. They could operate the power windows or other controls or even make the vehicle move. The windows will function with the keys in the ignition and they could be seriously injured or killed if caught in the path of a closing window. Do not leave the keys in a vehicle with children.



The two keys can be used for the ignition and all locks.

The key code is stamped on the key number plate and can be used to make new keys at any dealer/retailer. Store this information in a safe place outside your vehicle.

**Notice: If you ever lock your keys in your vehicle, you may have to damage the vehicle to get in. Be sure you have spare keys.**

If you are locked out of your vehicle, contact Roadside Assistance. See *Roadside Assistance Program* on page 7-7 for more information.

## Remote Keyless Entry (RKE) System

If this vehicle has the Remote Keyless Entry (RKE) system, it operates on a radio frequency subject to Federal Communications Commission (FCC) Rules and with Industry Canada.

This device complies with Part 15 of the FCC Rules. Operation is subject to the following two conditions:

1. This device may not cause interference.
2. This device must accept any interference received, including interference that may cause undesired operation of the device.

This device complies with RSS-210 of Industry Canada. Operation is subject to the following two conditions:

1. This device may not cause interference.
2. This device must accept any interference received, including interference that may cause undesired operation of the device.

Changes or modifications to this system by other than an authorized service facility could void authorization to use this equipment.

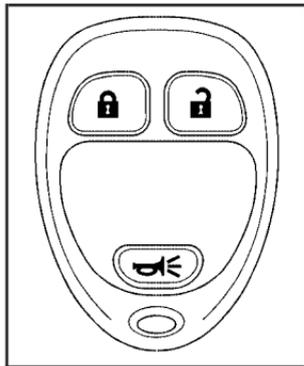
If there is a decrease in the RKE operating range, try this:

- Check the distance. The transmitter may be too far from the vehicle. Stand closer during rainy or snowy weather.
- Check the location. Other vehicles or objects may be blocking the signal. Take a few steps to the left or right, hold the transmitter higher, and try again.
- Check the transmitter's battery. See "Battery Replacement" later in this section.
- If the transmitter is still not working correctly, see your dealer/retailer or a qualified technician for service.

## Remote Keyless Entry (RKE) System Operation

The Remote Keyless Entry (RKE) transmitter functions will work up to 195 feet (60 m) away, however, the operating range may be less while the vehicle is running.

There are other conditions which can affect the performance of the transmitter. See *Remote Keyless Entry (RKE) System* on page 2-4.



**Without Remote Start  
Shown (With Remote  
Start Similar)**

**Ⓚ (Remote Vehicle Start):** If your vehicle has this feature, press Ⓚ to start the engine from outside the vehicle using the RKE transmitter. See *Remote Vehicle Start* on page 2-7 for additional information.

**🔒 (Lock):** Press 🔒 to lock all the doors, including the liftgate.

**🔓 (Unlock):** Press 🔓 to unlock the driver's door. If 🔓 is pressed again within five seconds, all remaining doors will unlock. The interior lamps will come on and stay on for 20 seconds or until the ignition is turned on.

**🚗 (Vehicle Locator/Panic Alarm):** Press and release 🚗 to locate your vehicle. The turn signal lamps will flash and the horn will sound three times. Press and hold 🚗 for more than two seconds to activate the panic alarm. The turn signal lamps will flash and the horn will sound repeatedly for 30 seconds. The alarm will turn off when the ignition is moved to ON/RUN or 🚗 is pressed again. The ignition must be in LOCK/OFF for the panic alarm to work.

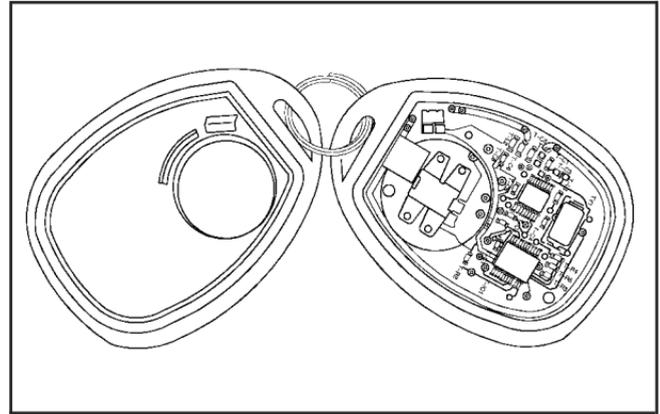
## Matching Transmitter(s) to Your Vehicle

Each RKE transmitter is coded to prevent another transmitter from unlocking your vehicle. If a transmitter is lost or stolen, a replacement can be purchased through your dealer/retailer. All transmitters need to be re-coded to match the new transmitter. The lost transmitter will no longer work after the new transmitters are re-coded. The vehicle can have a maximum of eight transmitters matched to it.

## Battery Replacement

The battery is weak if the transmitter will not work at the normal range in any location. If you have to get close to your vehicle before the transmitter works, change the battery.

**Notice:** When replacing the battery, use care not to touch any of the circuitry. Static from your body transferred to these surfaces may damage the transmitter.



To replace the battery in the RKE transmitter:

1. Separate the halves of the transmitter with a flat, thin object inserted into the notch on the side.
2. Remove the old battery. Do not use a metal object.
3. Insert the new battery, positive side facing down. Replace with a CR2032 or equivalent battery.
4. Put the transmitter back together tightly.

## Remote Vehicle Start

Your vehicle may have a remote starting feature. This feature allows you to start the engine from outside of the vehicle. It may also start up the vehicle's heating or air conditioning systems and rear window defogger. Normal operation of the system will return after the key is turned to the ON/RUN position.

If your vehicle has an automatic climate control system, during remote start, the climate control system will default to a heating mode during colder outside temperatures and a cooling mode during warmer outside temperatures. If your vehicle does not have an automatic climate control system, during remote start, the climate control system will turn on at the setting the vehicle was set to when the vehicle was last turned off.

Laws in some communities may restrict the use of remote starters. For example, some laws may require a person using the remote start to have the vehicle in view when doing so. Check local regulations for any requirements on remote starting of vehicles.

If your vehicle is low on fuel, only one 10 minute remote start is allowed to help avoid running out of fuel.

If your vehicle has the remote start feature, the RKE transmitter functions will have an increased range of operation. However, the range may be less while the vehicle is running.

There are other conditions which can affect the performance of the transmitter, see *Remote Keyless Entry (RKE) System on page 2-4* for additional information.

 **(Remote Start):** This button will be on the RKE transmitter if you have remote start.

To start your vehicle:

1. Aim the transmitter at the vehicle.
2. Press and release the transmitter's lock button, then immediately press and hold the transmitter's remote start button until the turn signal lights flash. If you cannot see the vehicle's lights, press and hold the remote start button for at least two seconds. The vehicle's doors will lock. Pressing the remote start button again after the vehicle has started will turn off the ignition. When the vehicle starts, the parking lamps will turn on and remain on while the vehicle is running.
3. If it is the vehicle's first remote start since it was last driven, repeat these steps while the engine is still running to give a 10 minute time extension. Remote start can be extended one time.

When you enter the vehicle during a remote start, and the engine is still running, turn the key to the ON/RUN position to drive the vehicle.

If the vehicle is left running it will automatically shut off after 10 minutes unless a time extension has been done.

To manually shut off a remote start:

- Aim the RKE transmitter at the vehicle and press the remote start button until the parking lamps turn off.
- Turn on the hazard warning flashers.
- Turn the ignition switch on and then off.

The vehicle can be remote started two separate times between driving sequences. The engine will run for 10 minutes after each remote start.

Or, you can extend the engine run time by another 10 minutes within the first 10 minute remote start time frame, and before the engine stops.

For example, if the lock button and then the remote start buttons are pressed again after the vehicle has been running for five minutes, 10 minutes are added, allowing the engine to run for 15 minutes.

The additional ten minutes are considered a second remote vehicle start.

Once two remote starts, or a single remote start with one time extension has been done, the vehicle must be started with the key.

After the key is removed from the ignition, the vehicle can be remote started again.

The vehicle cannot be remote started if the key is in the ignition, the hood is not closed, or if there is an emission control system malfunction.

Also, the engine will turn off during a remote vehicle start if the coolant temperature gets too high or if the oil pressure gets low.

## **Remote Start Ready**

If your vehicle does not have the remote vehicle start feature, it may have the remote start ready feature. This feature allows your dealer/retailer to add the manufacturer's remote vehicle start feature.

See your dealer/retailer if you would like to add the manufacturer's remote vehicle start feature to your vehicle.

# Doors and Locks

## Door Locks

### CAUTION:

**Unlocked doors can be dangerous.**

- **Passengers, especially children, can easily open the doors and fall out of a moving vehicle. When a door is locked, the handle will not open it. You increase the chance of being thrown out of the vehicle in a crash if the doors are not locked. So, wear safety belts properly and lock the doors whenever you drive.**
- **Young children who get into unlocked vehicles may be unable to get out. A child can be overcome by extreme heat and can suffer permanent injuries or even death from heat stroke. Always lock your vehicle whenever you leave it.**
- **Outsiders can easily enter through an unlocked door when you slow down or stop your vehicle. Locking your doors can help prevent this from happening.**

To lock or unlock the driver's door, use the key from the outside or the door lock from the inside.

## Power Door Locks

: The power door lock switches are located on the driver's door.

- To unlock the doors, press the right side of the switch.
- Remove the ignition key and press the left side of the switch to lock all of the doors.

## Delayed Locking

A chime will sound to indicate a door or liftgate is open when you try to lock the doors with the power door lock switch. The doors will not lock, and the theft-deterrent system will not arm until all the doors are closed and five seconds have passed.

## Automatic Door Lock

The vehicle's doors are programmed to lock when the shift lever is moved into a forward gear.

If someone needs to get in or out of the vehicle after the doors have been locked, place the shift lever into PARK (P). You may also unlock all doors using the power door lock switch or unlock one door using the inside manual door lock.

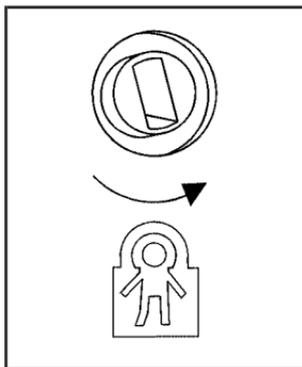
The automatic door lock feature cannot be disabled.

## Automatic Door Unlock

The doors will automatically unlock when the shift lever is moved into PARK (P).

## Rear Door Security Locks

Your vehicle has rear door security locks to prevent passengers from opening the rear doors from the inside.



Open the rear doors to access the security locks on the inside edge of each door.

To set the locks, insert a key into the slot and turn it to the horizontal position. The door can only be opened from the outside with the door unlocked. To return the door to normal operation, turn the slot to the vertical position.

## Lockout Protection

When you press the power door lock switch with the key in the ignition, and any door is open, all the doors lock and the driver's door unlocks. When doors are closed with the key in the ignition, the horn will sound as a reminder.

If you lock the doors with the remote Keyless Entry (RKE) transmitter, and the key is in the ignition, a chime sounds and all except the driver's door lock.

The lockout protection feature can be overridden by holding the power door lock switch for three seconds.

## Liftgate

### CAUTION:

It can be dangerous to drive with the liftgate or liftglass open because carbon monoxide (CO) gas can come into your vehicle. You cannot see or smell CO. It can cause unconsciousness and even death. If you must drive with the liftgate open or if electrical wiring or other cable connections must pass through the seal between the body and the liftgate or liftglass:

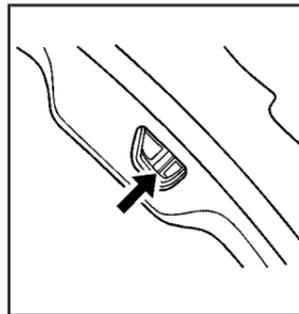
- Make sure all other windows are shut.
- Turn the fan on your climate control system to its highest speed and select the control setting that will force outside air into your vehicle. See “Climate Control System” in the Index.
- If you have air outlets on or under the instrument panel, open them all the way. See *Engine Exhaust* on page 2-32.

To lock or unlock the liftgate, press the button on the Remote Keyless Entry (RKE) transmitter twice or the power door lock switch.

To open the liftgate, press the touchpad on the underside of the liftgate handle and pull up.

To close the liftgate, pull down using the handle and close until it latches.

### Liftgate Operation with Loss of Power



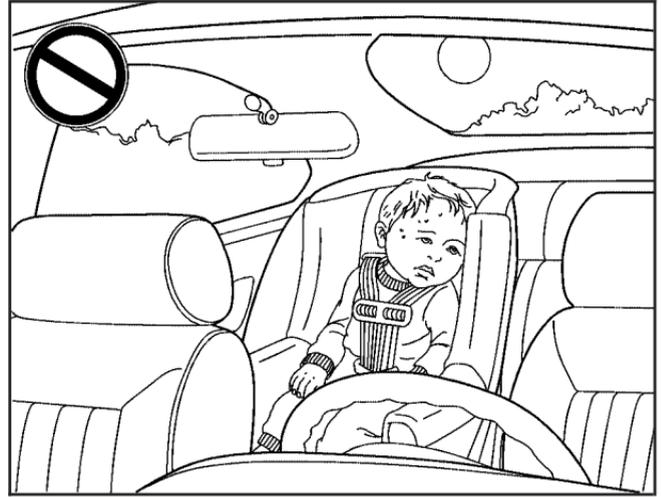
To open the liftgate if the vehicle's battery is disconnected or the voltage is low, access the release lever.

Remove the interior trim cover on the inside of the liftgate. Use a tool to push the lever on the latch until the liftgate releases.

# Windows

## CAUTION:

Leaving children, helpless adults, or pets in a vehicle with the windows closed is dangerous. They can be overcome by the extreme heat and suffer permanent injuries or even death from heat stroke. Never leave a child, a helpless adult, or a pet alone in a vehicle, especially with the windows closed in warm or hot weather.

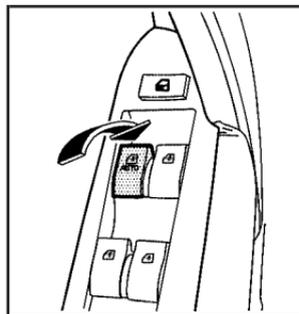


## Power Windows

### CAUTION:

Leaving children in a vehicle with the keys is dangerous for many reasons, children or others could be badly injured or even killed. They could operate the power windows or other controls or even make the vehicle move. The windows will function and they could be seriously injured or killed if caught in the path of a closing window. Do not leave keys in a vehicle with children.

When there are children in the rear seat use the window lockout button to prevent unintentional operation of the windows.



The window switches for all doors are located on the driver's door.

Each door also has a switch for its own window.

To open a window, pull up on the switch. To close a window, press the switch.

The power windows operate when the ignition is in ON/RUN or ACC/ACCESSORY, or while in Retained Accessory Power (RAP). See *Retained Accessory Power (RAP)* on page 2-19.

## Express-Down Window

The driver's window switch has an express-down feature that allows the window to be lowered without holding the switch. Press the switch part way, and the driver's window will open a small amount. Press the switch down all the way and release it and the window will go down automatically.

To stop the window while it is lowering, press and release the switch.

## Window Lockout

 **(Window Lockout):** Your vehicle has a lockout feature to prevent rear seat passengers from operating the windows. Press the lockout button, located with the power window switches, to turn the feature on and off.

## Sun Visors

To block out glare, swing the sun visor down. You can also detach the driver's sun visor from the center mount and slide it along the rod from side-to-side for greater coverage.

## Visor Vanity Mirrors

On vehicles with covered visor vanity mirrors, pull down the sun visor to access the vanity mirror.

## Lighted Visor Vanity Mirrors

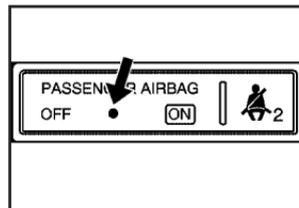
On vehicles with lighted visor vanity mirrors, pull down the sun visor to access the vanity mirror. The lights will come on when you lift the cover.

## Theft-Deterrent Systems

Vehicle theft is big business, especially in some cities. This vehicle has theft-deterrent features, however, they do not make it impossible to steal.

## Content Theft-Deterrent

Your vehicle may have a content theft-deterrent alarm system.



**United States shown,  
Canada similar**

The security light is located near the center of the instrument panel.

To arm the theft-deterrent system, press the lock button on the RKE transmitter when all doors and the hood (vehicles started with the remote start feature only) are closed. The security light will come on solid for approximately 30 seconds and then flashes slowly. If the lock button on the RKE transmitter is pressed a second time, the theft-deterrent system will activate immediately, bypassing the 30 second delay. The content theft deterrent alarm is not armed until the security light flashes slowly.

If any door, liftgate or the hood (vehicles started with the remote start feature only) are opened without using the key or pressing the unlock button on the RKE transmitter, the exterior lamps flash and the horn will sound for about 30 seconds. If the lock or unlock button on the RKE transmitter is not pressed, the alarm sounds and periodically repeats. If the system does not operate as described above, see your dealer/retailer for service.

The theft-deterrent system also activates if you lock the doors with a key.

To avoid setting off the alarm by accident, always unlock a door with the RKE transmitter or a key. Unlocking a door any other way will set off the alarm if the system has been armed.

If you set off the alarm by accident, turn off the alarm by pressing lock or unlock on the RKE transmitter or by placing the key in the ignition and turning it to START.

## Testing the Alarm

To test the alarm:

1. From inside the vehicle, lower the driver's window and open the driver's door.
2. Get out of the vehicle, close the door and activate the system by locking the doors with the RKE transmitter.
3. Wait for the security light to flash slowly.
4. Then reach in through the window, unlock the door with the manual door lock and open the door. This should set off the alarm.

If the alarm does not sound when it should, but the vehicle's headlamps flash, check to see if the horn works. The horn fuse may be blown. To replace the fuse, see *Fuses and Circuit Breakers on page 5-97*.

If the alarm does not sound or the vehicle's headlamps do not flash, see your dealer/retailer for service.

## **PASS-Key® III+ Electronic Immobilizer**

The PASS-Key® III+ system operates on a radio frequency subject to Federal Communications Commission (FCC) Rules and with Industry Canada.

This device complies with Part 15 of the FCC Rules. Operation is subject to the following two conditions:

1. This device may not cause harmful interference.
2. This device must accept any interference received, including interference that may cause undesired operation.

This device complies with RSS-210 of Industry Canada. Operation is subject to the following two conditions:

1. This device may not cause interference.
2. This device must accept any interference received, including interference that may cause undesired operation of the device.

Changes or modifications to this system by other than an authorized service facility could void authorization to use this equipment.

PASS-Key® III+ uses a radio frequency transponder in the key that matches a decoder in the vehicle.

## **PASS-Key® III+ Electronic Immobilizer Operation**

Your vehicle has PASS-Key® III+ (Personalized Automotive Security System) theft-deterrent system. PASS-Key® III+ is a passive theft-deterrent system.

The system is automatically armed when the key is removed from the ignition.

You do not have to manually arm or disarm the system.

The security light will come on if there is a problem with arming or disarming the theft-deterrent system.

When the PASS-Key® III+ system senses that someone is using the wrong key, it prevents the vehicle from starting. Anyone using a trial-and-error method to start the vehicle will be discouraged because of the high number of electrical key codes.

When trying to start the vehicle if the engine does not start and the security light on the instrument panel cluster comes on, there may be a problem with your theft-deterrent system. Turn the ignition off and try again.

If the engine still does not start, and the key appears to be not damaged, wait about five minutes and try another ignition key. At this time, you may also want to check the fuse, see *Fuses and Circuit Breakers on page 5-97*. If the engine still does not start with the other key, your vehicle needs service. If your vehicle does start, the first key may be faulty. See your dealer/retailer who can service the PASS-Key® III+ to have a new key made. In an emergency, contact Roadside Assistance. See *Roadside Assistance Program on page 7-7*.

It is possible for the PASS-Key® III+ decoder to “learn” the transponder value of a new or replacement key. Up to 10 keys may be programmed for the vehicle. The following procedure is for programming additional keys only. If all the currently programmed keys are lost or do not operate, you must see your dealer/retailer or a locksmith who can service PASS-Key® III+ to have keys made and programmed to the system.

See your dealer/retailer or a locksmith who can service PASS-Key® III+ to get a new key blank that is cut exactly as the ignition key that operates the system.

To program the new key:

1. Verify that the new key has a ⊕ stamped on it.
2. Insert the already programmed key in the ignition and start the engine. If the engine will not start, see your dealer/retailer for service.
3. After the engine has started, turn the key to LOCK/OFF, and remove the key.
4. Insert the key to be programmed and turn it to the ON/RUN position within five seconds of the original key being turned to the LOCK/OFF position. The security light will turn off once the key has been programmed.
5. Repeat Steps 1 through 4 if additional keys are to be programmed.

If you lose or damage your PASS-Key® III+ key, see your dealer/retailer or a locksmith who can service PASS-Key® III+ to have a new key made.

Do not leave the key or device that disarms or deactivates the theft deterrent system in the vehicle.

# Starting and Operating Your Vehicle

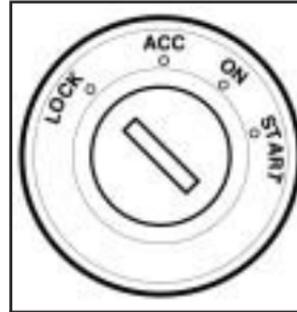
## New Vehicle Break-In

**Notice:** Your vehicle does not need an elaborate break-in. But it will perform better in the long run if you follow these guidelines:

- Do not drive at any one constant speed, fast or slow, for the first 500 miles (805 km). Do not make full-throttle starts. Avoid downshifting to brake or slow the vehicle.
- Avoid making hard stops for the first 200 miles (322 km) or so. During this time the new brake linings are not yet broken in. Hard stops with new linings can mean premature wear and earlier replacement. Follow this breaking-in guideline every time you get new brake linings.
- Do not tow a trailer during break-in. See *Towing a Trailer on page 4-44* for the trailer towing capabilities of your vehicle and more information.

Following break-in, engine speed and load can be gradually increased.

## Ignition Positions



The ignition switch can be turned to four different positions with the key.

To shift out of PARK (P), the ignition must be in ON/RUN and the brake pedal must be pressed.

**Notice:** Using a tool to force the key from the ignition switch could cause damage or break the key. Use the correct key and turn the key only with your hand. Make sure the key is in all the way. If none of this works, then your vehicle needs service.

**LOCK/OFF:** This position locks the steering wheel, ignition, shift lever and transmission. This is the only position in which you can insert or remove the key. If the steering wheel is locked, move it from right to left and turn the key to ACC/ACCESSORY. If none of this works, then your vehicle needs service.

**ACC (ACC/ACCESSORY):** This position operates some of the electrical accessories, such as the radio, but not the climate control system.

Use ACC/ACCESSORY if you must have your vehicle in motion while the engine is off, for example, if your vehicle is being pushed or towed.

**ON/RUN:** This is the position the switch returns after you start the engine and release the key. The switch stays in ON/RUN when the engine is running. But even when the engine is not running, you can use ON/RUN to operate the electrical accessories, and to display some instrument panel warning lights.

The battery could be drained if you leave the key in the ACC/ACCESSORY or ON/RUN position with the engine off. You may not be able to start your vehicle if the battery is allowed to drain for an extended period of time.

**START:** This position starts the engine. When the engine starts, release the key. The switch returns to ON/RUN for normal driving. Do not turn the key to START if the engine is running.

Even if the engine is not running, ACC/ACCESSORY and ON/RUN allow you to operate electrical accessories, such as the radio.

## Key In the Ignition

Never leave your vehicle with the keys inside, as it is an easy target for joy riders or thieves. If you leave the key in the ignition and park your vehicle, a chime will sound, when you open the driver's door. Always remember to remove your key from the ignition and take it with you. This will lock your ignition and transmission. Also, always remember to lock the doors.

The battery could be drained if you leave the key in the ignition while your vehicle is parked. You may not be able to start your vehicle after it has been parked for an extended period of time.

## Retained Accessory Power (RAP)

These vehicle accessories may be used for up to 10 minutes after the ignition key is turned off:

- Outside Mirror
- Power Windows
- Radio

All these features work when the ignition key is in the ON/RUN or ACC/ACCESSORY positions, until a door is opened.

## Starting the Engine

Move your shift lever to PARK (P) or NEUTRAL (N). Your engine will not start in any other position – this is a safety feature. To restart when you are already moving, use NEUTRAL (N) only.

**Notice:** Do not try to shift to PARK (P) if your vehicle is moving. If you do, you could damage the transmission. Shift to PARK (P) only when your vehicle is stopped.

### Starting Procedure

1. With your foot off the accelerator pedal, turn the ignition key to START. When the engine starts, let go of the key. The idle speed will go down as your engine gets warm. Do not race the engine immediately after starting it. Operate the engine and transmission gently to allow the oil to warm up and lubricate all moving parts.

Your vehicle has a Computer-Controlled Cranking System. This feature assists in starting the engine and protects components. If the ignition key is turned to the START position, and then released when the engine begins cranking, the engine will continue cranking for a few seconds or until the vehicle starts. If the engine does not start and the key is held in START for many seconds, cranking will be stopped after 15 seconds to prevent cranking motor damage.

To prevent gear damage, this system also prevents cranking if the engine is already running. Engine cranking can be stopped by turning the ignition switch to the ACC/ACCESSORY or LOCK/OFF position.

**Notice:** Cranking the engine for long periods of time, by returning the key to the START position immediately after cranking has ended, can overheat and damage the cranking motor, and drain the battery. Wait at least 15 seconds between each try, to let the cranking motor cool down.

2. If the engine does not start after 5-10 seconds, especially in very cold weather (below 0°F or -18°C), it could be flooded with too much gasoline. Try pushing the accelerator pedal all the way to the floor and holding it there as you hold the key in START for up to a maximum of 15 seconds. Wait at least 15 seconds between each try, to allow the cranking motor to cool down. When the engine starts, let go of the key and accelerator. If the vehicle starts briefly but then stops again, do the same thing. This clears the extra gasoline from the engine. Do not race the engine immediately after starting it. Operate the engine and transmission gently until the oil warms up and lubricates all moving parts.

**Notice:** The engine is designed to work with the electronics in your vehicle. If you add electrical parts or accessories, you could change the way the engine operates. Before adding electrical equipment, check with your dealer/retailer. If you do not, your engine might not perform properly. Any resulting damage would not be covered by your vehicle's warranty.

## Engine Coolant Heater

The engine coolant heater, if available, can help in cold weather conditions at or below 0°F (-18°C) for easier starting and better fuel economy during engine warm-up. Plug in the coolant heater at least four hours before starting your vehicle. An internal thermostat in the plug-end of the cord may exist which will prevent engine coolant heater operation at temperatures above 0° F (-18° C).

### To Use the Engine Coolant Heater

1. Turn off the engine.
2. Open the hood and unwrap the electrical cord. The engine coolant heater cord is located near the air cleaner box on the passenger side of the engine compartment. See *Engine Compartment Overview on page 5-12* for more information on location.
3. Plug the cord into a normal, grounded 110-volt AC outlet.

### CAUTION:

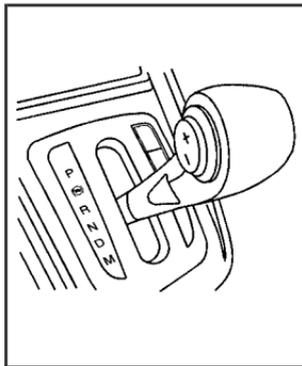
**Plugging the cord into an ungrounded outlet could cause an electrical shock. Also, the wrong kind of extension cord could overheat and cause a fire. You could be seriously injured. Plug the cord into a properly grounded three-prong 110-volt AC outlet. If the cord will not reach, use a heavy-duty three-prong extension cord rated for at least 15 amps.**

4. Before starting the engine, be sure to unplug and store the cord as it was before to keep it away from moving engine parts. If you do not, it could be damaged.

How long should you keep the coolant heater plugged in? The answer depends on the outside temperature, the kind of oil you have, and some other things. Instead of trying to list everything here, we ask that you contact your dealer/retailer in the area where you will be parking your vehicle. The dealer/retailer can give you the best advice for that particular area.

## Automatic Transmission Operation (Base)

If your vehicle is equipped with an automatic transmission, the shift lever is located on the console between the seats.



There are several different positions for the automatic transmission.

**PARK (P):** This position locks your front wheels. It is the best position to use when you start your engine because your vehicle cannot move easily.

### CAUTION:

**It is dangerous to get out of your vehicle if the shift lever is not fully in PARK (P) with the parking brake firmly set. Your vehicle can roll.**

**Do not leave your vehicle when the engine is running unless you have to. If you have left the engine running, the vehicle can move suddenly. You or others could be injured. To be sure your vehicle will not move, even when you are on fairly level ground, always set your parking brake and move the shift lever to PARK (P). See *Shifting Into PARK (P) (Automatic Transmission)* on page 2-29. If you are pulling a trailer, see *Towing a Trailer* on page 4-44.**

Make sure the shift lever is fully in PARK (P) before starting the engine. Your vehicle has an automatic transmission shift lock control system. You have to fully apply your regular brakes first and then press the shift lever button before you can shift from PARK (P) when the ignition key is in ON/RUN.

If you cannot shift out of PARK (P), ease pressure on the shift lever and push the shift lever all the way into PARK (P) as you maintain brake application. Then press the shift lever button and move the shift lever into another gear. See *Shifting Out of PARK (P) on page 2-31*.

**REVERSE (R):** Use this gear to back up.

**Notice:** Shifting to REVERSE (R) while your vehicle is moving forward could damage the transmission. The repairs would not be covered by your warranty. Shift to REVERSE (R) only after your vehicle is stopped.

To rock your vehicle back and forth to get out of snow, ice or sand without damaging your transmission, see *If Your Vehicle is Stuck in Sand, Mud, Ice, or Snow on page 4-34*.

**NEUTRAL (N):** In this position, your engine does not connect with the wheels. To restart when you are already moving, use NEUTRAL (N) only. Also, use NEUTRAL (N) when your vehicle is being towed.

## CAUTION:

**Shifting into a drive gear while the engine is running at high speed is dangerous. Unless your foot is firmly on the brake pedal, your vehicle could move very rapidly. You could lose control and hit people or objects. Do not shift into a drive gear while your engine is running at high speed.**

**Notice:** Shifting out of PARK (P) or NEUTRAL (N) with the engine running at high speed may damage the transmission. The repairs would not be covered by your warranty. Be sure the engine is not running at high speed when shifting your vehicle.

**DRIVE (D):** This position is for normal driving with the automatic transmission. It provides the best fuel economy for your vehicle. If you need more power for passing, and you are:

- Going less than about 35 mph (55 km/h), push your accelerator pedal about halfway down.
- Going about 35 mph (55 km/h), push your accelerator all the way down.

Downshifting the transmission in slippery road conditions could result in skidding, see “Skidding” under *Loss of Control on page 4-13*.

**MANUAL (M):** This position allows you to change gears similar to a manual transmission. If your vehicle has this feature, see Manual Shift Mode.

**Notice:** Spinning the tires or holding the vehicle in one place on a hill using only the accelerator pedal may damage the transmission. The repair will not be covered by your warranty. If you are stuck, do not spin the tires. When stopping on a hill, use the brakes to hold the vehicle in place.

## Manual Shift Mode (MSM) (Automatic Transmission)

To use this feature, do the following:

1. Move the shift lever from DRIVE (D) rearward to the MANUAL MODE (M).

The six-speed transmission will downshift to a lower gear and the instrument panel will display the gear range selected. If equipped with a 4-speed transmission it will display a three (3) for third gear range.

When coming to a stop in the manual position, the vehicle will automatically shift to FIRST (1) gear.

2. Press the plus (+) button to upshift or the minus (-) button to downshift.

While using the MSM feature the vehicle will have sportier performance. You can use this when driving hilly roads to stay in gear longer or to downshift for more power or engine braking.

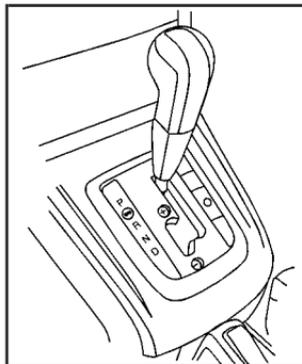
The transmission will only allow you to shift into a gear range appropriate for the vehicle speed.

- The transmission will not automatically shift to the next higher gear range without pressing the button on the shifter handle.
- The transmission will not allow shifting to the next lower gear if the vehicle speed is too high.

If the vehicle does not respond to a gear change, or detects a problem with the transmission, the range of gears may be reduced and the Malfunction Indicator Lamp will come on. See *Malfunction Indicator Lamp on page 3-41*.

## Automatic Transmission Operation (Uplevel)

If your vehicle has an automatic transmission, the shift lever is located on the console between the seats.



There are several different positions for the automatic transmission.

**PARK (P):** This position locks the front wheels. It is the best position to use when starting the engine because your vehicle cannot move easily.

### **CAUTION:**

**It is dangerous to get out of your vehicle if the shift lever is not fully in PARK (P) with the parking brake firmly set. Your vehicle can roll.**

**Do not leave your vehicle when the engine is running unless you have to. If you have left the engine running, the vehicle can move suddenly. You or others could be injured. To be sure your vehicle will not move, even when you are on fairly level ground, always set your parking brake and move the shift lever to PARK (P). See *Shifting Into PARK (P) (Automatic Transmission)* on page 2-29. If you are pulling a trailer, see *Towing a Trailer* on page 4-44.**

Make sure the shift lever is fully in PARK (P) before starting the engine. Your vehicle has an automatic transmission shift lock control system. The regular brakes must be applied first and then the shift lever button pressed before you can shift from PARK (P) when the ignition key is in ON/RUN.

If you cannot shift out of PARK (P), ease pressure on the shift lever and push the shift lever all the way into PARK (P) as you maintain brake application. Then press the shift lever button and move the shift lever into another gear. See *Shifting Out of PARK (P)* on page 2-31.

**REVERSE (R):** Use this gear to back up.

**Notice:** Shifting to REVERSE (R) while your vehicle is moving forward could damage the transmission. The repairs would not be covered by your warranty. Shift to REVERSE (R) only after your vehicle is stopped.

To rock your vehicle back and forth to get out of snow, ice or sand without damaging the transmission, see *If Your Vehicle is Stuck in Sand, Mud, Ice, or Snow* on page 4-34.

**NEUTRAL (N):** In this position, the engine does not connect with the wheels. To restart when you are already moving, use NEUTRAL (N) only. Also, use NEUTRAL (N) when your vehicle is being towed.

## CAUTION:

Shifting into a drive gear while the engine is running at high speed is dangerous. Unless your foot is firmly on the brake pedal, your vehicle could move very rapidly. You could lose control and hit people or objects. Do not shift into a drive gear while your engine is running at high speed.

**Notice:** Shifting out of PARK (P) or NEUTRAL (N) with the engine running at high speed may damage the transmission. The repairs would not be covered by your warranty. Be sure the engine is not running at high speed when shifting your vehicle.

**DRIVE (D):** This position is for normal driving with the automatic transmission. It provides the best fuel economy for your vehicle. If you need more power for passing, and you are:

- Going less than about 35 mph (55 km/h), push the accelerator pedal about halfway down.
- Going about 35 mph (55 km/h), push the accelerator all the way down.

Downshifting the transmission in slippery road conditions could result in skidding, see “Skidding” under *Loss of Control on page 4-13*.

**Notice:** Spinning the tires or holding the vehicle in one place on a hill using only the accelerator pedal may damage the transmission. The repair will not be covered by your warranty. If you are stuck, do not spin the tires. When stopping on a hill, use the brakes to hold the vehicle in place.

## Manual Shift Mode (MSM) (Automatic Transmission)

To use this feature, do the following:

1. Move the shift lever from DRIVE (D) to the left into the manual gate.  
While driving in manual shift mode, the transmission will remain in the driver gear selected. When coming to a stop in the manual position, the vehicle will automatically shift to FIRST (1) gear.
2. Push the shift lever forward toward the plus (+) to upshift or rearward toward the minus (–) to downshift. The instrument panel will display the actual gear selected.

In manual shift mode all six forward gears can be selected.

While using the MSM feature the vehicle will have operation similar to a manual transmission. You can use this for sport driving or when driving hilly roads to stay in gear longer or to downshift for more power or engine braking.

The transmission will only allow you to shift into gears appropriate for the vehicle speed:

- The transmission will not automatically shift to the next higher gear without moving the shift lever.
- The transmission will not allow shifting to the next lower gear if the vehicle speed is too high.

If the vehicle does not respond to a gear change, or detects a problem with the transmission, the range of gears may be reduced and the Malfunction Indicator Lamp will come on. See *Malfunction Indicator Lamp on page 3-41*.

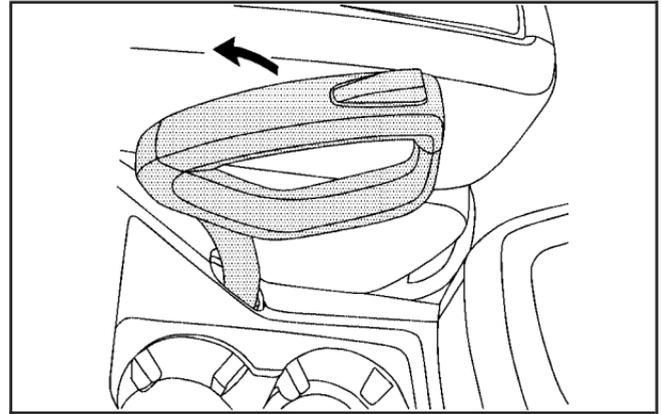
## SECOND (2) and THIRD (3) Gear Start Feature

When accelerating your vehicle from a stop in snowy and icy conditions, you may want to select SECOND (2) and THIRD (3) gear. A higher gear, and light application of the gas pedal, may allow you to gain more traction on slippery surfaces.

With the Manual Shift Mode, the vehicle can accelerate from a stop in SECOND (2) or THIRD (3).

1. Move the shift lever from DRIVE (D) into the manual gate.
2. With the vehicle stopped, move the shift lever forward to select SECOND (2) or THIRD (3). The vehicle will start from a stop position in SECOND (2) or THIRD (3).
3. Once the vehicle is moving select the desired drive gear or move the shift lever to the DRIVE (D) position.

## Parking Brake



The parking brake lever is located to the right of the driver's seat.

To set the parking brake, hold the brake pedal down and pull up on the parking brake lever. If the ignition is on, the brake system warning light will come on.

To release the parking brake, hold the brake pedal down. Pull the parking brake lever up until you can press the release button. Hold the release button in as you move the brake lever all the way down.

Release the parking brake before driving the vehicle.

**Notice:** Driving with the parking brake on can overheat the brake system and cause premature wear or damage to brake system parts. Make sure that the parking brake is fully released and the brake warning light is off before driving.

## Shifting Into PARK (P) (Automatic Transmission)

### CAUTION:

It can be dangerous to get out of your vehicle if the shift lever is not fully in PARK (P) with the parking brake firmly set. Your vehicle can roll. If you have left the engine running, the vehicle can move suddenly. You or others could be injured. To be sure your vehicle will not move, even when you are on fairly level ground, use the steps that follow. If you are pulling a trailer, see *Towing a Trailer on page 4-44*.

To shift into PARK (P), do the following:

1. Hold the brake pedal down with your right foot and set the parking brake. See *Parking Brake on page 2-28* for more information.
2. Move the shift lever into PARK (P) by holding in the button on the shift lever and pushing the lever all the way toward the front of the vehicle.
3. Turn the ignition key to LOCK/OFF.
4. Remove the key and take it with you. If you can leave your vehicle with the key in your hand, your vehicle is in PARK (P).

## Leaving Your Vehicle With the Engine Running (Automatic Transmission)

### CAUTION:

**It can be dangerous to leave your vehicle with the engine running. Your vehicle could move suddenly if the shift lever is not fully in PARK (P) with the parking brake firmly set. And, if you leave the vehicle with the engine running, it could overheat and even catch fire. You or others could be injured. Do not leave your vehicle with the engine running.**

If you have to leave your automatic transmission vehicle with the engine running, be sure your vehicle is in PARK (P) and your parking brake is firmly set before you leave it. After you have moved the shift lever into PARK (P), hold the regular brake pedal down. Then, see if you can move the shift lever away from PARK (P) without first pulling it toward you. If you can, it means that the shift lever was not fully locked into PARK (P).

## Torque Lock (Automatic Transmission)

If you are parking on a hill and you do not shift into PARK (P) properly, the weight of the vehicle may put too much force on the parking pawl in the transmission. You may find it difficult to pull the shift lever out of PARK (P). This is called “torque lock.” To prevent torque lock, set the parking brake and then shift into PARK (P) properly before you leave the driver’s seat. To find out how, see *Shifting Into PARK (P) (Automatic Transmission)* on page 2-29.

When you are ready to drive, move the shift lever out of PARK (P) before you release the parking brake.

If torque lock does occur, you may need to have another vehicle push yours a little uphill to take some of the pressure from the parking pawl in the transmission, so you can pull the shift lever out of PARK (P).

## Shifting Out of PARK (P)

This vehicle has an electronic shift lock release system. The shift lock release is designed to:

- Prevent ignition key removal unless the shift lever is in PARK (P) with the shift lever button fully released, and
- Prevent movement of the shift lever out of PARK (P), unless the ignition is in ON/RUN and the regular brake pedal is applied.

The shift lock release is always functional except in the case of an uncharged or low voltage (less than 9 volt) battery.

If your vehicle has an uncharged battery or a battery with low voltage, try charging or jump starting the battery. See *Jump Starting on page 5-37* for more information.

To shift out of PARK (P) use the following:

1. Apply the brake pedal.
2. Press the shift lever button.
3. Move the shift lever to the desired position.

If you still are unable to shift out of PARK (P):

1. Fully release the shift lever button.
2. Hold the brake pedal down and press the shift lever button again.
3. Move the shift lever to the desired position.

If you still cannot move the shift lever from PARK (P), consult your dealer/retailer or a professional towing service.

## Parking Over Things That Burn

### CAUTION:

**Things that can burn could touch hot exhaust parts under your vehicle and ignite. Do not park over papers, leaves, dry grass, or other things that can burn.**

## Engine Exhaust

### CAUTION:

Engine exhaust can kill. It contains the gas carbon monoxide (CO), which you cannot see or smell. It can cause unconsciousness and death.

You might have exhaust coming in if:

- The exhaust system sounds strange or different.
- Your vehicle gets rusty underneath.
- Your vehicle was damaged in a collision.
- Your vehicle was damaged when driving over high points on the road or over road debris.
- Repairs were not done correctly.
- Your vehicle or the exhaust system has been modified improperly.

If you ever suspect exhaust is coming into your vehicle:

- Drive it only with all the windows down to blow out any CO; and
- Have your vehicle fixed immediately.

## Running the Vehicle While Parked

It is better not to park with the engine running. But if you ever have to, here are some things to know.

### CAUTION:

Idling the engine with the climate control system off could allow dangerous exhaust into your vehicle. See the earlier caution under *Engine Exhaust on page 2-32*.

Also, idling in a closed-in place can let deadly carbon monoxide (CO) into your vehicle even if the climate control fan is at the highest setting. One place this can happen is a garage. Exhaust — with CO — can come in easily. NEVER park in a garage with the engine running.

Also see “If You Are Caught in a Blizzard” under *Winter Driving on page 4-31*.

 **CAUTION:**

**It can be dangerous to get out of your vehicle if the shift lever is not fully in PARK (P) with the parking brake firmly set. Your vehicle can roll. Do not leave your vehicle when the engine is running unless you have to. If you have left the engine running, the vehicle can move suddenly. You or others could be injured. To be sure your vehicle will not move, even when you are on fairly level ground, always set the parking brake and move the shift lever to PARK (P).**

Follow the proper steps to be sure your vehicle will not move. See *Shifting Into PARK (P) (Automatic Transmission)* on page 2-29.

If you are parking on a hill and if you are pulling a trailer, also see *Towing a Trailer* on page 4-44.

## Mirrors

### Manual Rearview Mirror

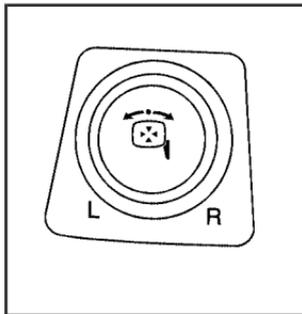
If the vehicle has the manual rearview mirror, it can be adjusted by holding the mirror in the center to move it for a clearer view of behind your vehicle. Reduce the glare of headlamps from behind by pushing the lever forward or pulling it back for daytime/nighttime use.

### Automatic Dimming Rearview Mirror

If the vehicle has the automatic dimming rearview mirror, it can be adjusted by holding the mirror in the center to move it up or down and side to side.

Press and hold the button, located on the mirror, for about three seconds to turn the automatic dimming feature on or off. The indicator light comes on when this feature is active. The automatic dimming feature turns on each time the vehicle is started.

## Outside Power Mirrors



The outside power mirror control is located on the driver side door.

1. Turn the knob to the left (L) for the driver side mirror and to the right (R) for the passenger side mirror.
2. Adjust each mirror so that you can see the side of your vehicle and the area behind your vehicle.
3. Turn the control to the center position so the mirror cannot be moved.

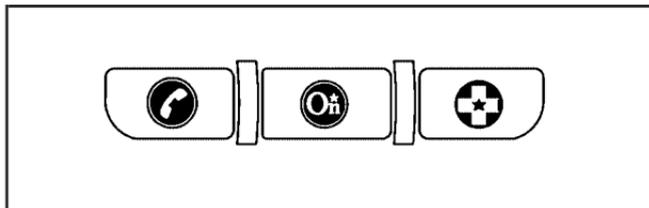
## Outside Convex Mirror

### CAUTION:

**A convex mirror can make things (like other vehicles) look farther away than they really are. If you cut too sharply into the right lane, you could hit a vehicle on your right. Check your inside mirror or glance over your shoulder before changing lanes.**

The passenger side mirror is convex shaped. A convex mirror's surface is curved so more can be seen from the driver seat. It also makes things, like other vehicles, look farther away than they really are.

# OnStar® System



OnStar uses several innovative technologies and live advisors to provide you with a wide range of safety, security, information, and convenience services. If your airbags deploy, the system is designed to make an automatic call to OnStar Emergency advisors who can request emergency services be sent to your location. If you lock your keys in the vehicle, call OnStar at 1-888-4-ONSTAR and they can send a signal to unlock your doors. If you need roadside assistance, press the OnStar button and they can contact Roadside Service for you.

OnStar service is provided to you subject to the OnStar Terms and Conditions. You may cancel your OnStar service at any time by contacting OnStar. A complete OnStar Owner's Guide and the OnStar Terms and Conditions are included in the vehicle's OnStar Subscriber glove box literature. For more information, visit [onstar.com](http://onstar.com) or [onstar.ca](http://onstar.ca), contact OnStar at 1-888-4-ONSTAR (1-888-466-7827) or TTY 1-877-248-2080, or press the OnStar button to speak with an OnStar advisor 24 hours a day, 7 days a week.

Not all OnStar features are available on all vehicles. To check if your vehicle is equipped to provide the services described below, or for a full description of OnStar services and system limitations, see the OnStar Owner's Guide in your glove box or visit [onstar.com](http://onstar.com).

## OnStar Services

For new vehicles with OnStar, the Safe & Sound Plan, or the Directions & Connections Plan is included for one year from the date of purchase. You can extend this plan beyond the first year, or upgrade to the Directions & Connections Plan. For more information, press the OnStar button to speak with an advisor. Some OnStar services (such as Remote Door Unlock or Stolen Vehicle Location Assistance) may not be available until you register with OnStar.

## Available Services with Safe & Sound Plan

- Automatic Notification of Airbag Deployment
- Advanced Automatic Crash Notification (AACN) (If equipped)
- Link to Emergency Services
- Roadside Assistance
- Stolen Vehicle Location Assistance
- AccidentAssist
- Remote Door Unlock/Vehicle Alert
- OnStar Vehicle Diagnostics
- GM Goodwrench On Demand Diagnostics
- OnStar Hands-Free Calling with 30 complimentary minutes
- OnStar Virtual Advisor (U.S. Only)

## Available Services included with Directions & Connections Plan

- All Safe and Sound Plan Services
- Driving Directions - Advisor delivered or OnStar Turn-by-Turn Navigation (If equipped)
- RideAssist
- Information and Convenience Services

## OnStar Hands-Free Calling

OnStar Hands-Free Calling allows eligible OnStar subscribers to make and receive calls using voice commands. Hands-Free Calling is fully integrated into the vehicle, and can be used with OnStar Pre-Paid Minute Packages. Hands-Free Calling may also be linked to a Verizon Wireless service plan in the U.S. or a Bell Mobility service plan in Canada, depending on eligibility. To find out more, refer to the OnStar Owner's Guide in the vehicle's glove box, visit [www.onstar.com](http://www.onstar.com) or [www.onstar.ca](http://www.onstar.ca), or speak with an OnStar advisor by pressing the OnStar button or calling 1-888-4-ONSTAR (1-888-466-7827).

## OnStar Virtual Advisor

OnStar Virtual Advisor is a feature of OnStar Hands-Free Calling that uses your minutes to access location-based weather, local traffic reports, and stock quotes. By pressing the phone button and giving a few simple voice commands, you can browse through the various topics. See the OnStar Owner's Guide for more information (Only available in the continental U.S.).

## OnStar Steering Wheel Controls

Your vehicle may have a Talk/Mute button that can be used to interact with OnStar Hands-Free Calling. See *Audio Steering Wheel Controls on page 3-70* for more information.

On some vehicles, you may have to hold the button for a few seconds and give the command "ONSTAR" to activate the OnStar Hands-Free Calling. OnStar voice command does not work unless Personal Calling is activated. To activate Personal Calling, see the OnStar Owner's Guide.

On some vehicles, the mute button can be used to dial numbers into voicemail systems, or to dial phone extensions. See the OnStar Owner's Guide for more information.

## How OnStar Service Works

Your vehicle's OnStar system has the capability of recording and transmitting vehicle information. This information is automatically sent to an OnStar Call Center at the time of an OnStar button press, Emergency button press or if your airbags or AACN system deploys. The vehicle information usually includes your GPS location and, in the event of a crash, additional information regarding the accident that your vehicle has been involved in (e.g. the direction from which your vehicle was hit). When you use the Virtual Advisor feature of OnStar Hands-Free Calling, your vehicle also sends OnStar your GPS location so that we can provide you with location-based services.

OnStar service cannot work unless your vehicle is in a place where OnStar has an agreement with a wireless service provider for service in that area. OnStar service also cannot work unless you are in a place where the wireless service provider OnStar has hired for that area has coverage, network capacity and reception when the service is needed, and technology that is compatible with the OnStar service. Not all services are available everywhere, particularly in remote or enclosed areas, or at all times.

Location information about your vehicle is only available if the GPS satellite signals are unobstructed and available.

Your vehicle must have a working electrical system (including adequate battery power) for the OnStar equipment to operate. There are other problems OnStar cannot control that may prevent OnStar from providing OnStar service to you at any particular time or place. Some examples are damage to important parts of your vehicle in an accident, hills, tall buildings, tunnels, weather or wireless phone network congestion.

## Your Responsibility

Increase the radio volume if you cannot hear the OnStar advisor. If the light next to the OnStar buttons is red, this means that your system is not functioning properly and should be checked by your dealer/retailer. If the light appears clear (no light is appearing), your OnStar subscription has expired. You can always press the OnStar button to confirm that your OnStar equipment is active.

## Universal Home Remote System

The Universal Home Remote System provides a way to replace up to three hand-held Radio-Frequency (RF) transmitters used to activate devices such as garage door openers, security systems, and home lighting.

This device complies with Part 15 of the FCC Rules. Operation is subject to the following two conditions:

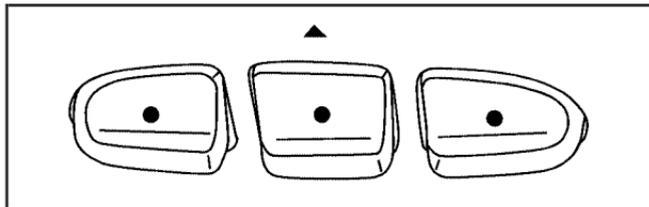
1. This device may not cause harmful interference.
2. This device must accept any interference received, including interference that may cause undesired operation.

This device complies with RSS-210 of Industry Canada. Operation is subject to the following two conditions:

1. This device may not cause interference.
2. This device must accept any interference received, including interference that may cause undesired operation of the device.

Changes or modifications to this system by other than an authorized service facility could void authorization to use this equipment.

## Universal Home Remote System Operation (With One Triangular LED)



If there is one triangular Light Emitting Diode (LED) indicator light above the Universal Home Remote buttons, follow the instructions below.

This system provides a way to replace up to three remote control transmitters used to activate devices such as garage door openers, security systems, and home automation devices.

Do not use the Universal Home Remote with any garage door opener that does not have the stop and reverse feature. This includes any garage door opener model manufactured before April 1, 1982.

Read the instructions completely before attempting to program the Universal Home Remote. Because of the steps involved, it may be helpful to have another person available to assist you in the programming the Universal Home Remote.

Keep the original hand-held transmitter for use in other vehicles as well as for future Universal Home Remote programming. It is also recommended that upon the sale of the vehicle, the programmed Universal Home Remote buttons should be erased for security purposes. See "Erasing Universal Home Remote Buttons" later in this section.

When programming a garage door, park outside of the garage. Park directly in line with and facing the garage door opener motor-head or gate motor-head. Be sure that people and objects are clear of the garage door or gate you are programming.

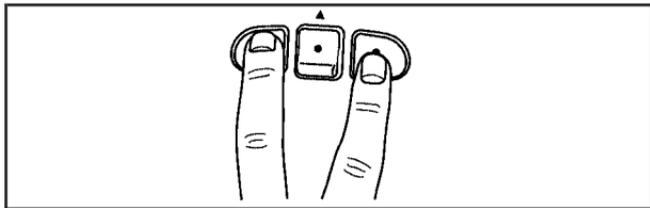
It is recommended that a new battery be installed in your hand-held transmitter for quicker and more accurate transmission of the radio-frequency signal.

## Programming the Universal Home Remote System

If you have questions or need help programming the Universal Home Remote System, call 1-800-355-3515 or go to [www.homelink.com](http://www.homelink.com).

Programming a garage door opener involves time-sensitive actions, so read the entire procedure before you begin. If you do not follow these actions, the device will time out and you will have to repeat the procedure.

To program up to three devices:



1. From inside the vehicle, press and hold down the two outside buttons at the same time, releasing only when the Universal Home Remote indicator light begins to flash, after 20 seconds. This step will erase the factory settings or all previously programmed buttons.

Do not hold down the buttons for longer than 30 seconds and do not repeat this step to program the remaining two Universal Home Remote buttons.

2. Hold the end of your hand-held transmitter about 1 to 3 inches (3 to 8 cm) away from the Universal Home Remote buttons while keeping the indicator light in view. The hand-held transmitter was supplied by the manufacturer of your garage door opener receiver (motor head unit).
3. At the same time, press and hold both the Universal Home Remote button that you would like to use to control the garage door and the hand-held transmitter button. Do not release the Universal Home Remote button or the hand-held transmitter button until Step 4 has been completed.

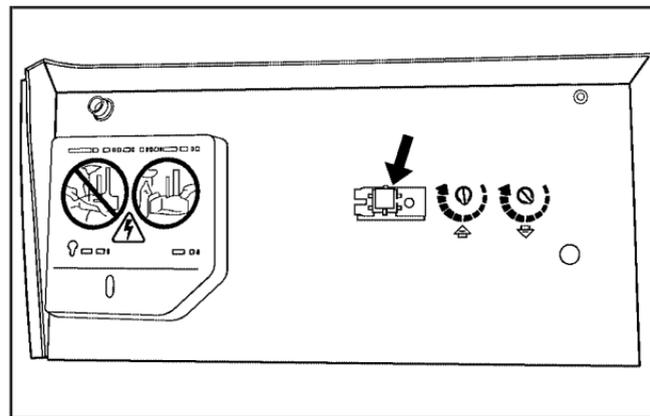
Some entry gates and garage door openers may require you to substitute Step 3 with the procedure noted in "Gate Operator and Canadian Programming" later in this section.

- The indicator light on the Universal Home Remote will flash slowly at first and then rapidly after Universal Home Remote successfully receives the frequency signal from the hand-held transmitter. Release both buttons.
- Press and hold the newly-trained Universal Home Remote button and observe the indicator light.

If the indicator light stays on continuously, the programming is complete and your garage door should move when the Universal Home Remote button is pressed and released. You do not need to continue the programming Steps 6 through 8 and can stop here.

If the Universal Home Remote indicator light blinks rapidly for two seconds and then turns to a constant light, continue with the programming Steps 6 through 8.

It may be helpful to have another person available to assist with the remaining steps.



- After Steps 1 through 5 have been completed, locate inside the garage the garage door opener receiver (motor-head unit). Locate the “Learn” or “Smart” button. The name and color of the button may vary by manufacturer.

7. Firmly press and release the “Learn” or “Smart” button. After you press this button, you will have 30 seconds to complete Step 8.
8. Immediately return to the vehicle. Firmly press and hold the Universal Home Remote button, chosen in Step 3 to control the garage door, for two seconds, and then release it. If the garage door does not move, press and hold the same button a second time for two seconds, and then release it. Again, if the door does not move, press and hold the same button a third time for two seconds, and then release.

The Universal Home Remote should now activate the garage door.

To program the remaining two Universal Home Remote buttons, begin with Step 2 of “Programming the Universal Home Remote System.” Do not repeat Step 1, as this will erase all previous programming from the Universal Home Remote buttons.

## Gate Operator and Canadian Programming

If you have questions or need help programming the Universal Home Remote System, call 1-800-355-3515 or go to [www.homelink.com](http://www.homelink.com).

Canadian radio-frequency laws require transmitter signals to time out or quit after several seconds of transmission. This may not be long enough for Universal Home Remote to pick up the signal during programming. Similarly, some U.S. gate operators are manufactured to time out in the same manner.

If you live in Canada, or you are having difficulty programming a gate operator or garage door opener by using the “Programming Universal Home Remote” procedures, regardless of where you live, replace Step 3 under “Programming Universal Home Remote” with the following:

Continue to press and hold the Universal Home Remote button while you press and release every two seconds (cycle) the hand-held transmitter button until the frequency signal has been successfully accepted by the Universal Home Remote. The Universal Home Remote indicator light will flash slowly at first and then rapidly. Proceed with Step 4 under “Programming Universal Home Remote” to complete.

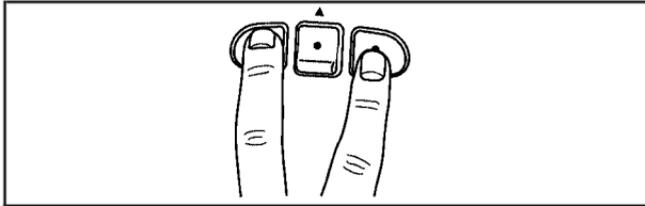
## Using Universal Home Remote

Press and hold the appropriate Universal Home Remote button for at least half of a second. The indicator light will come on while the signal is being transmitted.

## Erasing Universal Home Remote Buttons

Erase the programmed buttons when you sell or terminate your lease.

To erase all programmed buttons on the Universal Home Remote device:



1. Press and hold down the two outside buttons until the indicator light begins to flash, after 20 seconds.
2. Release both buttons.

## Reprogramming a Single Universal Home Remote Button

To reprogram any of the three Universal Home Remote buttons, repeat the programming instructions earlier in this section, beginning with Step 2.

For help or information on the Universal Home Remote System, call the customer assistance phone number under *Customer Assistance Offices on page 7-6*.

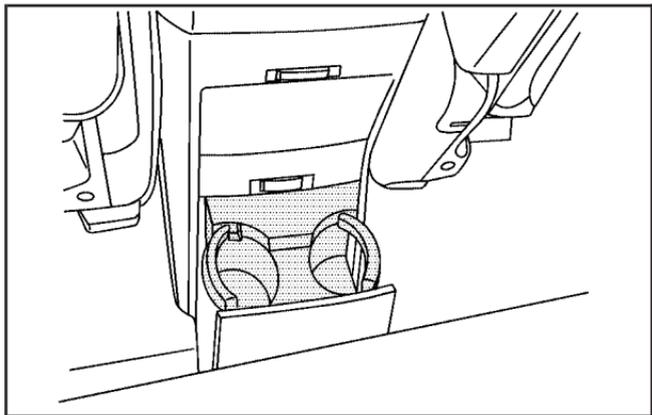
## Storage Areas

### Glove Box

To open the glove box, lift up on the lever. If the glove box has a lock use the key to lock and unlock it. The glove box divider can be removed. The slots on the left side are for storing the divider.

## Cupholders

There are cupholders located in front of and behind the center console.



To access the cupholders behind the center console, push the button.

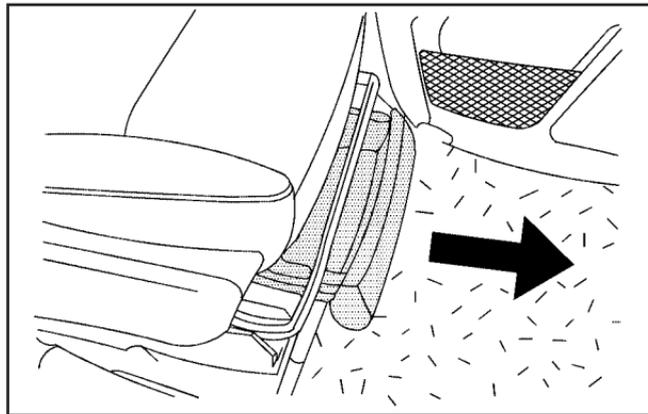
## Instrument Panel Storage

Your vehicle has a storage area located to left of the steering wheel. Pull down on the handle to access.

## Sunglasses Storage Compartment

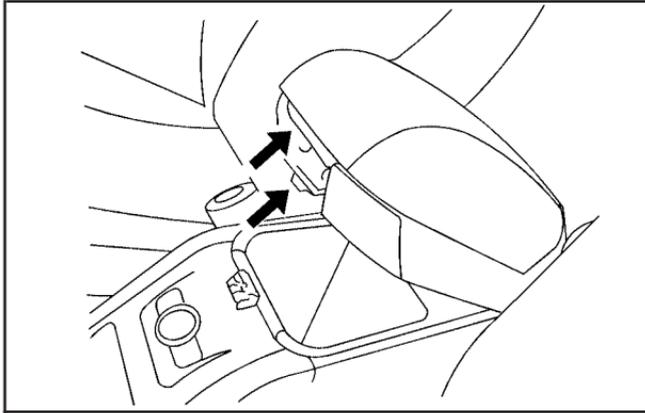
Your vehicle may have a sunglasses storage compartment located near the rearview mirror. Push the cover to open.

## Front Storage Area

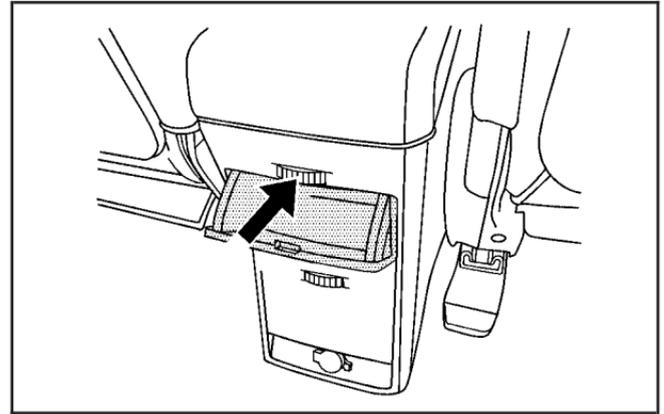


There is a storage area located under the front passenger's seat. To access, lift up on the end of the tray and pull it forward.

## Center Console Storage



Your vehicle has a center console with an upper, lower and rear storage area. To access the upper storage area, lift up on the top lever. To access the lower storage area, lift up on the bottom lever. The top of the center console can extend forward. To adjust, hold the top of the lever up and pull the top of the center console forward.



To open the cover of the rear storage area, push the button located at the top.

## Luggage Carrier

### CAUTION:

If you try to carry something on top of your vehicle that is longer or wider than the luggage carrier — like paneling, plywood, a mattress and so forth — the wind can catch it as you drive along. This can cause you to lose control. What you are carrying could be violently torn off, and this could cause you or other drivers to have a collision, and of course damage your vehicle. You may be able to carry something like this inside. But, never carry something longer or wider than the luggage carrier on top of your vehicle.

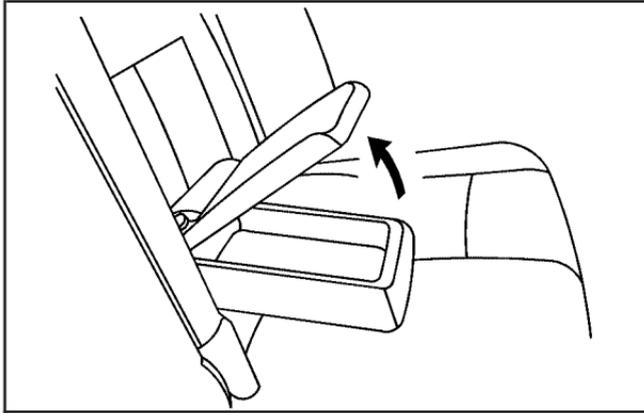
If you have the luggage carrier, you can load things on top of your vehicle. Crossrails are not standard on this vehicle and must be purchased at your dealer/retailer.

**Notice:** Loading cargo on the luggage carrier that weighs more than 200 lbs (91 kg) or hangs over the rear or sides of the vehicle may damage your vehicle. Load cargo so that it rests as far forward as possible and against the side rails, making sure to fasten it securely.

Do not exceed the maximum vehicle capacity when loading your vehicle. For more information on vehicle capacity and loading, see *Loading Your Vehicle on page 4-35*.

To prevent damage or loss of cargo as you are driving, check to make sure the cargo is still securely fastened.

## Rear Seat Armrest

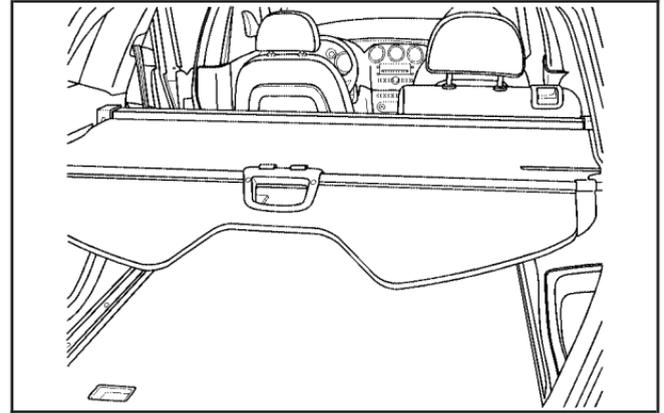


To access the rear seat armrest, pull the handle down. Lift the top of the armrest to access the storage area.

## Convenience Net

Your vehicle may have a convenience net in the rear of the vehicle. Store small loads as far forward as possible. The net should not be used to store heavy loads.

## Cargo Cover



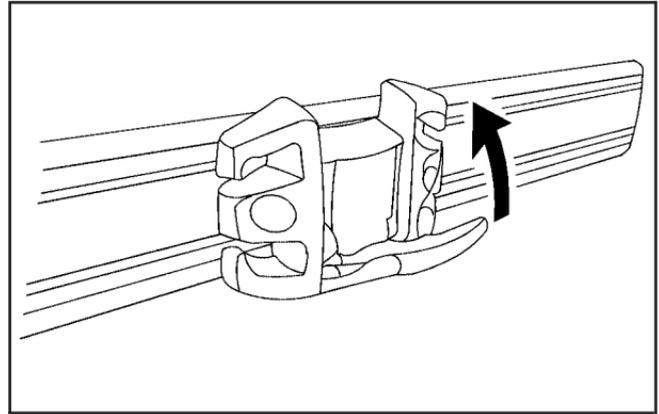
Your vehicle may have a cargo cover. It can be used to cover items in the rear of the vehicle. Pull the cover toward the rear of the vehicle and place each end in the slots provided. To install the cover, place each end of the cover in the holes behind the rear seat. To remove the cover, pull both ends toward each other.

## Cargo Tie Downs

There are four cargo tie-downs located in the rear compartment of the vehicle, that can be used to secure small loads.

## Cargo Management System

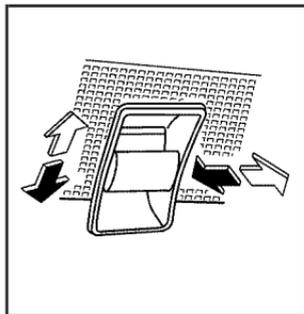
Your vehicle may have a cargo management system in the rear of the vehicle. The system has rails with adapters and hooks. These are used to hold the net and mesh pocket.



The adapters are used to hold the net. Slide the adapters to the desired location on the upper and lower groove of the rail and turn the handle up to lock it in place. Compress the rods of the net and insert them into the corresponding openings of the adapter. The longer rod is for the upper adapter.

The hooks hold the mesh pocket. To insert a hook on the rail, place the hook in the upper groove of the rail and press it into the lower groove.

## Sunroof



The sunroof control switch is located between the sun visors.

To operate the sunroof, the ignition must be in ON/RUN, ACC/ACCESSORY, or in Retained Accessory Power (RAP). See *Retained Accessory Power (RAP)* on page 2-19.

Pull and release the switch quickly to express-open the sunroof. Press and release the switch quickly to stop the sunroof before it is completely open. The sun shade automatically opens with the sunroof. The sunshade cannot be closed with the sunroof open.

To close the sunroof, press the switch. The sunshade must be closed manually.

Pull up on the switch to tilt the sunroof. Push down on the switch to close it. The sunshade must be manually opened and closed when the sunroof is in the vent position.



## Section 3 Instrument Panel

---

<b>Instrument Panel Overview</b> .....	3-4	<b>Climate Controls</b> .....	3-19
Hazard Warning Flashers .....	3-6	Climate Control System .....	3-19
Horn .....	3-6	Automatic Climate Control System .....	3-23
Tilt Wheel .....	3-6	Outlet Adjustment .....	3-28
Turn Signal/Multifunction Lever .....	3-7	Passenger Compartment Air Filter .....	3-28
Turn and Lane-Change Signals .....	3-7	<b>Warning Lights, Gages, and Indicators</b> .....	3-30
Headlamp High/Low-Beam Changer .....	3-8	Instrument Panel Cluster .....	3-31
Flash-to-Pass .....	3-8	Speedometer and Odometer .....	3-32
Windshield Wipers .....	3-8	Trip Odometer .....	3-32
Rainsense™ II Wipers .....	3-9	Tachometer .....	3-32
Windshield Washer .....	3-10	Safety Belt Reminders .....	3-32
Rear Window Wiper/Washer .....	3-11	Airbag Readiness Light .....	3-33
Cruise Control .....	3-11	Passenger Airbag Status Indicator .....	3-34
Exterior Lamps .....	3-14	Charging System Light .....	3-36
Wiper Activated Headlamps .....	3-14	Brake System Warning Light .....	3-37
Daytime Running Lamps (DRL) .....	3-15	Anti-lock Brake System (ABS) Warning Light .....	3-37
Automatic Headlamp System .....	3-15	Speed Sensitive Power Steering (SSPS) Warning Light .....	3-38
Fog Lamps .....	3-16	Traction Control System (TCS) Warning Light .....	3-39
Instrument Panel Brightness .....	3-16	Electronic Stability Program Indicator Light .....	3-39
Dome Lamp .....	3-17	Engine Coolant Temperature Warning Light .....	3-40
Entry Lighting .....	3-17	Tire Pressure Light .....	3-40
Reading Lamps .....	3-17	Malfunction Indicator Lamp .....	3-41
Battery Run-Down Protection .....	3-17	Oil Pressure Light .....	3-43
Accessory Power Outlet(s) .....	3-18		

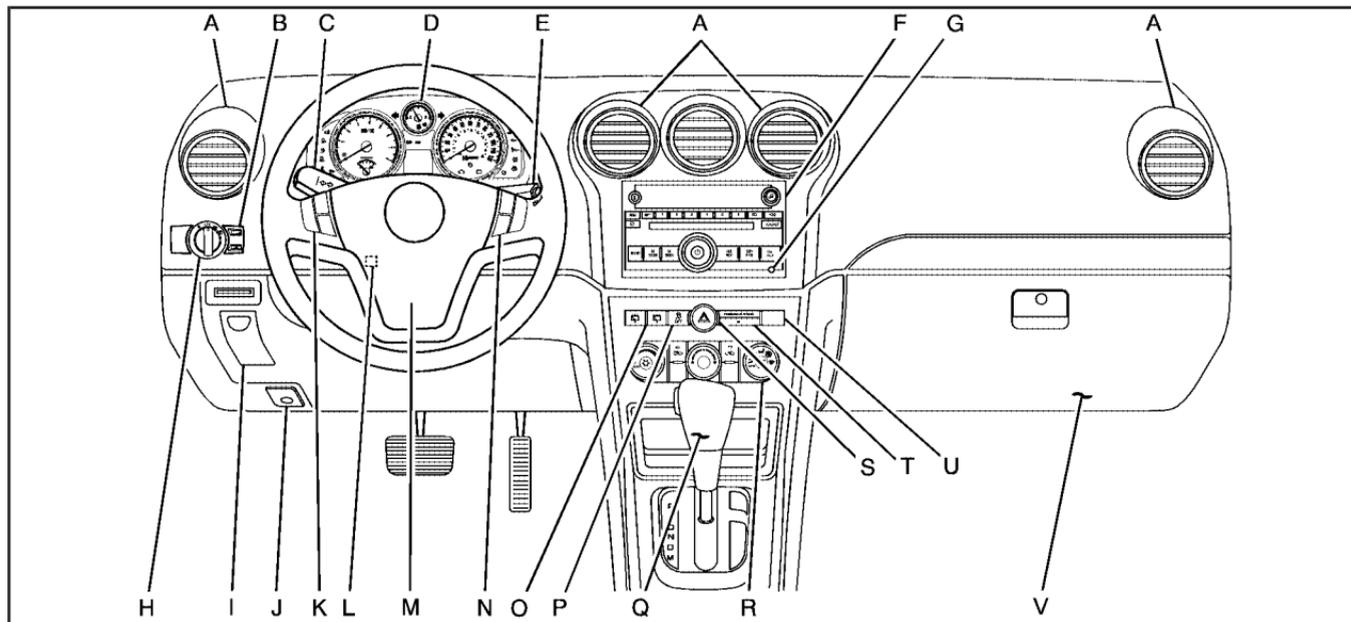
## Section 3 Instrument Panel

---

Low Oil Level Light .....	3-44	<b>Driver Information Center (DIC)</b> .....	3-49
Change Engine Oil Light .....	3-44	DIC Operation and Displays .....	3-49
Security Light .....	3-44	DIC Compass .....	3-50
Fog Lamp Light .....	3-45	<b>Audio System(s)</b> .....	3-52
Cruise Control Light .....	3-45	Setting the Clock .....	3-53
Reduced Engine Power Light .....	3-45	Radio(s) .....	3-55
Highbeam On Light .....	3-46	Using an MP3 .....	3-64
Low Washer Fluid Warning Light .....	3-46	XM Radio Messages .....	3-68
All-Wheel Drive Disabled Light .....	3-46	Navigation/Radio System .....	3-69
Gate Ajar Light .....	3-46	Audio Steering Wheel Controls .....	3-70
Door Ajar Light .....	3-47	Radio Reception .....	3-70
Service Vehicle Soon Light .....	3-47	Fixed Mast Antenna .....	3-71
Fuel Gage .....	3-47	XM™ Satellite Radio Antenna System .....	3-71
Low Fuel Warning Light .....	3-48		



# Instrument Panel Overview

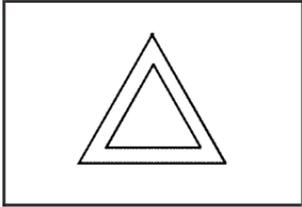


The main components of the instrument panel are the following:

- A. Air Outlets. See *Outlet Adjustment on page 3-28.*
- B. Instrument Panel Brightness Control. See *Instrument Panel Brightness on page 3-16.*
- C. Turn Signal/Multifunction Lever. See *Turn Signal/Multifunction Lever on page 3-7.*
- D. Instrument Panel Cluster. See *Instrument Panel Cluster on page 3-31.*
- E. Windshield Wiper Lever. See *Windshield Wipers on page 3-8.*
- F. Audio System. See *Audio System(s) on page 3-52.*
- G. Auxiliary Input Jack. See *Radio(s) on page 3-55.*
- H. Exterior Lamps Control. See *Exterior Lamps on page 3-14.* Fog Lamp Button (If Equipped). See *Fog Lamps on page 3-16.*
- I. Instrument Panel Storage Area. See *Instrument Panel Storage on page 2-44.*
- J. Hood Release. See *Hood Release on page 5-11.*
- K. Cruise Control Buttons. See *Cruise Control on page 3-11.*
- L. Tilt Wheel Lever. See *Tilt Wheel on page 3-6.*
- M. Horn. See *Horn on page 3-6.*
- N. Audio Steering Wheel Controls. See *Audio Steering Wheel Controls on page 3-70.*
- O. Rear Window Wiper/Washer. See *Rear Window Wiper/Washer on page 3-11.*
- P. Traction Control System Button. See *Traction Control System (TCS) on page 4-7.*
- Q. Shift Lever. See *Automatic Transmission Operation (Base) on page 2-22* or *Automatic Transmission Operation (Uplevel) on page 2-25.*
- R. Climate Control. See *Climate Control System on page 3-19.*
- S. Hazard Warning Flasher Button. See *Hazard Warning Flashers on page 3-6.*
- T. Passenger Air Bag Status Indicator. See *Passenger Airbag Status Indicator on page 3-34.*
- U. Passenger Safety Belt Reminder Display. See *Safety Belt Reminders on page 3-32.*
- V. Glove Box. See *Glove Box on page 2-43.*

## Hazard Warning Flashers

The hazard warning flashers let you warn the police and others that you have a problem. The front and rear turn signal lamps will flash on and off.



The hazard warning flasher button is on the instrument panel.

Press the button to make the front and rear turn signal lamps flash on and off. Press again to turn the flashers completely off.

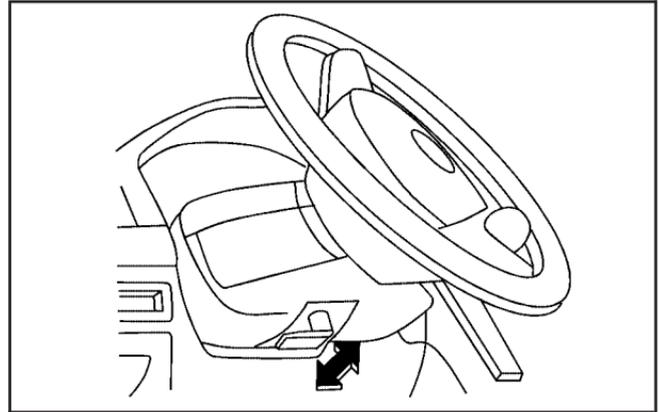
The hazard warning flashers work even if the key is not in the ignition switch.

## Horn

Press near or on the horn symbols on the steering wheel pad to sound the horn.

## Tilt Wheel

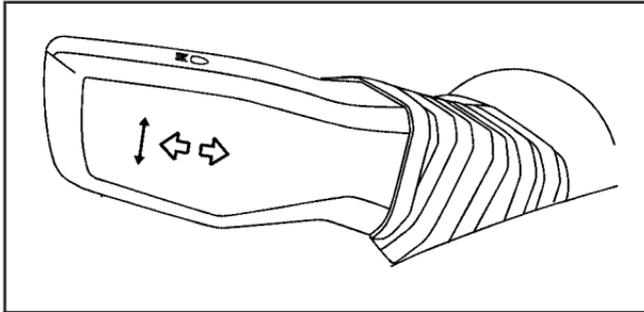
The vehicle has a tilt steering wheel which can be adjusted before driving.



The tilt lever is on the lower left side of the steering column.

To tilt the wheel, hold the wheel and push the lever down. Then, move the wheel to a comfortable position and pull the lever up firmly to lock the steering column in place.

## Turn Signal/Multifunction Lever



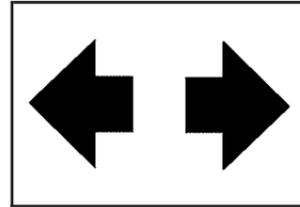
The lever on the left side of the steering column includes:

-  Turn and Lane-Change Signals. See *Turn and Lane-Change Signals* on page 3-7.
-  Headlamp High/Low-Beam Changer. See *Headlamp High/Low-Beam Changer* on page 3-8.
- Flash-to-Pass Feature. See *Flash-to-Pass* on page 3-8.

## Turn and Lane-Change Signals

The turn signal has one upward (for right) and one downward (for left) positions, which allow you to signal a turn or a lane change.

To signal a turn, move the lever all the way up or down. When the turn is finished, the lever returns automatically to the original position.



An arrow on the instrument panel cluster flashes in the direction of the turn or lane change.

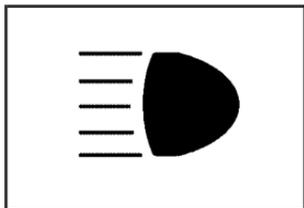
To signal a lane change, slightly raise or lower the lever until the arrow starts to flash and release the lever. The turn signal flashes automatically three times.

As you signal a turn or a lane change, if the arrows flash rapidly, a signal bulb may be burned out and other drivers will not see your turn signal.

If a bulb is burned out, replace it to help avoid an accident. If the arrows do not go on at all when you signal a turn, check the fuse, see *Fuses and Circuit Breakers* on page 5-97 and for burned-out bulbs.

## Headlamp High/Low-Beam Changer

To change the headlamps from low beam to high or high beam to low, push the turn signal lever all the way towards the instrument panel and release it.



This indicator light turns on in the instrument panel cluster when the high beams are on.

## Flash-to-Pass

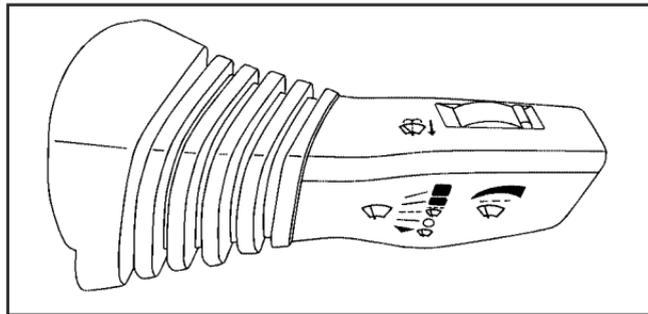
This feature lets you use your high-beam headlamps to signal a driver in front of you that you want to pass.

To flash the high beams from low beam, pull the turn signal/multifunction lever all the way towards you. Then release it.

## Windshield Wipers

Clear ice and snow from the wiper blades before using them. If the wiper blades are frozen to the windshield, gently loosen or thaw them. If the blades do become damaged, install new blades or blade inserts. See *Windshield Wiper Blade Replacement on page 5-50*.

Heavy snow or ice can overload the wiper motor. A circuit breaker will stop the motor until it cools down. Clear away snow or ice to prevent an overload.



The lever on the right side of the steering column operates the windshield wipers. Push up or pull down on the lever to place it in one of the following positions.

 **(Mist):** Pull the lever down and release it for a single wiping cycle. The lever will return to its original position. For more cycles, hold the lever down before releasing it.

 **(Off):** Move the lever to this position to turn off the wipers.

 **(Intermittent):** Move the lever to this position to set a delay between wipes. To set for a shorter or longer delay between wipes, move the switch on top of the lever left or right to decrease or increase wiper movement.

 **(Low):** Move the lever to this position for slow, steady wiping cycles.

 **(High):** Move the lever to this position for rapid wiping cycles.

## Rainsense™ II Wipers

If your vehicle has Rainsense™ II windshield wipers, the moisture sensor is located next to the inside rearview mirror and is mounted on the windshield. When active, these sensors are able to detect moisture on the windshield and automatically turn on the wipers.

To turn on the Rainsense™ feature, the wipers must be set to one of the five delay settings on the multifunction lever. Each of the five settings adjusts the sensitivity of the rainsensor.

Since different drivers have different setting preferences, it is recommended that the mid-range setting (position 3) be used initially. For more wipes, select the higher settings; for fewer wipes, select the lower settings located closer to the off position on the multifunction lever.

The rainsensor will automatically control the frequency of the wipes from the off setting to the high speed setting according to the weather conditions. The wipers can be left in a rainsense mode even when it is not raining.

When Rainsense™ is active, the headlamps will turn on automatically if the exterior lamp control is in the AUTO position and the wipers are active.

**Notice:** Going through an automatic car wash with the wipers on can damage them. Turn the wipers off when going through an automatic car wash.

## Windshield Washer

### CAUTION:

**In freezing weather, do not use your washer until the windshield is warmed. Otherwise the washer fluid can form ice on the windshield, blocking your vision.**

Pull the windshield wiper lever toward you to spray washer fluid on the windshield. The wipers will run for a few cycles to clear the windshield. For more wash cycles, pull the lever forward and hold.

## Heated Windshield Washer

If your vehicle has the Rainsense™ windshield wiper system, the windshield washer fluid is heated. For more information about Rainsense™ wipers, see *Rainsense™ II Wipers on page 3-9*. The heated windshield washer only works with the front wiper system, not the rear wiper system. This feature helps to clear ice, snow, tree sap, or bugs from the windshield.

The heated windshield washer fluid system automatically turns on when the windshield washer fluid is used while the rear window defogger is turned on. For more information about the rear window defogger, see *Climate Control System on page 3-19* or *Automatic Climate Control System on page 3-23*. This activation begins four heated wash/wipe cycles. The first heated wash/wipe cycle can take up to 40 seconds to occur, depending on outside temperature. After the first wash/wipe cycle, it can take up to 20 seconds for each of the remaining cycles.

When the heated windshield washer fluid system is activated under certain outside temperature conditions, steam might flow out of the washer nozzles for a short period of time before washer fluid is sprayed. This is a normal condition.

## Rear Window Wiper/Washer

The rear wiper and rear wash button is located on the instrument panel above the climate control system.

 **(Rear Wiper/Washer):** Press this button to wash and wipe the rear window.

The rear window washer uses the same reservoir as the windshield washer. Check the windshield washer reservoir level if the front windshield can be worked, but no fluid is sprayed when the rear washer is activated. See *Windshield Washer Fluid on page 5-32*.

 **(Delay):** Press this button to turn the delayed wiping on or off.

## Cruise Control

With cruise control, the vehicle can maintain a speed of about 25 mph (40 km/h) or more without keeping your foot on the accelerator. This can really help on long trips. Cruise control does not work at speeds below 25 mph (40 km/h).

### **CAUTION:**

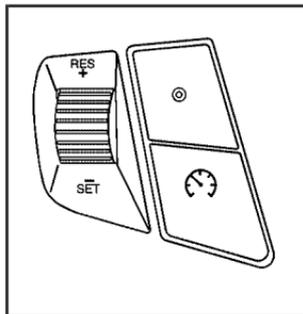
**Cruise control can be dangerous where you cannot drive safely at a steady speed. So, do not use your cruise control on winding roads or in heavy traffic.**

**Cruise control can be dangerous on slippery roads. On such roads, fast changes in tire traction can cause excessive wheel slip, and you could lose control. Do not use cruise control on slippery roads.**

## Setting Cruise Control

### CAUTION:

If you leave your cruise control on when you are not using cruise, you might hit a button and go into cruise when you do not want to. You could be startled and even lose control. Keep the cruise control switch off until you want to use cruise control.



The cruise control buttons are located on the left side of the steering wheel.

 **(On/Off):** Press this button to turn the cruise control system on and off. An indicator light comes on.

**RES+ (Resume/Accel):** Press the thumbwheel up to resume a set speed or to accelerate to a higher speed.

**-SET (Set/Coast):** Press the thumbwheel down to set a speed or to decrease the speed.

To set a speed do the following:

1. Press the on/off symbol to turn cruise control on. The indicator light on the button comes on.
2. Get to the speed desired.
3. Press the thumbwheel toward -SET and release it.
4. Take your foot off the accelerator pedal.

When the brakes are applied, the cruise control shuts off.

### Resuming a Set Speed

If the cruise control is set at a desired speed and then the brakes are applied, the cruise control is disengaged. The indicator light on the instrument panel cluster goes out when the cruise is no longer engaged. To return to the previously set speed, press the thumbwheel up toward RES+ briefly when the vehicle has reached a speed of about 25 mph (40 km/h) or more.

This accelerates your vehicle to the previously selected speed.

## **Increasing Speed While Using Cruise Control**

There are two ways to go to a higher speed.

- Disengage the cruise control, but do not turn it off.
- If the cruise control system is already engaged, press the thumbwheel up toward RES+ and hold it until your vehicle accelerates to the desired speed, and then release the switch. To increase the speed in very small amounts, press the thumbwheel up toward RES+ briefly and then release it. Each time this is done, the vehicle will go about 1 mph (1.6 km/h) faster.

## **Reducing Speed While Using Cruise Control**

If the cruise control system is already engaged,

- Push the thumbwheel toward –SET and hold until the desired lower speed is reached, then release it.
- To slow down in very small amounts, push the thumbwheel toward –SET briefly. Each time this is done, the vehicle goes about 1 mph (1.6 km/h) slower.

## **Passing Another Vehicle While Using Cruise Control**

Use the accelerator pedal to increase the vehicle's speed. When you take your foot off the pedal, the vehicle will slow down to the previously set cruise control speed.

## **Using Cruise Control on Hills**

How well the cruise control works on hills depends upon the vehicle's speed, load, and the steepness of the hills. When going up steep hills, you might have to step on the accelerator pedal to maintain the vehicle's speed. When going downhill, you might have to brake or shift to a lower gear to maintain the vehicle's speed. Of course, applying the brakes ends cruise control. Many drivers find this to be too much trouble and do not use cruise control on steep hills.

## **Ending Cruise Control**

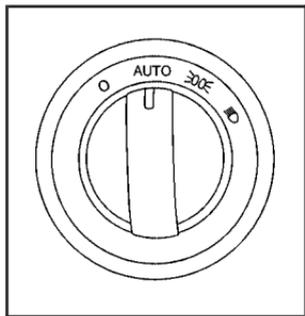
There are three ways to disengage the cruise control:

- Step lightly on the brake pedal or clutch; when cruise control disengages, the indicator light on the instrument panel cluster goes out.
- Press the on/off button, this will turn off the cruise control system.

## Erasing Speed Memory

The cruise control set speed memory is erased when the cruise control or the ignition is turned off.

## Exterior Lamps



The exterior lamp control is located on the instrument panel to the left of the steering wheel.

The exterior lamp control can be turned to the following positions:

**○ (Off):** This position turns off the exterior lamps. The knob returns to the AUTO position after it is released.

**AUTO (Automatic):** This position is the automatic mode for headlamps. The exterior lamps turn on and off, depending on outside lighting.

**☰ (Parking Lamps):** This position turns on the parking lamps together with the following:

- Sidemarkers Lamps
- Taillamps
- License Plate Lamps
- Instrument Panel Lights

**☰ (Headlamps):** This position turns on the headlamps, together with the previously listed lamps and lights.

## Lamps On Reminder

A warning chime sounds, if the driver's door is opened while the ignition is off and the lamps are on.

## Wiper Activated Headlamps

This feature automatically turns on the headlamps and parking lamps if the exterior lamp control is set in the AUTO position and the windshield wipers are turned on and have completed eight wipe cycles. See *Exterior Lamps on page 3-14* for additional information.

When the ignition is turned off, the wiper-activated headlamps immediately turn off. They also turn off if the windshield wiper control is turned off.

## Daytime Running Lamps (DRL)

Daytime Running Lamps (DRL) can make it easier for others to see the front of your vehicle during the day. DRL can be helpful in many different driving conditions, but they can be especially helpful in the short periods after dawn and before sunset. Fully functional daytime running lamps are required on all vehicles first sold in Canada.

The DRL system makes the low-beam headlamps come on in daylight when the following conditions are met:

- The engine is running,
- The exterior lamp band is in AUTO, and
- The light sensor determines it is daytime.

When the DRL are on, the low-beam headlamps will be on. The taillamps, sidemarker, and other lamps will not be on. The instrument panel will not be lit up either.

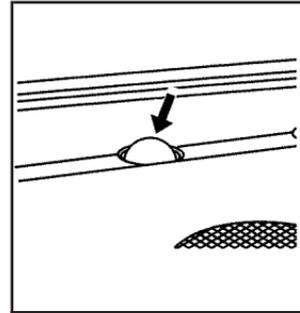
When the exterior lamp band is turned to the headlamp position, the regular headlamps will come on. The other lamps that come on with the headlamps will also come on.

When the headlamps are turned off, the regular lamps also turn off, and the low-beam headlamps turn on.

The regular headlamp system should be used when needed.

## Automatic Headlamp System

When it is dark enough outside, the headlamps come on automatically.



There is a light sensor located on top of the instrument panel. Make sure it is not covered, or the headlamps will come on when they are not needed.

The system may also turn on the headlamps when driving through a parking garage or tunnel.

## Fog Lamps

If your vehicle has this feature, use the fog lamps for better visibility in foggy or misty conditions.



Push the button with this symbol to turn the fog lamps on or off.

The fog lamp button is located on the instrument panel next to the exterior lamps switch.

The fog lamp indicator in the instrument panel comes on when the fog lamps are in use.

The parking lamps or low-beam headlamps must be on, before the fog lamps can be turned on.

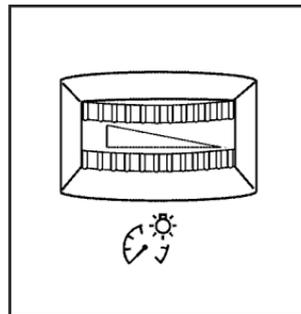
If the exterior lamp control is set to AUTO mode, the parking lamps and low-beam headlamps come on simultaneously when the fog lamps are turned on.

When the high-beam headlamps are turned on, the fog lamps turn off automatically. When the high-beam headlamps are turned off, the fog lamps come on again.

Some localities have laws that require the headlamps to be on along with the fog lamps.

## Instrument Panel Brightness

This feature controls the brightness of the instrument panel lights.



The thumbwheel for this feature is located on the left side of the steering wheel next to the exterior lamps control.

Turn the thumbwheel to the right to brighten the lights or to the left to dim them.

## Dome Lamp

 **(Dome Lamp Override):** Press this button to keep the dome lamps and other interior lamps turned off while any door is open. Press this button again to return it to the out position and the lamps automatically come on when any door is opened.

 **(On/Off):** Press this button to turn the dome lamps on and off while the doors are closed.

## Entry Lighting

If the dome lamp override button is in the out position, the lamps inside the vehicle automatically come on when any door is opened or when the Remote Keyless Entry (RKE) unlock button is pressed. After the door is opened the lights remain on and stay on for 20 seconds after the doors are closed, or until the key is put into the ignition and turned to the ACC/ACCESSORY position. The lights will then gradually dim until it is no longer lit.

## Reading Lamps

The reading lamps are located on the overhead console.

To turn the reading lamps on or off, press the button located next to each lamp.

## Battery Run-Down Protection

The battery saver feature is designed to protect your vehicle's battery.

If any interior or exterior lamp is left on and the ignition is turned off, the battery rundown protection system automatically turns the lamp off after 10 minutes.

## Accessory Power Outlet(s)

The accessory power outlets can be used to connect electrical equipment such as a cellular phone or CB radio.

The accessory power outlets are located on the rear of the center storage console and in the rear cargo compartment. There may be a power outlet located inside the instrument panel storage area below the climate controls.

To use the outlets, remove the cover. When not in use, always cover the outlet with the protective cap.

**Notice:** Leaving electrical equipment on for extended periods will drain the battery. Always turn off electrical equipment when not in use and do not plug in equipment that exceeds the maximum 20 ampere rating.

Certain electrical accessories may not be compatible with the accessory power outlet and could result in blown vehicle or adapter fuses. If you experience a problem, see your dealer/retailer for additional information on the accessory power outlet.

**Notice:** Adding any electrical equipment to your vehicle may damage it or keep other components from working as they should. The repairs would not be covered by your warranty. Check with your dealer/retailer before adding electrical equipment.

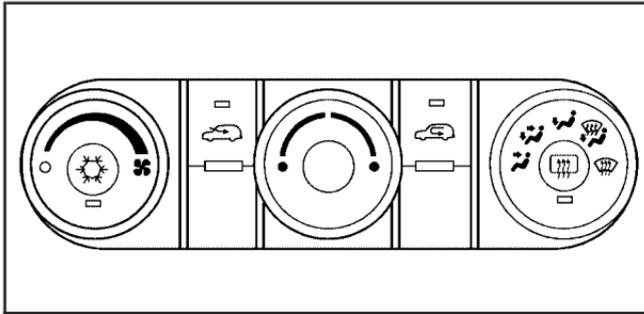
When adding electrical equipment, be sure to follow the installation instructions included with the equipment.

**Notice:** Improper use of the power outlet can cause damage not covered by your warranty. Do not hang any type of accessory or accessory bracket from the plug because the power outlets are designed for accessory power plugs only.

# Climate Controls

## Climate Control System

The heating, cooling, and ventilation for your vehicle can be controlled with this system. If your vehicle has the remote start feature, the climate control system functions as part of the remote start feature. See *Remote Keyless Entry (RKE) System Operation* on page 2-5.



## Operation

**Fan:** Turn the left knob clockwise or counterclockwise to increase or decrease the fan speed. To turn the fan off, turn the left knob all the way counterclockwise. In any setting other than off, the fan runs continuously with the ignition on. There will be some airflow noticeable from the various outlets when driving, even with the fan in the off position. This is to ensure some fresh air is always available in the vehicle. To turn off the air completely, turn the fan to  and select the recirculation button.

**Temperature Control:** Turn the center knob clockwise or counterclockwise to increase or decrease the temperature inside the vehicle.

Use the right knob to select from the following air delivery modes:

There is one position between each mode to finely adjust airflow position.

**Vent:** This mode directs air to the instrument panel outlets.

**Bi-Level:** This mode splits the air between the instrument panel outlets and the floor outlets.

 **(Floor):** This mode directs most of the air to the floor outlets with some air directed to the windshield.

When this mode is selected, the system turns the recirculation mode off. Recirculation mode cannot be selected while in floor mode. This is to help prevent window fogging.

The right knob can also be used to select defog or defrost mode. See “Defogging and Defrosting” later in this section.

 **(Air Conditioning):** Press this button to turn the air conditioning system on or off. When this button is pressed, an indicator light comes on to show that the air conditioning is activated. The air conditioning can be selected in any mode as long as the fan is on and the outside temperature is above freezing. A flashing indicator light indicates that the air conditioning compressor is currently not available.

On hot days, open the windows to let hot inside air escape; then close them. This helps to reduce the time it takes for the vehicle to cool down. It also helps the system to operate more efficiently.

For quick cool down on hot days, select the following settings together:

1. Select vent mode.
2. Select outside air.
3. Turn the air conditioning on.
4. Select the coolest temperature and highest fan speed.
5. Once the vehicle’s interior temperature is below the outside temperature, select recirculation mode for enhanced cooling.

Using these settings together for long periods of time may cause the air inside of the vehicle to become too dry. To prevent this from happening, after the air inside of the vehicle has cooled, turn the recirculation mode off.

The air conditioning system removes moisture from the air, so a small amount of water might drip underneath the vehicle while idling or after turning off the engine. This is normal.

 **(Outside Air):** Press this button to turn the outside air mode on. An indicator light in the button comes on to show that it is activated. Air from outside the vehicle will circulate throughout the vehicle. The outside air mode can be used with all modes, but it cannot be used with the recirculation mode. Pressing this button will cancel the recirculation mode.

 **(Recirculation):** Press this button to turn on the recirculation mode. An indicator light in the button comes on to show that it is activated. The air inside the vehicle will be recirculated through the climate control system and the vehicle, not from outside the vehicle. This mode can be used to prevent outside air and odors from entering the vehicle or to help heat or cool the air inside the vehicle more quickly. Avoid using the recirculation mode during high periods of humidity and cool outside temperatures since this may result in increased window fogging. If window fogging is experienced, select the defrost mode.

Recirculation mode is not available in floor, defog or defrost modes and will shut off automatically and change to outside air. If the button is selected in these modes, the indicator will flash. This helps prevent window fogging and moisture building up within the cabin.

## Defogging and Defrosting

Fog on the inside of windows is a result of high humidity (moisture) condensing on the cool window glass. This can be minimized if the climate control system is used properly. There are two modes to clear fog or frost from the windshield and side windows. Use the defog mode to clear the windows of fog or moisture and warm the

passengers. Use the defrost mode to remove fog or frost from the windshield more quickly. For best results, clear all snow and ice from the windshield before defrosting.

Turn the right knob to select the defog or defrost mode.

 **(Defog):** This mode directs air to the windshield, side window outlets and floor outlets. When this mode is selected, the system will turn recirculation mode off and run the air conditioning compressor unless the outside air is at or below freezing. Recirculation mode cannot be selected while in defog mode. This helps prevent window fogging and moisture building up within the cabin. To defog the windows faster, turn the temperature knob clockwise to the warmest setting.

 **(Defrost):** This mode directs most of the air to the windshield, with some air directed to the side window outlets and the floor outlets. When this mode is selected, the system will turn recirculation mode off automatically and will run the air conditioning compressor unless the outside air is at or below freezing. Recirculation mode cannot be selected while in defrost mode. This helps prevent window fogging and moisture building up within the cabin. To defrost the windows faster, turn the temperature knob clockwise to the warmest setting.

## Rear Window Defogger

The rear window defogger uses a warming grid to remove fog from the rear window.

The rear window defogger only works when the ignition is in ON/RUN.

 **(Rear Window Defogger):** Press the button to turn the rear window defogger on or off. An indicator light on the button comes on to show that the rear window is activated.

The rear window defogger will stay on for approximately 10 minutes after the button is pressed, unless the ignition is turned to ACC/ACCESSORY or LOCK/OFF. If turned on again, the defogger only runs for approximately five minutes before turning off again. At higher vehicle speeds, the defogger may stay on continuously. The defogger can always be turned off by pressing the button again or by turning off the engine.

If your vehicle has the remote start feature, the rear defogger will automatically turn on.

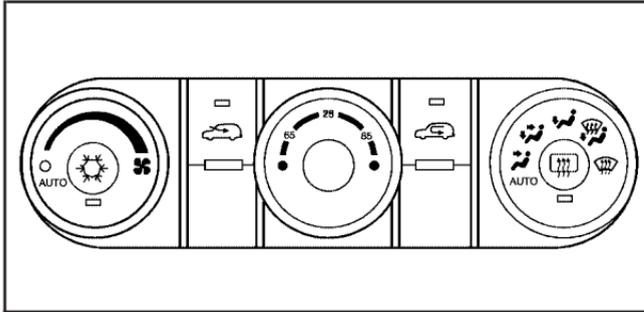
**Notice:** Do not use anything sharp on the inside of the rear window. If you do, you could cut or damage the warming grid, and the repairs would not be covered by the vehicle warranty. Do not attach a temporary vehicle license, tape, a decal or anything similar to the defogger grid.

## Remote Start Climate Control Operation

If your vehicle has the remote start feature and it is activated, the climate control system heats and cools the inside of the vehicle using the modes that were set before the vehicle was turned off and the rear defogger automatically turns on.

## Automatic Climate Control System

The heating, cooling, and ventilation for your vehicle can be controlled with this system. If your vehicle has the remote start feature, the climate control system functions as part of the remote start feature. See *Remote Keyless Entry (RKE) System Operation* on page 2-5.



United States version shown,  
Canada version similar.

## Automatic Operation

When automatic operation is active it allows the climate control system to automatically control the inside air temperature and the direction of the airflow.

**AUTO (Automatic Fan):** Turn the fan knob to AUTO for the system to automatically adjust the fan speed to reach the desired inside temperature.

**Temperature Control:** Select the desired cabin air temperature between 60-90°F (16-32°C). Choosing the coldest or warmest temperature setting does not cause the system to heat or cool any faster.

Be careful not to cover the sensor located on the top of the instrument panel near the windshield. Also, do not cover the sensor grille below the climate control faceplate. These two sensors help regulate the inside air temperature.

**AUTO (Automatic Air Delivery Mode):** Turn the air delivery mode knob to AUTO for the system to automatically control the direction of the airflow to help reach the desired inside temperature.

The system automatically controls the air inlet to supply the outside air or recirculated inside air needed to heat or cool the vehicle faster. The indicator light on the recirculation button will be lit whenever the system switches to recirculation.

You can switch to outside air by pressing the outside air button. However, the recirculation mode may turn back on automatically.

In cold weather, if the fan and air delivery modes are in automatic, the system starts at lower fan speeds to avoid directing cold air into the vehicle until warmer air is available. The climate control system directs air to the floor, but may automatically change modes as the vehicle warms up to maintain the chosen temperature setting. The length of time needed to warm the interior depends on the outside temperature and inside temperature of the vehicle.

## Manual Operation

To change the current fan speed, turn the left knob.

 **(Fan):** Turn the left knob clockwise or counterclockwise to increase or decrease the fan speed. To turn the fan off, turn the left knob to the  position. In any setting other than off, the fan runs continuously with the ignition on. The fan must be turned on to run the air conditioning compressor. There will be some airflow noticeable from the various outlets when driving, even with the fan in the off position. This is to ensure some fresh air is always available in the vehicle. To turn off the air completely, turn the fan to  and select the recirculation button.

**Temperature Control:** Select the desired cabin air temperature between 60-90°F (16-32°C). Typically, the best setting is near 75°F (23°C). Choosing the coldest or warmest temperature setting does not cause the system to heat or cool any faster.

To change the current air delivery mode, use the right knob to select one of the following:

 **(Vent):** This mode directs air to the instrument panel outlets.

 **(Bi-Level):** This mode splits the air between the instrument panel outlets and the floor outlets.

 **(Floor):** This mode directs most of the air to the floor outlets with some air directed to the windshield.

When this mode is selected, the system turns the recirculation mode off. Recirculation mode cannot be selected while in floor mode. This is to help prevent window fogging.

The right knob can also be used to select defog or defrost mode. See “Defogging and Defrosting” later in this section.

 **(Air Conditioning):** Press this button to turn the air conditioning system on or off. When this button is pressed, an indicator light comes on to show that the air conditioning is activated. The air conditioning can be selected in any mode as long as the fan is on and the outside temperature is above freezing. A flashing indicator light indicates that the air conditioning compressor is currently not available.

On hot days, use the automatic fan and air delivery mode settings and the vehicle will reach the desired temperature more quickly. The desired fan and air delivery mode settings can still be adjusted manually. Open the windows to let the hot inside air escape, then close them. This helps reduce the time it takes for the vehicle to cool down and helps the system to operate more efficiently.

For quick cool down on hot days, select the following settings together:

1. Select vent mode.
2. Select outside air.
3. Turn the air conditioning on.
4. Select the coolest temperature and highest fan speed.
5. Once the vehicle's interior temperature is below the outside temperature, select recirculation mode for enhanced cooling.

Using these settings together for long periods of time may cause the air inside of the vehicle to become too dry. To prevent this from happening, after the air inside of the vehicle has cooled, turn the recirculation mode off.

The air conditioning system removes moisture from the air, so a small amount of water might drip underneath the vehicle while idling or after turning off the engine. This is normal.

 **(Outside Air):** Press this button to turn the outside air mode on. An indicator light in the button comes on to show that it is activated. Air from outside the vehicle will circulate throughout the vehicle. The outside air mode can be used with all modes, but it cannot be used with the recirculation mode. Pressing this button will cancel the recirculation mode.

 **(Recirculation):** Press this button to turn on the recirculation mode. An indicator light in the button comes on to show that it is activated. The air inside the vehicle will be recirculated through the climate control system and the vehicle, not from outside the vehicle. This mode can be used to prevent outside air and odors from entering the vehicle or to help heat or cool the air inside the vehicle more quickly. Avoid using the recirculation mode during high periods of humidity and cool outside temperatures since this may result in increased window fogging. If window fogging is experienced, select the defrost mode.

Recirculation mode is not available in floor, defog or defrost modes and will shut off automatically and change to outside air. If the button is selected in these modes, the indicator will flash. This helps prevent window fogging and moisture building up within the cabin.

## Defogging and Defrosting

Fog on the inside of windows is a result of high humidity (moisture) condensing on the cool window glass. This can be minimized if the climate control system is used properly. There are two modes to clear fog or frost from the windshield and side windows. Use the defog mode to clear the windows of fog or moisture and warm the passengers. Use the defrost mode to remove fog or frost from the windshield more quickly. For best results, clear all snow and ice from the windshield before defrosting.

When using the automatic mode setting, the system will automatically use the defog or defrost modes as needed.

Manually turn the right knob to select the defog or defrost mode.

 **(Defog):** This mode directs air to the windshield, side window outlets and floor outlets. When this mode is selected, the system will turn recirculation mode off and run the air conditioning compressor unless the outside air is at or below freezing. Recirculation mode cannot be selected while in defog mode. This helps prevent window fogging and moisture building up within the cabin.

 **(Defrost):** This mode directs most of the air to the windshield, with some air directed to the side window outlets and the floor outlets. When this mode is selected, the system will turn recirculation mode off automatically and will run the air conditioning compressor unless the outside air is at or below freezing. Recirculation mode cannot be selected while in defrost mode. This helps prevent window fogging and moisture building up within the cabin.

## Rear Window Defogger

The rear window defogger uses a warming grid to remove fog from the rear window.

The rear window defogger only works when the ignition is in ON/RUN.

 **(Rear Window Defogger):** Press the button to turn the rear window defogger on or off. An indicator light on the button comes on to show that the rear window defogger is activated.

The rear window defogger will stay on for approximately 10 minutes after the button is pressed, unless the ignition is turned to ACC/ACCESSORY or LOCK/OFF. If turned on again, the defogger only runs for approximately five minutes before turning off. At higher vehicle speeds, the defogger may stay on continuously. The defogger can always be turned off by pressing the button again or by turning off the engine.

If your vehicle has the remote start feature, the rear defogger will automatically turn on.

**Notice:** Do not use anything sharp on the inside of the rear window. If you do, you could cut or damage the warming grid, and the repairs would not be covered by the vehicle warranty. Do not attach a temporary vehicle license, tape, a decal or anything similar to the defogger grid.

## Remote Start Climate Control Operation

If your vehicle has the remote start feature and it is activated, the climate control system heats and cools the inside of the vehicle using the modes that were set before the vehicle was turned off and the rear defogger automatically turns on.

## Outlet Adjustment

Use the louvers located on the air outlets to change the direction of the airflow.

## Operation Tips

- Clear away any ice, snow, or leaves from the air inlets at the base of the vehicle that may block the flow of air into your vehicle.
- Do not use any non-GM approved hood deflectors that could adversely affect the performance of the system.
- Keep the path under the front seats clear of objects to help circulate the air inside of your vehicle more effectively.

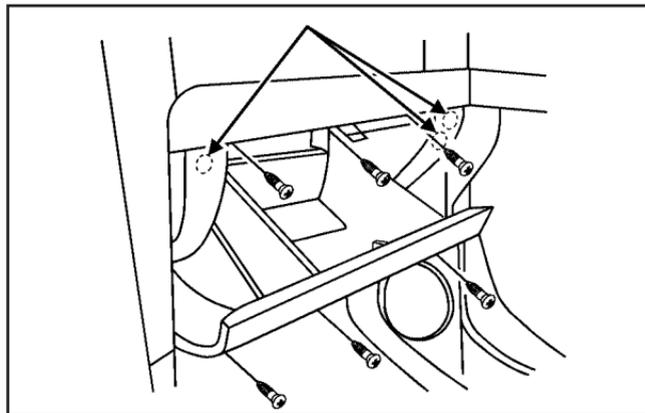
## Passenger Compartment Air Filter

The filter removes dust, pollen, and other airborne irritants from outside air which is drawn into the vehicle.

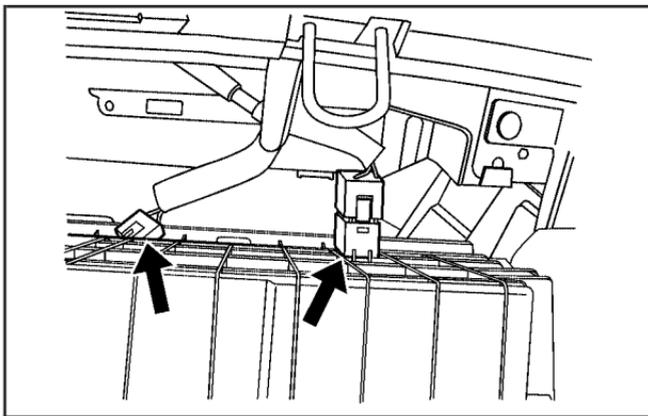
The filter should be replaced as part of routine scheduled maintenance. See *Scheduled Maintenance on page 6-3* for replacement intervals. To find out what type of filter to use, see *Maintenance Replacement Parts on page 6-15*.

The passenger compartment air filter can be accessed by removing the entire glove box.

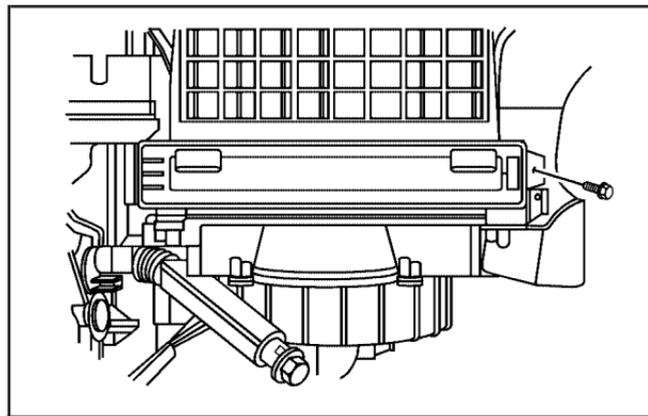
1. Remove the six screws from around the glove box and detach the three inner clips from the glove box.



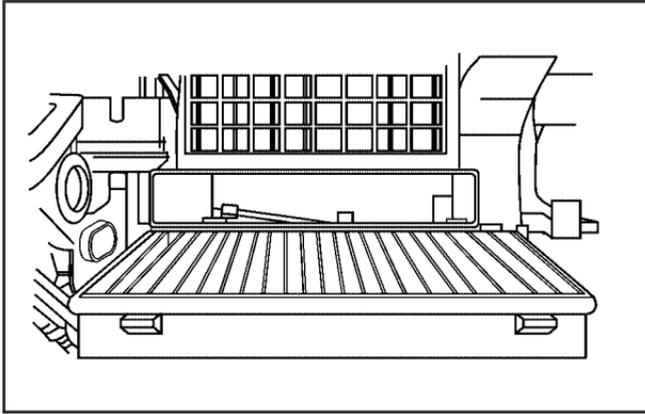
2. Lower the loosened glove box housing.



3. Unplug both wire cables and remove the glove box.



4. Remove the air filter cover screw.



## Warning Lights, Gages, and Indicators

This section describes the warning lights and gages on the vehicle.

Warning lights and gages can signal that something is wrong before it becomes serious enough to cause an expensive repair or replacement. Paying attention to the warning lights and gages could prevent injury.

Warning lights come on when there may be or is a problem with one of the vehicle's functions. Some warning lights come on briefly when the engine is started to indicate they are working.

Gages can indicate when there may be or is a problem with one of the vehicle's functions. Often gages and warning lights work together to indicate a problem with the vehicle.

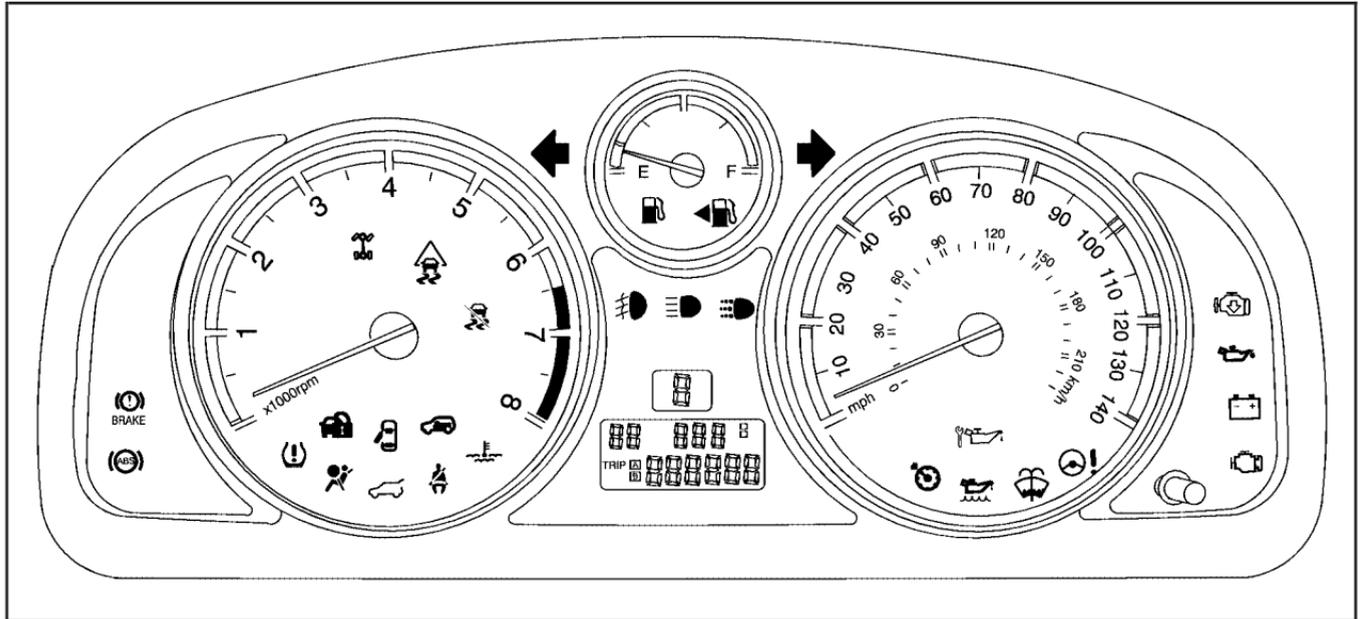
When one of the warning lights comes on and stays on while driving, or when one of the gages shows there may be a problem, check the section that explains what to do. Follow this manual's advice. Waiting to do repairs can be costly and even dangerous.

5. Remove the filter cover and pull out the old air filter.
6. Install the new air filter.
7. Reinstall the air filter cover. Reconnect the wire cabling and re-install the glove box.

See your dealer/retailer if additional assistance is needed.

## Instrument Panel Cluster

The instrument cluster is designed to let you know at a glance how the vehicle is running. You will know how fast you are going, about how much fuel you have used, and many other things you will need to know to drive safely and economically.



United States Base version shown, Canada and Uplevel similar

## Speedometer and Odometer

The speedometer lets you see your speed in both miles per hour (mph) and kilometers per hour (km/h).

The odometer shows how far your vehicle has been driven, in either miles or kilometers.

If your vehicle needs a new odometer installed, the new one will be set to the mileage total of the old odometer. If it cannot, it will be set at zero and a label must be put on the driver's door to show the old mileage reading when the new odometer was installed. If the mileage is unknown, the label should then indicate "previous mileage unknown."

## Trip Odometer

The trip odometer can record the number of miles, used in the United States, or kilometers, used in Canada, traveled for up to two trips.

You can cycle between the odometer and trip odometers A and B by pressing the reset button located in the lower right area of the speedometer. By pressing the reset button, you can tell how many miles or kilometers have been recorded on either Trip A or Trip B since you last set the trip odometer back to zero.

To reset each trip odometer to zero, press and hold the reset button. The reset button resets only the trip odometer that is being displayed. Each trip odometer must be reset individually.

## Tachometer

The tachometer displays the engine speed in revolutions per minute (rpm).

## Safety Belt Reminders

### Safety Belt Reminder Light

When the engine is started, a chime will come on for several seconds to remind people to fasten their safety belts, unless the driver's safety belt is already buckled.



The safety belt light will also come on and stay on for several seconds, then it will flash for several more.

This chime and light is repeated if the driver remains unbuckled and the vehicle is in motion. If the driver's belt is already buckled, neither the chime nor the light will come on.

## Passenger Safety Belt Reminder Light

Several seconds after the engine is started, a chime will sound for several seconds to remind the front passenger to buckle their safety belt. This would only occur if the passenger airbag is enabled. See *Passenger Sensing System on page 1-65* for more information. The passenger safety belt light will also come on and stay on for several seconds, then it will flash for several more.



This chime and light are repeated if the passenger remains unbuckled and the vehicle is in motion.

If the passenger's safety belt is buckled, neither the chime nor the light will come on.

## Airbag Readiness Light

There is an airbag readiness light on the instrument panel cluster, which shows the airbag symbol. The system checks the airbag's electrical system for malfunctions. The light tells you if there is an electrical problem. The system check includes the airbag sensor, the airbag modules, the wiring and the crash sensing and diagnostic module. For more information on the airbag system, see *Airbag System on page 1-55*.



This light will come on when you start your vehicle, and it will flash for a few seconds. The light should go out and the system is ready.

If the airbag readiness light stays on after you start the vehicle or comes on when you are driving, your airbag system may not work properly. Have your vehicle serviced right away.

### CAUTION:

**If the airbag readiness light stays on after you start your vehicle, it means the airbag system may not be working properly. The airbags in your vehicle may not inflate in a crash, or they could even inflate without a crash. To help avoid injury to yourself or others, have your vehicle serviced right away.**

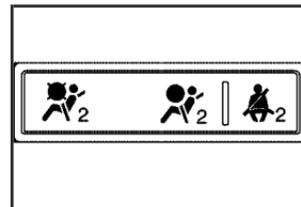
The airbag readiness light should flash for a few seconds when the engine is started. If the light does not come on then, have it fixed so it will be ready to warn you if there is a problem.

## Passenger Airbag Status Indicator

Your vehicle has the passenger sensing system. Your instrument panel has a passenger airbag status indicator.



United States



Canada

When you start the vehicle, the passenger airbag status indicator will light ON and OFF, or the symbol for on and off, for several seconds as a system check. Then, after several more seconds, the status indicator will light either ON or OFF, or either the on or off symbol to let you know the status of the right front passenger's frontal airbag.

If the word ON or the on symbol is lit on the passenger airbag status indicator, it means that the right front passenger's frontal airbag is enabled (may inflate).

 **CAUTION:**

If the on indicator comes on when you have a rear-facing child restraint installed in the right front passenger's seat, it means that the passenger sensing system has not turned off the passenger's frontal airbag. A child in a rear-facing child restraint can be seriously injured or killed if the right front passenger's airbag inflates. This is because the back of the rear-facing child restraint would be very close to the inflating airbag. Do not use a rear-facing child restraint in the right front passenger's seat if the airbag is turned on.

 **CAUTION:**

Even though the passenger sensing system is designed to turn off the right front passenger's frontal airbag if the system detects a rear-facing child restraint, no system is fail-safe, and no one can guarantee that an airbag will not deploy under some unusual circumstance, even though it is turned off. We recommend that rear-facing child restraints be secured in the rear seat, even if the airbag is off.

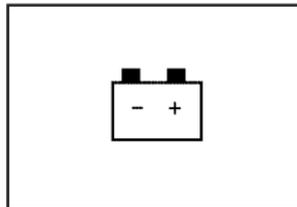
If the word OFF or the off symbol is lit on the airbag status indicator, it means that the passenger sensing system has turned off the right front passenger's frontal airbag. See *Passenger Sensing System on page 1-65* for more on this, including important safety information.

If, after several seconds, both status indicator lights remain on, or if there are no lights at all, there may be a problem with the lights or the passenger sensing system. See your dealer/retailer for service.

### **CAUTION:**

**If the airbag readiness light in the instrument panel cluster ever comes on and stays on, it means that something may be wrong with the airbag system. If this ever happens, have the vehicle serviced promptly, because an adult-size person sitting in the right front passenger's seat may not have the protection of the airbag(s). See *Airbag Readiness Light on page 3-33* for more on this, including important safety information.**

## Charging System Light



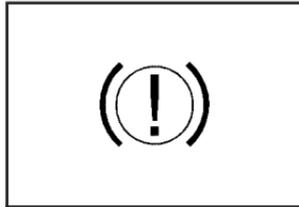
This light will come on briefly when the ignition is turned on, and the engine is not running, as a check to show you it is working.

It should go out when the engine is started. If it stays on, or comes on while you are driving, you may have a problem with the electrical charging system. Have it checked by your dealer/retailer. Driving while this light is on could drain your battery. If you must drive a short distance with the light on, be certain to turn off all your accessories, such as the radio and air conditioner to help reduce the drain on the battery.

## Brake System Warning Light



United States



Canada

This light should come on briefly when the engine is started.

If it does not come on, have it fixed so it will be ready to warn you if there is a problem.

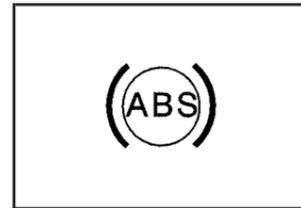
When the ignition is on, the brake system warning light will come on when the parking brake is set. The light will stay on if the parking brake does not release fully. If it stays on after the parking brake is fully released, there is a brake problem. Have your brake system inspected immediately.

If the light comes on while driving, a chime will sound. Pull off the road and stop. The pedal might be harder to push or go closer to the floor. It might also take longer to stop. If the light is still on, have the vehicle towed for service. See *Towing Your Vehicle* on page 4-41.

### CAUTION:

Your brake system may not be working properly if the brake system warning light is on. Driving with the brake system warning light on can lead to an accident. If the light is still on after you have pulled off the road and stopped carefully, have the vehicle towed for service.

## Anti-lock Brake System (ABS) Warning Light



For vehicles with the Antilock Brake System (ABS), this light will come on briefly, as a check, when you start your vehicle.

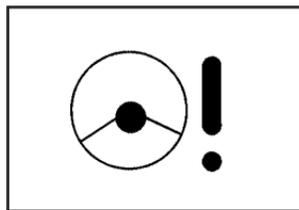
If it does not, have your vehicle serviced so that the light works properly when it needs to.

If the light stays on longer than a few seconds after you start your engine, or comes on and stays on while you are driving, try resetting the system. To reset the system:

1. If you are driving, pull over when it is safe to do so.
2. Place the vehicle in PARK (P).
3. Turn off the ignition.
4. Then restart the engine.

If the light remains on after resetting the system or comes on again while driving, your vehicle needs service. If the ABS light is on, but the regular brake system warning light is not on, the antilock brakes are not working properly, but the regular brakes are still functioning. Have your vehicle serviced right away. If both brake lights are on, you do not have antilock brakes, and there's a problem with your regular brakes as well. Have your vehicle towed for service. See *Towing Your Vehicle* on page 4-41.

## Speed Sensitive Power Steering (SSPS) Warning Light



This warning light will come on briefly when you turn the ignition to ON as a check to show you it is working.

Then it should go out after a few seconds.

If the warning light does not come on, have it fixed so it will be able to warn you if there is a problem.

If the warning light stays on, or comes on while you are driving, the SSPS system may not be working. If this happens, see your dealer/retailer for service.

## Traction Control System (TCS) Warning Light



The Traction Control System (TCS) Warning Light will show one of these two symbols.

This light will come on briefly when the engine is started.

This light will also come on when the Traction Control System (TCS) has been turned off or when the Electronic Stability Program (ESP) is not ready. If there is a problem with the TCS or the ESP, this light and the TCS warning light will come on at the same time. See *Traction Control System (TCS)* on page 4-7 and *Electronic Stability Program* on page 4-8 for more information.

## Electronic Stability Program Indicator Light

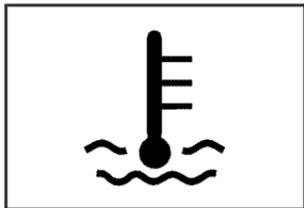


This comes on briefly when the engine is started.

It flashes while the Electronic Stability Program (ESP) or the Traction Control System (TCS) is working. This light will come on when the ESP has been turned off and if there is a problem with the ESP or the TCS. See *Traction Control System (TCS)* on page 4-7 and *Electronic Stability Program* on page 4-8 for more information.

## Engine Coolant Temperature Warning Light

This light comes on briefly when starting the vehicle as a system check. If it does not, take the vehicle to your dealer/retailer for service.



If this light comes on and stays lit, the engine has overheated.

If this happens pull over and see *Engine Overheating on page 5-25* for more information.

**Notice:** Driving with the engine coolant temperature warning light on could cause your vehicle to overheat. See *Engine Overheating on page 5-25*. Your vehicle could be damaged, and it might not be covered by your warranty. Never drive with the engine coolant temperature warning light on.

## Tire Pressure Light



The tire pressure light comes on briefly when the engine is started.

It provides information about tire pressures and the Tire Pressure Monitoring System.

### When the Light is Solid

This indicates that one or more of your tires are significantly underinflated.

Stop and check the tires as soon as it is safe to do, and inflate them to the proper pressure. See *Tires on page 5-51* for more information.

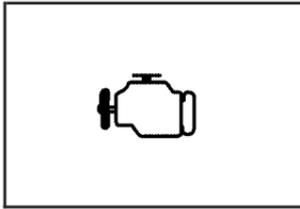
### When the Light Flashes First and Then is Solid

This indicates that there may be a problem with the Tire Pressure Monitor System. The light flashes for about a minute and then stays solid for the remainder of the ignition cycle. This sequence will repeat with every ignition cycle. See *Tire Pressure Monitor System on page 5-60* for more information.

# Malfunction Indicator Lamp

## Check Engine Light

A computer system called OBD II (On-Board Diagnostics-Second Generation) monitors operation of the fuel, ignition, and emission control systems. It makes sure that emissions are at acceptable levels for the life of the vehicle, helping to produce a cleaner environment.



The check engine light comes on to indicate that there is an OBD II problem and service is required.

Malfunctions often are indicated by the system before any problem is apparent. This can prevent more serious damage to your vehicle. This system is also designed to assist your service technician in correctly diagnosing any malfunction.

**Notice:** If you keep driving your vehicle with this light on, after a while, the emission controls might not work as well, your vehicle's fuel economy might not be as good, and the engine might not run as smoothly. This could lead to costly repairs that might not be covered by your warranty.

**Notice:** Modifications made to the engine, transmission, exhaust, intake, or fuel system of your vehicle or the replacement of the original tires with other than those of the same Tire Performance Criteria (TPC) can affect your vehicle's emission controls and can cause this light to come on. Modifications to these systems could lead to costly repairs not covered by your warranty. This could also result in a failure to pass a required Emission Inspection/Maintenance test. See *Accessories and Modifications* on page 5-3.

This light comes on, as a check to show it is working, when the ignition is turned ON/RUN but the engine is not running. If the light does not come on, have it repaired. This light also comes on during a malfunction in one of two ways:

- **Light Flashing** — A misfire condition has been detected. A misfire increases vehicle emissions and could damage the emission control system on your vehicle. Diagnosis and service might be required.
- **Light On Steady** — An emission control system malfunction has been detected on your vehicle. Diagnosis and service might be required.

## If the Light is Flashing

The following can prevent more serious damage to your vehicle:

- Reduce vehicle speed.
- Avoid hard accelerations.
- Avoid steep uphill grades.
- If you are towing a trailer, reduce the amount of cargo being hauled as soon as it is possible.

If the light stops flashing and remains on steady, see “If the Light Is On Steady” following.

If the light continues to flash, when it is safe to do so, stop the vehicle. Find a safe place to park the vehicle. Turn the ignition off, wait at least 10 seconds, and restart the engine. If the light remains on steady, see “If the Light Is On Steady” following. If the light is still flashing, follow the previous steps and see your dealer/retailer for service as soon as possible.

## If the Light Is On Steady

You might be able to correct the emission system malfunction by considering the following:

Did you recently put fuel into your vehicle?

If so, reinstall the fuel cap, making sure to fully install the cap. See *Filling the Tank on page 5-8*. The diagnostic system can determine if the fuel cap has

been left off or improperly installed. A loose or missing fuel cap allows fuel to evaporate into the atmosphere. A few driving trips with the cap properly installed should turn the light off.

Did you just drive through a deep puddle of water?

If so, your vehicle’s electrical system might be wet. The condition is usually corrected when the electrical system dries out. A few driving trips should turn the light off.

Have you recently changed brands of fuel?

If so, be sure to fuel your vehicle with quality fuel. See *Gasoline Octane on page 5-6*. Poor fuel quality causes the engine not to run as efficiently as designed. You might notice this as stalling after start-up, stalling when you put the vehicle into gear, misfiring, hesitation on acceleration, or stumbling on acceleration — these conditions might go away once the engine is warmed up. This will be detected by the system and cause the light to turn on.

If you experience one or more of these conditions, change the fuel brand you use. It will require at least one full tank of the proper fuel to turn the light off.

If none of the above steps have made the light turn off, your dealer/retailer can check the vehicle. Your dealer/retailer has the proper test equipment and diagnostic tools to fix any mechanical or electrical problems that might have developed.

## Emissions Inspection and Maintenance Programs

Some state/provincial and local governments have or might begin programs to inspect the emission control equipment on your vehicle. Failure to pass this inspection could prevent you from getting a vehicle registration.

Here are some things you need to know to help your vehicle pass an inspection:

Your vehicle will not pass this inspection if the check engine light is on or not working properly.

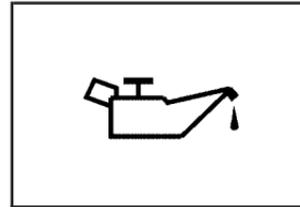
Your vehicle will not pass this inspection if the OBD (on-board diagnostic) system determines that critical emission control systems have not been completely diagnosed by the system. The vehicle would be considered not ready for inspection. This can happen if you have recently replaced the battery or if the battery has run down. The diagnostic system is designed to evaluate critical emission control systems during normal driving. This can take several days of routine driving. If you have done this and your vehicle still does not pass the inspection for lack of OBD system readiness, your dealer/retailer can prepare the vehicle for inspection.

## Oil Pressure Light

### CAUTION:

**Do not keep driving if the oil pressure is low. If you do, your engine can become so hot that it catches fire. You or others could be burned. Check your oil as soon as possible and have your vehicle serviced.**

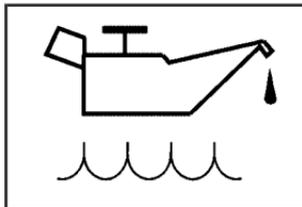
***Notice:*** Lack of proper engine oil maintenance may damage the engine. The repairs would not be covered by your warranty. Always follow the maintenance schedule in this manual for changing engine oil.



This light will come on briefly when you start your engine as a check to be sure it works. If it does not, have your vehicle serviced.

If the light comes on and stays on, it means that oil is not flowing through your engine properly. You could be low on oil and you might have some other system problem.

## Low Oil Level Light

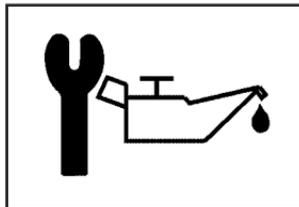


This light should come on as a check, when you start your engine.

If this light comes on and stays on, it means your engine is low on oil. You need to check the oil level right away. See *Engine Oil* on page 5-15 for further information.

**Notice:** Lack of proper engine oil maintenance may damage the engine. The repairs would not be covered by your warranty. Always follow the maintenance schedule in this manual for changing engine oil.

## Change Engine Oil Light



If this light comes on, it means that service is required for your vehicle.

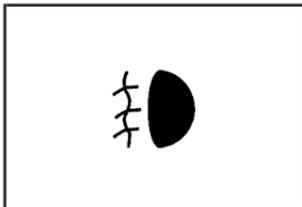
See *Scheduled Maintenance* on page 6-3 and *Engine Oil* on page 5-15 for more information.

## Security Light



For information regarding this light and the vehicle's security system, see *Content Theft-Deterrent* on page 2-14.

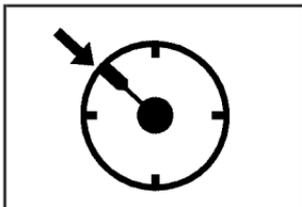
## Fog Lamp Light



The fog lamp light will come on when the fog lamps are in use.

The light will go out when the fog lamps are turned off. See *Fog Lamps* on page 3-16 for more information.

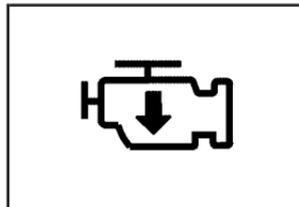
## Cruise Control Light



This light comes on whenever the cruise control is set.

The light goes out when the cruise control is turned off. See *Cruise Control* on page 3-11 for more information.

## Reduced Engine Power Light

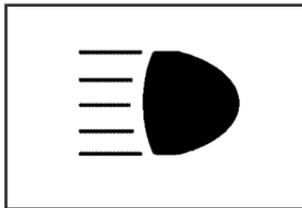


This light will come on briefly when you start the engine.

This light, along with the service engine soon light will be displayed when a noticeable reduction in the vehicle's performance may occur. Stop the vehicle and turn off the ignition. Wait for 10 seconds and restart your vehicle. This may correct the condition.

The vehicle may be driven at a reduced speed when the reduced engine power light is on but acceleration and speed may be reduced. The performance may be reduced until the next time you drive your vehicle. If this light stays on, see your dealer/retailer as soon as possible for diagnosis and repair.

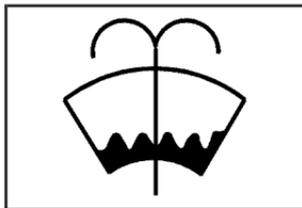
## Highbeam On Light



This light comes on when the high-beam headlamps are in use.

See *Headlamp High/Low-Beam Changer* on page 3-8 for more information.

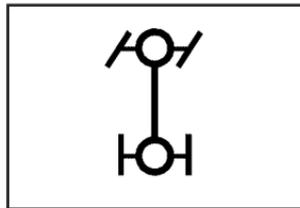
## Low Washer Fluid Warning Light



This light comes on briefly when the engine is started.

It also comes on when the windshield washer fluid is low. See *Windshield Washer Fluid* on page 5-32 for more information.

## All-Wheel Drive Disabled Light

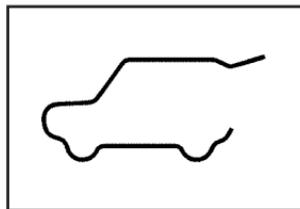


This light will come on when there is a malfunction in the All-Wheel Drive (AWD) system.

This light will flash when the AWD system is temporarily disabled.

For more information see *All-Wheel Drive (AWD) System* on page 4-10.

## Gate Ajar Light



If this light comes on, your liftgate is not completely closed. Driving with the liftgate open can cause carbon monoxide (CO) to enter the vehicle.

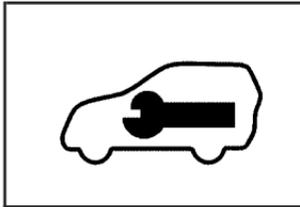
See *Engine Exhaust* on page 2-32 for more information.

## Door Ajar Light



This light will come on when a door is open. Before driving, check that all doors are properly closed.

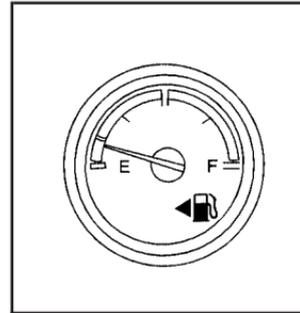
## Service Vehicle Soon Light



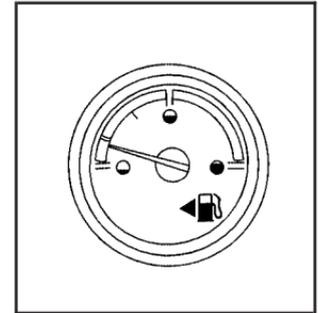
This light will come on if a condition exists that may require the vehicle to be taken in for service.

If the light comes on, take your vehicle to your dealer/retailer for service as soon as possible.

## Fuel Gage



United States



Canada

When the ignition is on, the fuel gage tells you about how much fuel is left in the tank.

When the indicator nears empty, the low fuel light will come on. There is still a little fuel left, but you should get more soon. See *Low Fuel Warning Light on page 3-48* for more information.

Here are four things that some owners ask about. None of these mean a condition exists with the fuel gage:

- At the service station, the fuel pump shuts off before the gage reads full.
- It takes a little more or less fuel to fill up than the gage indicated. For example, the gage may have indicated the tank was half full, but it actually took a little more or less than half the tank's capacity to fill the tank.
- The gage moves a little when you turn a corner or speed up.
- The gage takes a few seconds to stabilize after the ignition is turned on, but it goes back to empty when the ignition is turned off.

For fuel tank capacity, see *Capacities and Specifications on page 5-104*.

## Low Fuel Warning Light



This light, below the fuel gage, will come on briefly when the engine is started.

This light also comes on when the fuel tank is low on fuel. When you add fuel the light should go off. If it does not, have your vehicle serviced.

## Driver Information Center (DIC)

Your vehicle has a Driver Information Center (DIC).

All information appears in the DIC display located in the instrument panel cluster.

The DIC comes on when the ignition is on. After a short delay, the DIC displays the information that was last displayed before the engine was turned off.

The DIC displays the odometer, trip odometers, outside air temperature, compass information, and shift lever position indicator.

To change the outside air temperature units from English to metric, turn the reset stem on the instrument panel cluster clockwise or counterclockwise until the unit changes. This also changes the units displayed in the navigation system, if your vehicle has this feature. If there is a problem with the system that controls the temperature display, the numbers will be replaced with dashes. If this occurs, have the vehicle serviced by your dealer/retailer. If an abnormal temperature reading is displayed for an extended period of time, consult your dealer/retailer. Under certain circumstances, especially when the engine is idling, a delay updating the temperature display is normal.

See *Automatic Transmission Operation (Base)* on page 2-22 or *Automatic Transmission Operation (Uplevel)* on page 2-25 for more information.

## DIC Operation and Displays

The Driver Information Center (DIC) has different modes which can be accessed by pressing the reset stem on the instrument panel cluster. These modes are explained in the following section. To scroll through the available functions, press and release the reset stem.

### Odometer

Press and release the reset stem until the odometer appears on the DIC. The odometer shows the total distance the vehicle has been driven in either miles for the United States or kilometers for Canada.

### Trip Odometer

Press and release the reset stem until TRIP A or TRIP B appears on the DIC. The trip odometer shows the current distance traveled since the last reset of the trip odometer in either miles for the United States or kilometers for Canada.

To reset the trip odometer, press and hold the reset stem until the display returns to zero.

## DIC Compass

Your vehicle has a compass in the Driver Information Center (DIC).

### Compass Zone

The zone is set to zone eight upon leaving the factory. Your dealer/retailer will set the correct zone for your location.

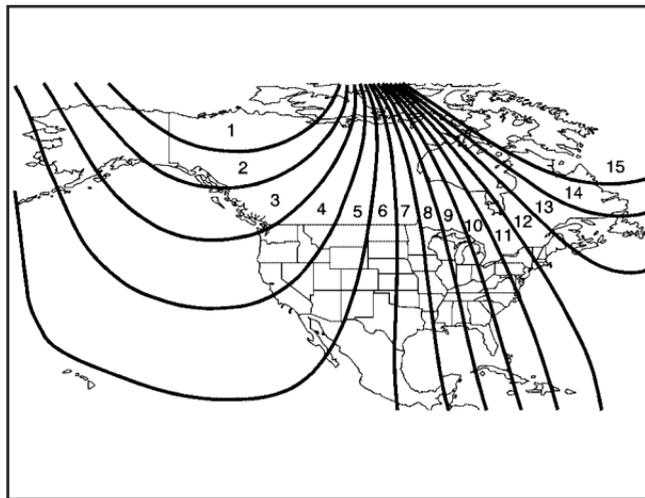
Under certain circumstances, such as during a long distance cross-country trip or moving to a new state or province, it will be necessary to compensate for compass variance by resetting the zone through the DIC if the zone is not set correctly.

Compass variance is the difference between the earth's magnetic north and true geographic north. If the compass is not set to the zone where you live, the compass may give false readings. The compass must be set to the variance zone in which the vehicle is traveling.

To adjust for compass variance, use the following procedure:

### Compass Variance (Zone) Procedure

1. Do not set the compass zone when the vehicle is moving. Only set it when the vehicle is in PARK (P).  
Press the reset stem until C## is displayed.



2. Find the vehicle's current location and variance zone number/direction on the map.  
Zones 1 through 15 are available.
3. To select the appropriate variance zone, turn the reset stem clockwise or counterclockwise and then release to advance to the next available zone.  
Repeat as needed.  
If the zone does not change while turning the reset stem, try turning it in the opposite direction.

4. Press the reset stem until the vehicle heading, for example, N for North, is displayed in the DIC.
5. If calibration is necessary, calibrate the compass. See “Compass Calibration Procedure” following.

## Compass Calibration

The compass can be manually calibrated. Only calibrate the compass in a magnetically clean and safe location, such as an open parking lot, where driving the vehicle in circles is not a danger. It is suggested to calibrate away from tall buildings, utility wires, manhole covers, or other industrial structures, if possible.

If CAL should ever appear in the DIC display, the compass should be calibrated.

If the DIC display does not show a heading, for example, N for North, or the heading does not change after making turns, there may be a strong magnetic field interfering with the compass. Such interference may be caused by a magnetic CB or cell phone antenna mount, a magnetic emergency light, magnetic note pad holder, or any other magnetic item. Turn off the vehicle, move the magnetic item, then turn on the vehicle and calibrate the compass.

To calibrate the compass, use the following procedure:

## Compass Calibration Procedure

1. Before calibrating the compass, make sure the compass is set to the variance zone in which the vehicle is located. See “Compass Variance (Zone) Procedure” earlier in this section.  
Do not operate any switches such as window, sunroof, climate controls, seats, etc. during the calibration procedure.
2. Press the reset stem until the C ## is displayed.
3. Once the appropriate variance zone is selected, press the reset stem. A flashing C will display.
4. Drive the vehicle in tight circles at less than 5 mph (8 km/h) to complete the calibration.  
When the calibration is complete, the vehicle heading, for example, N for North, displays instead of the C.

## Audio System(s)

Determine which radio your vehicle has and then read the pages following to familiarize yourself with its features.

### CAUTION:

**This system provides you with far greater access to audio stations and song listings. Giving extended attention to entertainment tasks while driving can cause a crash and you or others can be injured or killed. Always keep your eyes on the road and your mind on the drive — avoid engaging in extended searching while driving.**

Keeping your mind on the drive is important for safe driving. See *Defensive Driving on page 4-3*. Here are some ways in which you can help avoid distraction while driving.

While your vehicle is parked:

- Familiarize yourself with all of its controls.
- Familiarize yourself with its operation.
- Set up your audio system by presetting your favorite radio stations, setting the tone, and adjusting the speakers. Then, when driving conditions permit, you can tune to your favorite radio stations using the presets and steering wheel controls if the vehicle has them.

**Notice:** Before adding any sound equipment to your vehicle, such as an audio system, CD player, CB radio, mobile telephone, or two-way radio, make sure that it can be added by checking with your dealer/retailer. Also, check federal rules covering mobile radio and telephone units. If sound equipment can be added, it is very important to do it properly. Added sound equipment may interfere with the operation of your vehicle's engine, radio, or other systems, and even damage them. Your vehicle's systems may interfere with the operation of sound equipment that has been added.

## Setting the Clock

### With Date Display

#### Radio with Single CD or Radio with CD (MP3)

These radios have a  button for setting the time and date.

To set the time and date, follow these instructions:

1. Turn the ignition key to ACC/ACCESSORY or ON/RUN. Press the  knob, located in the center of the radio, to turn the radio on.
2. Press the  button and the HR, MIN, MM, DD, YYYY (hour, minute, month, day, and year) displays.
3. Press the pushbutton located under any one of the labels to be changed. Every time the pushbutton is pressed again, the time or the date if selected, increases by one.
  - Another way to increase the time or date, is to press the right  SEEK arrow or  FWD button.
  - To decrease the time or date, press the left  SEEK arrow or  REV button, or turn the  knob, located on the upper right side of the radio.

The date does not automatically display. To see the date press the  button while the radio is on. The date display times out after a few seconds and goes back to the normal radio and time display.

To change the time default setting from 12 hour to 24 hour or to change the date default setting from month/day/year to day/month/year, follow these instructions:

1. Press the  button and then the pushbutton located under the forward arrow label. Once the time 12H and 24H, and the date MM/DD/YYYY (month, day, and year) and DD/MM/YYYY (day, month, and year) displays.
2. Press the pushbutton located under the desired option.
3. Press the  or MENU button again to apply the selected default, or let the screen time out.

## Radio with Six-Disc CD (MP3)

This type of radio has a MENU button instead of the  button to set the time and date.

To set the time and date, follow these instructions:

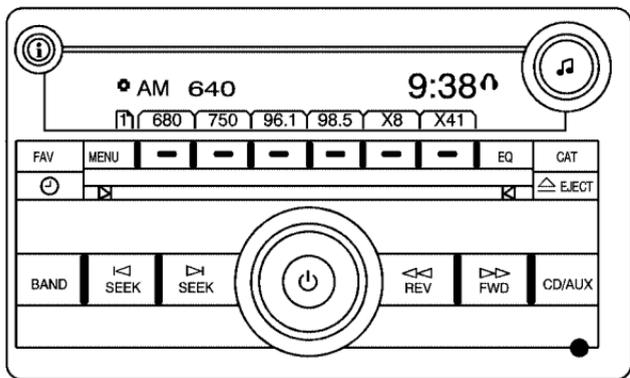
1. Turn the ignition key to ACC/ACCESSORY or ON/RUN. Press the  knob, located in the center of the radio, to turn the radio on.
2. Press the MENU button. Once the clock option is displayed.
3. Press the pushbutton located under that label. The HR, MIN, MM, DD, YYYY displays.
4. Press the pushbutton located under any one of the labels to be changed. Every time the pushbutton is pressed again, the time or the date if selected, increases by one.
  - Another way to increase the time or date, is to press the right  SEEK arrow or  FWD button.
  - To decrease the time or date, press the left  SEEK arrow or  REV button, or turn the  knob, located on the upper right side of the radio.

The date does not automatically display. To see the date press the MENU button and then the  button while the radio is on. The date display times out after a few seconds and goes back to the normal radio and time display.

To change the time default setting from 12 hour to 24 hour or to change the date default setting from month/day/year to day/month/year, follow these instructions:

1. Press the  button and then the pushbutton located under the forward arrow label. Once the time 12H and 24H, and the date MM/DD/YYYY (month, day, and year) and DD/MM/YYYY (day, month, and year) displays.
2. Press the pushbutton located under the desired option.
3. Press the  or MENU button again to apply the selected default, or let the screen time out.

## Radio(s)



**Radio with CD shown,  
Radio with Six-Disc CD similar**

## Radio Data System (RDS)

The audio system has a Radio Data System (RDS). The RDS feature is available for use only on FM stations that broadcast RDS information. This system relies upon receiving specific information from these stations and only works when the information is available. While the radio is tuned to an FM-RDS station, the station name or call letters displays. In rare cases, a radio station can broadcast incorrect information that causes the radio features to work improperly. If this happens, contact the radio station.

## Playing the Radio

 **(Power/Volume):** Press to turn the system on and off.

Turn clockwise or counterclockwise to increase or decrease the volume.

## Finding a Station

**BAND:** Press to switch between AM, FM, or XM™ (if equipped). The display shows the selection.

**🎵 (Tune):** Turn to select radio stations.

**◀ SEEK ▶ :** Press the either arrow to go to the previous or to the next station.

To scan stations, press and hold either arrow for a few seconds until a beep sounds. The radio goes to a station, plays for a few seconds, then goes to the next station. Press either arrow again to stop scanning.

The radio only seeks and scans stations with a strong signal that are in the selected band.

**i (Information) (XM™ Satellite Radio Service, MP3, and RDS Features):** Press to display additional text information related to the current FM-RDS or XM™ station, or MP3 song. A choice of additional information such as: Channel, Song, Artist, CAT (category) can display. Continue pressing to highlight the desired label, or press the pushbutton positioned under any one of the labels and the information about that label displays.

When information is not available, No Info displays.

## Storing a Radio Station as a Favorite

Drivers are encouraged to set up their radio station favorites while the vehicle is parked. Tune to your favorite stations using the presets, favorites button, and steering wheel controls, if your vehicle has them. See *Defensive Driving on page 4-3*.

**FAV (Favorites):** A maximum of 36 stations can be programmed as favorites using the six pushbuttons positioned below the radio station frequency labels and by using the FAV button (radio favorites page). Press the FAV button to go through up to six pages of favorites, each having six favorite stations available per page. Each page of favorites can contain any combination of AM, FM, or XM™ (if equipped) stations. To store a station as a favorite, perform the following steps:

1. Tune to the desired radio station.
2. Press the FAV button to display the page where you want the station stored.
3. Press and hold one of the six pushbuttons until a beep sounds. When that pushbutton is pressed and released, the station that was set, returns.
4. Repeat the steps for each pushbutton radio station you want stored as a favorite.

The number of favorites pages can be setup using the MENU button. To setup the number of favorites pages, perform the following steps:

1. Press the MENU button to display the radio setup menu.
2. Press the pushbutton located below the FAV 1-6 label.
3. Select the desired number of favorites pages by pressing the pushbutton located below the displayed page numbers.
4. Press the FAV button, or let the menu time out, to return to the original main radio screen showing the radio station frequency labels and to begin the process of programming your favorites for the chosen amount of numbered pages.

## Setting the Tone (Bass/Midrange/Treble)

**BASS/MID/TREB (Bass, Midrange, or Treble):** To adjust bass, midrange, or treble, press the  knob until the tone control labels display. Continue pressing to highlight the desired label, or press the pushbutton

positioned under the desired label. Turn the  knob clockwise or counterclockwise to adjust the highlighted setting. You can also adjust the highlighted setting by pressing either SEEK arrow,  FWD (forward), or  REV (reverse) button until the desired levels are obtained. If a station's frequency is weak, or has static, decrease the treble.

To quickly adjust bass, midrange, or treble to the middle position, press the pushbutton positioned under the BASS, MID, or TREB label for more than two seconds. A beep sounds and the level adjusts to the middle position.

To quickly adjust all tone and speaker controls to the middle position, press the  knob for more than two seconds until a beep sounds.

**EQ (Equalization):** Press to select preset equalization settings.

To return to the manual mode, press the EQ button until Manual displays or manually adjust the bass, midrange, or treble by pressing the  knob.

## Adjusting the Speakers (Balance/Fade)

**BAL/FADE (Balance/Fade):** To adjust balance or fade, press the tune knob until the speaker control labels display. Continue pressing to highlight the desired label, or press the pushbutton positioned under the desired label. Turn the  knob clockwise or counterclockwise to adjust the highlighted setting. The highlighted setting can also be adjusted by pressing either SEEK arrow,  FWD, or  REV button until the desired levels are obtained.

To quickly adjust balance or fade to the middle position, press the pushbutton positioned under the BAL or FADE label for more than two seconds. A beep sounds and the level adjusts to the middle position.

To quickly adjust all speaker and tone controls to the middle position, press the  knob for more than two seconds until a beep sounds.

## Finding a Category (CAT) Station

**CAT (Category):** The CAT button is used to find XM™ stations when the radio is in the XM™ mode. To find XM™ channels within a desired category, perform the following:

1. Press the BAND button until the XM™ frequency displays. Press the CAT button to display the category labels on the radio display. Continue pressing the CAT button until the desired category name displays.
2. Press either of the two buttons below the desired category label to immediately tune to the first XM™ station associated with that category.
3. Turn the  knob, press the buttons below the right or left arrows displayed, or press either SEEK arrow to go to the previous or to the next XM™ station within the selected category.
4. To exit the category search mode, press the FAV button or BAND button to display your favorites again.

Undesired XM™ categories can be removed through the setup menu. To remove an undesired category, perform the following:

1. Press the MENU button to display the radio setup menu.
2. Press the pushbutton located below the XM CAT label.
3. Turn the  knob to display the category you want removed.
4. Press the pushbutton located under the Remove label until the category name along with the word Removed displays.
5. Repeat the steps to remove more categories.

Removed categories can be restored by pressing the pushbutton under the Add label when a removed category is displayed or by pressing the pushbutton under the Restore All label.

The radio does not let you remove or add categories while the vehicle is moving faster than 5 mph (8 km/h).

## **XM™ Satellite Radio Service**

XM™ is a satellite radio service that is based in the 48 contiguous United States and 10 Canadian provinces. XM™ Satellite Radio has a wide variety of programming and commercial-free music, coast-to-coast, and in digital-quality sound. During your trial or when you subscribe, you will get unlimited access to XM™ Radio Online for when you are not in your vehicle. A service fee is required to receive the XM™ service. For more information, contact XM™ at [www.xmradio.com](http://www.xmradio.com) or call 1-800-929-2100 in the U.S. and [www.xmradio.ca](http://www.xmradio.ca) or call 1-877-438-9677 in Canada.

### **Radio Messages for XM™ Only**

See *XM Radio Messages on page 3-68* later in this section for further detail.

## Radio Messages

**Calibration Error:** The audio system has been calibrated for your vehicle from the factory. If Calibration Error displays, it means that the radio has not been configured properly for your vehicle and it must be returned to your dealer/retailer for service.

**Locked:** This message displays when the THEFTLOCK® system has locked up the radio. Take the vehicle to your dealer/retailer for service.

If any error occurs repeatedly or if an error cannot be corrected, contact your dealer/retailer.

### Playing a CD (Single CD Player)

Insert a CD partway into the slot, label side up. The player pulls it in and the CD should begin playing.

### Playing a CD(s) (Six-Disc CD Player)

**LOAD** : Press to load CDs into the CD player. This CD player holds up to six CDs.

To insert one CD, do the following:

1. Press and release the  button.
2. Wait for the message to insert the disc.
3. Load a CD. Insert the CD partway into the slot, label side up. The player pulls the CD in.

To insert multiple CDs, do the following:

1. Press and hold the  button for two seconds. A beep sounds and Load All Discs displays.
2. Follow the displayed instruction on when to insert the discs. The CD player takes up to six CDs.
3. Press the  button again to cancel loading more CDs.

If the ignition or radio is turned off, with a CD in the player, it stays in the player. When the ignition or radio is turned on, the CD starts playing where it stopped, if it was the last selected audio source.

When a CD is inserted, the CD symbol displays on the CD. As each new track starts to play, the track number displays.

The CD player can play the smaller 3 inch (8 cm) single CDs with an adapter ring. Full-size CDs and the smaller CDs are loaded in the same manner.

## Care of Your CDs

If playing a CD-R, the sound quality can be reduced due to CD-R quality, the method of recording, the quality of the music that has been recorded, and the way the CD-R has been handled. Handle them carefully. Store CD-R(s) in their original cases or other protective cases and away from direct sunlight and dust. The CD player scans the bottom surface of the disc. If the surface of a CD is damaged, such as cracked, broken, or scratched, the CD does not play properly or not at all. Do not touch the bottom side of a CD while handling it; this could damage the surface. Pick up CDs by grasping the outer edges or the edge of the hole and the outer edge.

If the surface of a CD is soiled, take a soft, lint free cloth or dampen a clean, soft cloth in a mild, neutral detergent solution mixed with water, and clean it. Make sure the wiping process starts from the center to the edge.

## Care of Your CD Player

Do not add any label to a CD, it could get caught in the CD player. If a CD is recorded on a personal computer and a description label is needed, try labeling the top of the recorded CD with a marking pen.

To prevent contaminating the lens of the disc optics with lubricants internal to the player mechanism the use of disc lens cleaners is not advised.

**Notice:** If a label is added to a CD, or more than one CD is inserted into the slot at a time, or an attempt is made to play scratched or damaged CDs, the CD player could be damaged. While using the CD player, use only CDs in good condition without any label, load one CD at a time, and keep the CD player and the loading slot free of foreign materials, liquids, and debris.

If an error displays, see “CD Messages” later in this section.

 **EJECT:** To eject the CD that is currently playing, press and release this button. A beep sounds and Ejecting Disc displays. Once the disc is ejected, Remove Disc displays. The CD can be removed. If the CD is not removed, after several seconds, the CD automatically pulls back into the player and begins playing.

For the Six-Disc CD player, press and hold  for two seconds to eject all discs.

 **(Tune):** Turn to select tracks on the CD currently playing.

 **SEEK**  : Press the left arrow to go to the start of the current track, if more than ten seconds have played. Press the right arrow to go to the next track. If either the left or right arrow is held, or pressed multiple times, the player continues moving backward or forward through the tracks on the CD.

 **REV (Fast Reverse):** Press and hold to reverse playback quickly within a track. You will hear sound at a reduced volume. Release to resume playing the track. The elapsed time of the track displays.

 **FWD (Fast Forward):** Press and hold to advance playback quickly within a track. You will hear sound at a reduced volume. Release to resume playing the track. The elapsed time of the track displays.

**RDM (Random):** With the random setting, the tracks can be listened to in random, rather than sequential order, on one CD or all CDs in a six-disc CD player. To use random, do one of the following:

- To play the tracks from the CD you are listening to in random order, press the pushbutton positioned under the RDM label until Random Current Disc displays. Press again to turn off random play.
- To play tracks from all CDs loaded in a six-disc CD player in random order, press the pushbutton positioned under the RDM label until Randomize All Discs displays. Press again to turn off random play.

**BAND:** Press to listen to the radio when a CD is playing. The CD remains inside the radio for future listening.

**CD/AUX (CD/Auxiliary):** Press to play a CD when listening to the radio. The CD icon and track number displays when a CD is in the player.

Your radio system has an auxiliary input jack located on the lower right side of the faceplate. You can connect an external audio device such as a portable audio player to the auxiliary input jack for use as another source for playing CDs.

Press the CD/AUX button again and the system begins playing audio from the connected portable audio player. If a portable audio player is not connected, "No Input Device Found" displays.

## Playing an MP3 CD-R or CD-RW Disc

Your vehicle's radio system may have the MP3 feature. If it has this feature, it is capable of playing an MP3 CD-R or CD-RW disc. For more information on how to play an MP3 CD-R or CD-RW disc, see *Using an MP3 on page 3-64* later in this section.

## CD Messages

**CHECK DISC:** If this message displays and/or the CD comes out, it could be:

- It is very hot. When the temperature returns to normal, the CD should play.
- You are driving on a very rough road. When the road becomes smoother, the CD should play.
- The CD is dirty, scratched, wet, or upside down.
- The air is very humid. If so, wait about an hour and try again.
- There could have been a problem while burning the CD.
- The label could be caught in the CD player.

If the CD is not playing correctly, for any other reason, try a known good CD.

If any error occurs repeatedly or if an error cannot be corrected, contact your dealer/retailer. If the radio displays an error message, write it down and provide it to your dealer/retailer when reporting the problem.

## Using the Auxiliary Input Jack

Your radio system has an auxiliary input jack located on the lower right side of the faceplate. This is not an audio output; do not plug the headphone set into the front auxiliary input jack. An external audio device such as an iPod, laptop computer, MP3 player, CD changer, etc. can be connected to the auxiliary input jack for use as another audio source.

Drivers are encouraged to set up any auxiliary device while the vehicle is in PARK (P). See *Defensive Driving on page 4-3* for more information on driver distraction.

To use a portable audio player, connect a 3.5 mm (1/8 inch) cable to the radio's front auxiliary input jack. When a device is connected, press the radio CD/AUX button to begin playing audio from the device over the vehicle speakers.

 **(Power/Volume):** Turn clockwise or counterclockwise to increase or decrease the volume of the portable player. Additional volume adjustments might have to be made from the portable device if the volume is not loud or soft enough.

**BAND:** Press to listen to the radio when a portable audio device is playing. The portable audio device continues playing, so you might want to stop it or power it off.

**CD/AUX (CD/Auxiliary):** Press to play a CD when a portable audio device is playing. Press again and the system begins playing audio from the connected portable audio player. If a portable audio player is not connected, “No Input Device Found” displays.

## Using an MP3

### MP3 CD-R or CD-RW Disc

The radio plays MP3 files that were recorded on a CD-R or CD-RW disc. The files can be recorded with the following fixed bit rates: 32 kbps, 40 kbps, 56 kbps, 64 kbps, 80 kbps, 96 kbps, 112 kbps, 128 kbps, 160 kbps, 192 kbps, 224 kbps, 256 kbps, and 320 kbps or a variable bit rate. Song title, artist name, and album are available for display by the radio when recorded using ID3 tags version 1 and 2.

### Compressed Audio

The radio also plays discs that contain both uncompressed CD audio (.CDA files) and MP3 files. By default the radio reads only the uncompressed audio and ignore the MP3 files. Pressing the CAT (category) button toggles between compressed and uncompressed audio format.

## MP3 Format

If you burn your own MP3 disc on a personal computer:

- Make sure the MP3 files are recorded on a CD-R or CD-RW disc.
- Do not mix standard audio and MP3 files on one disc.
- The CD player is able to read and play a maximum of 50 folders, 50 playlists, and 255 files.
- Create a folder structure that makes it easy to find songs while driving. Organize songs by albums using one folder for each album. Each folder or album should contain 18 songs or less.
- Avoid subfolders. The system can support up to eight subfolders deep, however, keep the total number of folders to a minimum in order to reduce the complexity and confusion in trying to locate a particular folder during playback.
- Make sure playlists have a .mp3 or .wpl extension, other file extensions may not work.

- Minimize the length of the file, folder or playlist names. Long file, folder, or playlist names, or a combination of a large number of files and folders, or playlists can cause the player to be unable to play up to the maximum number of files, folders, playlists, or sessions. If you wish to play a large number of files, folders, playlists or sessions, minimize the length of the file, folder, or playlist name. Long names also take up more space on the display, potentially getting cut off.
- Finalize the audio disc before you burn it. Trying to add music to an existing disc can cause the disc not to function in the player.

Playlists can be changed by using the previous and next folder buttons, the tune knob, or the SEEK arrows. You can also play an MP3 CD-R or CD-RW that was recorded using no file folders. If a CD-R or CD-RW contains more than the maximum of 50 folders, 50 playlists, and 255 files, the player lets you access and navigate up to the maximum, but all items over the maximum are not accessible.

## Root Directory

The root directory of the CD-R or CD-RW is treated as a folder. If the root directory has compressed audio files, the directory displays as F1 ROOT. All files contained directly under the root directory are accessed prior to any root directory folders. However, playlists (Px) are always accessed before root folders or files.

## Empty Directory or Folder

If a root directory or a folder exists somewhere in the file structure that contains only folders/subfolders and no compressed files directly beneath them, the player advances to the next folder in the file structure that contains compressed audio files. The empty folder does not display.

## No Folder

When the CD contains only compressed files, the files are located under the root folder. The next and previous folder functions do not display on a CD that was recorded without folders or playlists. When displaying the name of the folder the radio displays ROOT.

When the CD contains only playlists and compressed audio files, but no folders, all files are located under the root folder. The folder down and up buttons searches playlists (Px) first and then go to the root folder. When the radio displays the name of the folder the radio displays ROOT.

## Order of Play

Tracks recorded to the CD-R or CD-RW are played in the following order:

- Play begins from the first track in the first playlist and continues sequentially through all tracks in each playlist. When the last track of the last playlist has played, play continues from the first track of the first playlist.
- Play begins from the first track in the first folder and continues sequentially through all tracks in each folder. When the last track of the last folder has been played, play continues from the first track of the first folder.

When play enters a new folder, the display does not automatically show the new folder name unless the folder mode is chosen as the default display. The new track name displays.

## File System and Naming

The song name that is displayed is the song name that is contained in the ID3 tag. If the song name is not present in the ID3 tag, then the radio displays the file name without the extension (such as .mp3) as the track name.

Track names longer than 32 characters or four pages are shortened. Parts of words on the last page of text and the extension of the filename does not display.

## Preprogrammed Playlists

Preprogrammed playlists that were created by WinAmp™, MusicMatch™, or Real Jukebox™ software can be accessed, however, they cannot be edited using the radio. These playlists are treated as special folders containing compressed audio song files.

## Playing an MP3

Insert a CD-R or CD-RW partway into the slot (Single CD Player), or press the  button and wait for the message to insert disc (Six-Disc CD Player), label side up. The player pulls it in, and the CD-R or CD-RW should begin playing.

If the ignition or radio is turned off with a CD-R or CD-RW in the player, it stays in the player. When the ignition or radio is turned on, the CD-R or CD-RW starts to play where it stopped, if it was the last selected audio source.

As each new track starts to play, the track number and song title displays.

 **EJECT:** Press and release to eject the CD-R or CD-RW that is playing. A beep sounds and Ejecting Disc displays. Once the disc is ejected, Remove Disc displays. The CD-R or CD-RW can be removed. If the CD-R or CD-RW is not removed, after several seconds, the CD-R or CD-RW automatically pulls back into the player and begins playing.

For the Six-Disc CD player, press and hold this button for two seconds to eject all discs.

**🎵 (Tune):** Turn to select MP3 files on the CD-R or CD-RW currently playing.

**⏮ SEEK ⏭ :** Press the left arrow to go to the start of the current MP3 file, if more than ten seconds have played. Press the right arrow to go to the next MP3 file. If either arrow is held or pressed multiple times, the player continues moving backward or forward through MP3 files on the CD.

**⏪ 📁 (Previous Folder):** Press the pushbutton positioned under the Folder label to go to the first track in the previous folder.

**📁 ⏩ (Next Folder):** Press the pushbutton positioned under the Folder label to go to the first track in the next folder.

**⏮⏮ REV (Reverse):** Press and hold to reverse playback quickly within an MP3 file. Sound is heard at a reduced volume. Release to resume playing the file. The elapsed time of the file displays.

**⏭⏭ FWD (Fast Forward):** Press and hold to advance playback quickly within an MP3 file. Sound is heard at a reduced volume. Release to resume playing the file. The elapsed time of the file displays.

**RDM (Random):** With the random setting, the MP3 files on the CD-R or CD-RW can be listened to in random, rather than sequential order, on one CD-R/CD-RW or all discs in a six-disc CD player. To use random, do one of the following:

1. To play MP3 files from the CD-R or CD-RW you are listening to in random order, press the pushbutton positioned under the RDM label until Random Current Disc displays. Press the same pushbutton again to turn off random play.
2. To play songs from all CDs loaded in a six-disc CD player in random order, press the pushbutton positioned under the RDM label until Randomize All Discs displays. Press the same pushbutton again to turn off random play.

**🎵 (Music Navigator):** Use the music navigator feature to play MP3 files on the CD-R or CD-RW in order by artist or album. Press the pushbutton located below the music navigator label. The player scans the disc to sort the files by artist and album ID3 tag information. It can take several minutes to scan the disc depending on the number of MP3 files recorded to the CD-R or CD-RW. The radio can begin playing while it is scanning the disc in the background. When the scan is finished, the CD-R or CD-RW begins playing again.

Once the disc has been scanned, the player defaults to playing MP3 files in order by artist. The current artist playing is shown on the second line of the display between the arrows. Once all songs by that artist are played, the player moves to the next artist in alphabetical order on the CD-R/CD-RW and begins playing MP3 files by that artist. If you want to listen to MP3 files by another artist, press the pushbutton located below either arrow button. The disc goes to the next or previous artist in alphabetical order. Continue pressing either button until the desired artist is displayed.

To change from playback by artist to playback by album, press the pushbutton located below the Sort By label. From the sort screen, push one of the buttons below the album button. Press the pushbutton below the back label to return to the main music navigator screen. Now the album name is displayed on the second line between the arrows and songs from the current album begins to play. Once all songs from that album are played, the player moves to the next album in alphabetical order on the CD-R/CD-RW and begins playing MP3 files from that album.

To exit music navigator mode, press the pushbutton below the Back label to return to normal MP3 playback.

**BAND:** Press this button to listen to the radio while a CD is playing. The inactive CD remains inside the radio for future listening.

**CD/AUX (CD/Auxiliary):** Press this button to play a CD while listening to the radio. The CD icon and a message showing disc and/or track number displays while a CD is in the player. Press this button again and the system automatically searches for an auxiliary input device such as a portable audio player. If a portable audio player is not connected, "No Aux Input Device" displays.

## XM Radio Messages

**XL (Explicit Language Channels):** These channels, or any others, can be blocked at a customer's request, by calling 1-800-852-XXXM (9696).

**XM Updating:** The encryption code in the receiver is being updated, and no action is required. This process should take no longer than 30 seconds.

**No XM Signal:** The system is functioning correctly, but the vehicle is in a location that is blocking the XM™ signal. When you move into an open area, the signal should return.

**Loading XM:** The audio system is acquiring and processing audio and text data. No action is needed. This message should disappear shortly.

**Channel Off Air:** This channel is not currently in service. Tune to another channel.

**Channel Unavail:** This previously assigned channel is no longer assigned. Tune to another station. If this station was one of the presets, choose another station for that preset button.

**No Artist Info:** No artist information is available at this time on this channel. The system is working properly.

**No Title Info:** No song title information is available at this time on this channel. The system is working properly.

**No CAT Info:** No category information is available at this time on this channel. The system is working properly.

**No Information:** No text or informational messages are available at this time on this channel. The system is working properly.

**CAT Not Found:** There are no channels available for the selected category. The system is working properly.

**XM TheftLocked:** The XM receiver in the vehicle could have previously been in another vehicle. For security purposes, XM receivers cannot be swapped between vehicles. If this message appears after having your vehicle serviced, check with your dealer/retailer.

**XM Radio ID:** If tuned to channel 0, this message alternates with the XM Radio eight digit radio ID label. This label is needed to activate the service.

**Unknown:** If this message is received when tuned to channel 0, there could be a receiver fault. Consult with your dealer/retailer.

**Check XM Receiver:** If this message does not clear within a short period of time, the receiver could have a fault. Consult with your dealer/retailer.

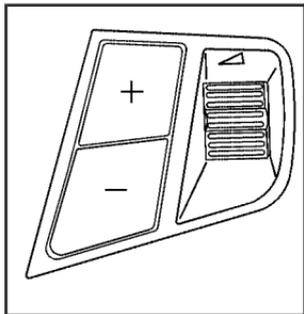
**XM Not Available:** If this message does not clear within a short period of time, the receiver could have a fault. Consult with your dealer/retailer.

## Navigation/Radio System

Your vehicle may have a navigation radio system.

The navigation system has built-in features intended to minimize driver distraction. Technology alone, no matter how advanced, can never replace your own judgment. See the Navigation System manual for some tips to help you reduce distractions while driving.

## Audio Steering Wheel Controls



Some audio controls can be adjusted at the steering wheel. They include the following:

**+ / - (Next/Previous):** Press and release either the plus or minus button to go to the next or the previous preset radio station.

When a CD is playing, press and release either the plus or minus button to go to the next or the previous track.

For vehicles with the OnStar<sup>®</sup> system, press the minus (previous) button to end a Hands-Free call, an OnStar<sup>®</sup> call, cancel an incoming call, or end the Advisor Playback.

**▲ (Volume):** Move the thumbwheel up or down to increase or to decrease the volume.

Press and release the thumbwheel to mute the system. Press it again to turn the sound back on.

If your vehicle has the navigation system, press and hold the thumbwheel for longer than one second to initiate voice recognition. See “Voice Recognition” in the navigation manual for more information.

If your vehicle has OnStar<sup>®</sup>, press and hold the thumbwheel for longer than one second to interact with the OnStar<sup>®</sup> system. OnStar<sup>®</sup> voice command does not work unless Personal Calling is activated. To activate OnStar<sup>®</sup> Personal Calling please refer to the OnStar<sup>®</sup> Owner’s manual. If your vehicle also has the navigation system, press the thumbwheel to initiate voice recognition and say, “OnStar” to enter the OnStar<sup>®</sup> mode. See *OnStar<sup>®</sup> System on page 2-35* in this manual or the navigation manual for more information.

## Radio Reception

Frequency interference and static can occur during normal radio reception if items such as cell phone chargers, vehicle convenience accessories, and external electronic devices are plugged into the accessory power outlet. If there is interference or static, unplug the item from the accessory power outlet.

## AM

The range for most AM stations is greater than for FM, especially at night. The longer range can cause station frequencies to interfere with each other. For better radio reception, most AM radio stations boost the power levels during the day, and then reduce these levels during the night. Static can also occur when things like storms and power lines interfere with radio reception. When this happens, try reducing the treble on the radio.

## FM Stereo

FM stereo gives the best sound, but FM signals only reach about 10 to 40 miles (16 to 65 km). Tall buildings or hills can interfere with FM signals, causing the sound to fade in and out.

## XM™ Satellite Radio Service

XM™ Satellite Radio Service gives digital radio reception from coast-to-coast in the 48 contiguous United States, and in Canada. Just as with FM, tall buildings or hills can interfere with satellite radio signals, causing the sound to fade in and out. In addition, traveling or standing under heavy foliage, bridges, garages, or through tunnels could cause loss of the XM signal for a period of time. The radio may display NO XM SIGNAL to indicate interference.

## Fixed Mast Antenna

The fixed mast antenna can withstand most car washes without being damaged. If the mast should ever become slightly bent, straighten it out by hand. If the mast is badly bent, replace it.

Check occasionally to make sure the mast is still tightened to the antenna base. If tightening is required, tighten by hand.

## XM™ Satellite Radio Antenna System

The XM™ Satellite Radio antenna is located on the roof of the vehicle. Keep this antenna clear of snow and ice build up for clear radio reception.

If the vehicle has a sunroof, the performance of the XM™ system may be affected if the sunroof is open.

Loading items onto the roof of the vehicle can interfere with the performance of the XM™ system. Make sure the XM™ Satellite Radio antenna is not obstructed.



## Section 4 Driving Your Vehicle

---

<b>Your Driving, the Road, and Your Vehicle</b> .....	4-2	Loss of Control .....	4-13
Driving Your Vehicle .....	4-2	Off-Road Driving .....	4-15
Driver Behavior .....	4-2	Driving at Night .....	4-27
Driving Environment .....	4-2	Driving in Rain and on Wet Roads .....	4-28
Vehicle Design .....	4-3	Before Leaving on a Long Trip .....	4-29
Defensive Driving .....	4-3	Highway Hypnosis .....	4-29
Drunk Driving .....	4-4	Hill and Mountain Roads .....	4-30
Control of a Vehicle .....	4-4	Winter Driving .....	4-31
Braking .....	4-5	If Your Vehicle is Stuck in Sand, Mud, Ice, or Snow .....	4-34
Antilock Brake System (ABS) .....	4-6	Rocking Your Vehicle to Get It Out .....	4-35
Braking in Emergencies .....	4-6	Loading Your Vehicle .....	4-35
Traction Control System (TCS) .....	4-7	<b>Towing</b> .....	4-41
Electronic Stability Program .....	4-8	Towing Your Vehicle .....	4-41
All-Wheel Drive (AWD) System .....	4-10	Recreational Vehicle Towing .....	4-41
Steering .....	4-10	Towing a Trailer .....	4-44
Off-Road Recovery .....	4-13		
Passing .....	4-13		

# Your Driving, the Road, and Your Vehicle

## Driving Your Vehicle

Whenever we drive, we are taking on an important responsibility. This is true for any motor vehicle — passenger car, van, truck, sport utility. Driver behavior, the driving environment, and the vehicle's design all affect how well a vehicle performs. But statistics show that the most important factor, by far, is how we drive.

Knowing how these three factors work together can help you understand how your vehicle handles and what you can do to avoid many types of crashes, including a rollover crash.

## Driver Behavior

The single most important thing is this: everyone in the vehicle, including the driver, should buckle up. See *Safety Belts: They Are for Everyone on page 1-14*. In fact, most serious injuries and fatalities to unbelted occupants can be reduced or prevented by the use of safety belts. In a rollover crash, an unbelted person is significantly more likely to die than a person wearing a seat belt. In addition, avoiding excessive speed, sudden or abrupt turns, and drunken or aggressive driving can help make trips safer and avoid the possibility of a crash, especially a rollover crash. This section provides many useful tips to help you drive more safely.

## Driving Environment

You can also help avoid a rollover or other type of crash by being prepared for driving in inclement weather, at night, or during other times where visibility or traction may be limited, such as on curves, slippery roads, or hilly terrain. Unfamiliar surroundings can also have hidden hazards.

To help you learn more about driving in different conditions, this section contains information about city, freeway, and off-road driving, as well as other hints for driving in various weather conditions.

## Vehicle Design

According to the U.S. Department of Transportation, utility vehicles have a significantly higher rollover rate than other types of vehicles. Utility vehicles do have higher ground clearance and a narrower track or shorter wheelbase than passenger cars, to make them more capable for off-road driving. Specific design characteristics like these give the driver a better view of the road, but also give utility vehicles a higher center of gravity than other types of vehicles. This means that you should not expect a utility vehicle to handle the same way a vehicle with a lower center of gravity, like a car, would in similar situations.

But driver behavior factors are far more often the cause of a utility vehicle rollover than are environmental or vehicle factors. Safe driver behavior and understanding the environment in which you will be driving can help avoid a rollover crash in any type of vehicle, including utility vehicles.

## Defensive Driving

Defensive driving means “always expect the unexpected.” The first step in driving defensively is to wear your safety belt — See *Safety Belts: They Are for Everyone on page 1-14*.

### CAUTION:

**Assume that other road users (pedestrians, bicyclists, and other drivers) are going to be careless and make mistakes. Anticipate what they might do and be ready. In addition:**

- **Allow enough following distance between you and the driver in front of you.**
- **Focus on the task of driving.**

**Driver distraction can cause collisions resulting in injury or possible death. These simple defensive driving techniques could save your life.**

## Drunk Driving

### CAUTION:

**Drinking and then driving is very dangerous. Your reflexes, perceptions, attentiveness, and judgment can be affected by even a small amount of alcohol. You can have a serious — or even fatal — collision if you drive after drinking. Do not drink and drive or ride with a driver who has been drinking. Ride home in a cab; or if you are with a group, designate a driver who will not drink.**

Death and injury associated with drinking and driving is a global tragedy.

Alcohol affects four things that anyone needs to drive a vehicle: judgment, muscular coordination, vision, and attentiveness.

Police records show that almost 40 percent of all motor vehicle-related deaths involve alcohol. In most cases, these deaths are the result of someone who was drinking and driving. In recent years, more than 17,000 annual motor vehicle-related deaths have been associated with the use of alcohol, with about 250,000 people injured.

For persons under 21, it is against the law in every U.S. state to drink alcohol. There are good medical, psychological, and developmental reasons for these laws.

The obvious way to eliminate the leading highway safety problem is for people never to drink alcohol and then drive.

Medical research shows that alcohol in a person's system can make crash injuries worse, especially injuries to the brain, spinal cord, or heart. This means that when anyone who has been drinking — driver or passenger — is in a crash, that person's chance of being killed or permanently disabled is higher than if the person had not been drinking.

## Control of a Vehicle

The following three systems help to control your vehicle while driving — brakes, steering, and accelerator. At times, as when driving on snow or ice, it is easy to ask more of those control systems than the tires and road can provide. Meaning, you can lose control of your vehicle. See *Traction Control System (TCS)* on page 4-7.

Adding non-dealer/non-retailer accessories can affect your vehicle's performance. See *Accessories and Modifications* on page 5-3.

## Braking

See *Brake System Warning Light on page 3-37*.

Braking action involves perception time and reaction time. First, you have to decide to push on the brake pedal. That is perception time. Then you have to bring up your foot and do it. That is reaction time.

Average reaction time is about three-fourths of a second. But that is only an average. It might be less with one driver and as long as two or three seconds or more with another. Age, physical condition, alertness, coordination, and eyesight all play a part. So do alcohol, drugs, and frustration. But even in three-fourths of a second, a vehicle moving at 60 mph (100 km/h) travels 66 feet (20 m). That could be a lot of distance in an emergency, so keeping enough space between your vehicle and others is important.

And, of course, actual stopping distances vary greatly with the surface of the road, whether it is pavement or gravel; the condition of the road, whether it is wet, dry, or icy; tire tread; the condition of the brakes; the weight of the vehicle; and the amount of brake force applied.

Avoid needless heavy braking. Some people drive in spurts — heavy acceleration followed by heavy braking — rather than keeping pace with traffic. This is a mistake. The brakes might not have time to cool between hard stops. The brakes will wear out much faster if you do a lot of heavy braking. If you keep pace with the traffic and allow realistic following distances, you will eliminate a lot of unnecessary braking. That means better braking and longer brake life.

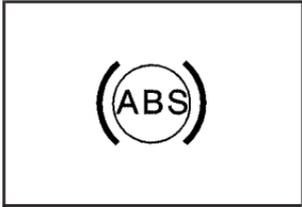
If your vehicle's engine ever stops while you are driving, brake normally but do not pump the brakes. If you do, the pedal could get harder to push down. If the engine stops, you will still have some power brake assist. But you will use it when you brake. Once the power assist is used up, it can take longer to stop and the brake pedal will be harder to push.

Adding non-dealer/non-retailer accessories can affect your vehicle's performance. See *Accessories and Modifications on page 5-3*.

## Antilock Brake System (ABS)

Your vehicle has the Antilock Brake System (ABS), an advanced electronic braking system that will help prevent a braking skid.

When you start the engine and begin to drive away, ABS will check itself. You might hear a momentary motor or clicking noise while this test is going on, and you might even notice that the brake pedal moves a little. This is normal.



If there is a problem with ABS, this warning light will stay on. See *Anti-lock Brake System (ABS) Warning Light on page 3-37*.

Let us say the road is wet and you are driving safely. Suddenly, an animal jumps out in front of you. You slam on the brakes and continue braking. Here is what happens with ABS:

A computer senses that wheels are slowing down. If one of the wheels is about to stop rolling, the computer will separately work the brakes at each wheel.

ABS can change the brake pressure faster than any driver could. The computer is programmed to make the most of available tire and road conditions. This can help you steer around the obstacle while braking hard.

As you brake, the computer keeps receiving updates on wheel speed and controls braking pressure accordingly.

Remember: ABS does not change the time you need to get your foot up to the brake pedal or always decrease stopping distance. If you get too close to the vehicle in front of you, you will not have time to apply the brakes if that vehicle suddenly slows or stops. Always leave enough room up ahead to stop, even though you have ABS.

### Using ABS

Do not pump the brakes. Just hold the brake pedal down firmly and let antilock work for you. You might hear the antilock pump or motor operate, and feel the brake pedal pulsate, but this is normal.

### Braking in Emergencies

With ABS, you can steer and brake at the same time. In many emergencies, steering can help you more than even the very best braking.

## Traction Control System (TCS)

Your vehicle has a Traction Control System (TCS) that limits wheel spin. This is especially useful in slippery road conditions. The system operates only if it senses that one or both of the front wheels are spinning or beginning to lose traction. When this happens, the system reduces engine power to limit wheel spin. You may feel or hear the system working, but this is normal.



This light will flash when your traction control system is limiting wheel spin.

The traction control system automatically comes on whenever you start your vehicle. To limit wheel spin, especially in slippery road conditions, you should always leave the system on. But you can turn the traction control system off if you ever need to. You should turn the system off if your vehicle ever gets stuck in sand, mud, ice or snow and rocking the vehicle is required. See *Rocking Your Vehicle to Get It Out* on page 4-35 and *If Your Vehicle is Stuck in Sand, Mud, Ice, or Snow* on page 4-34 for more information.



The TCS button is located on the instrument panel.

Press this button briefly to turn off the TCS.



One of these TCS warning lights will be displayed on the instrument panel when the TCS is off.



The traction control system can be activated again by pressing the traction control button.

If the system is limiting wheel spin when you press the button, the system will not turn off until there is no longer a current need to limit wheel spin. You can turn the system back on at any time by pressing the button again. If the TCS light does not come on, you may not have traction control and your vehicle should be serviced at a dealer/retailer.

Adding non-dealer/non-retailer accessories can affect your vehicle's performance. See *Accessories and Modifications on page 5-3* for more information.

## Electronic Stability Program

Your vehicle has an Electronic Stability Program (ESP) system which combines antilock brake, traction and stability control systems and helps the driver maintain directional control of the vehicle in most driving conditions.

When you first start your vehicle and begin to drive away, the system performs several diagnostic checks to ensure there are no problems. You may hear or feel the system working. This is normal and does not mean there is a problem with your vehicle.



It will flash when the ESP system is both on and activated.



This light is located on the instrument panel cluster.

If the system fails to turn on or activate, this light will be on solid.

When the light is on solid, the system will not assist the driver maintain directional control of the vehicle. Adjust your driving accordingly.

The Electronic Stability Program (ESP) system automatically comes on whenever you start your vehicle. To assist the driver with vehicle directional control, especially in slippery road conditions, you should always leave the system on. You can turn ESP off if you ever need to.



The ESP/TCS button is located on the instrument panel.

The Traction Control System (TCS) can be turned off or back on by pressing the ESP/TCS button. To disable both traction control and ESP, press and hold the button briefly.

When the ESP system is turned off, the ESP/TCS warning light will be on solid to warn the driver that both traction control and ESP are disabled.

It is recommended to leave the system on for normal driving conditions, but it may be necessary to turn the system off if your vehicle is stuck in sand, mud, ice or snow, and you want to “rock” your vehicle to attempt to free it.

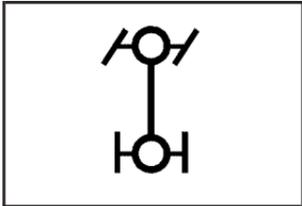
ESP may also turn off automatically if it determines that a problem exists with the system. The ESP/TCS warning light will be on solid to warn the driver that ESP is disabled and requires service. If the problem does not clear itself after restarting the vehicle, you should see your dealer/retailer for service.

If your vehicle is in cruise control when the system begins to assist the driver maintain directional control of the vehicle, the ESP/TCS light will flash and the cruise control will automatically disengage. When road conditions allow you to use cruise again, you may re-engage the cruise control. See *Cruise Control on page 3-11*.

Adding non-dealer/non-retailer accessories can affect your vehicle’s performance. See *Accessories and Modifications on page 5-3* for more information.

## All-Wheel Drive (AWD) System

If your vehicle has all-wheel drive (AWD), the AWD system operates automatically without any action required by the driver. If the front drive wheels begin to slip, the rear wheels will automatically begin to drive the vehicle as required. There may be a slight engagement noise during hard use but this is normal.



This light is located on the instrument panel cluster.

It will come on and stay on to indicate there may be a problem with the drive system and service is required. If the light stays on, it must be reset. To reset the light, turn the ignition off and then back on again. If the light stays on, see your dealer/retailer for service.

If the vehicle is exposed to extended heavy AWD usage, the AWD system will shut itself off to protect the system from overheating. When the system cools down, the AWD system will activate itself again automatically; this cool-down can take up to 20 minutes depending on outside temperature and vehicle use.

## Steering

### Electric Power Steering

If your vehicle has the electric power steering system and the engine stalls while you are driving, the power steering assist system will continue to operate until you are able to stop your vehicle. If you lose power steering assist because the electric power steering system is not functioning, you can steer, but it will take more effort.

If you turn the steering wheel in either direction several times until it stops, or hold the steering wheel in the stopped position for an extended amount of time, you may notice a reduced amount of power steering assist. The normal amount of power steering assist should return shortly after a few normal steering movements.

The electric power steering system does not require regular maintenance. If you suspect steering system problems and/or the Service Vehicle Soon light comes on, contact your dealer/retailer for service repairs.

### Hydraulic Power Steering

If your vehicle has the hydraulic power steering system and you lose power steering assist because the engine stops or the power steering system is not functioning, you can steer, but it will take much more effort.

## Steering Tips

It is important to take curves at a reasonable speed.

A lot of the “driver lost control” accidents mentioned on the news happen on curves. Here is why:

Experienced driver or beginner, each of us is subject to the same laws of physics when driving on curves. The traction of the tires against the road surface makes it possible for the vehicle to change its path when you turn the front wheels. If there is no traction, inertia will keep the vehicle going in the same direction. If you have ever tried to steer a vehicle on wet ice, you will understand this.

Traction in a curve depends on the condition of the tires and the road surface, the angle at which the curve is banked, and your speed. While in a curve, speed is the one factor you can control.

Suppose you are steering through a sharp curve. Then you suddenly accelerate. Both control systems — steering and acceleration — have to do their work where the tires meet the road. Adding the sudden acceleration can demand too much of those places. You can lose control. See *Traction Control System (TCS) on page 4-7* and *Electronic Stability Program on page 4-8*.

What should you do if this ever happens? Ease up on the brake or accelerator pedal, steer the vehicle the way you want it to go, and slow down.

Speed limit signs near curves warn that you should adjust your speed. Of course, the posted speeds are based on good weather and road conditions. Under less favorable conditions you will want to go slower.

If you need to reduce speed when approaching a curve, do it before you enter the curve, while the front wheels are straight ahead.

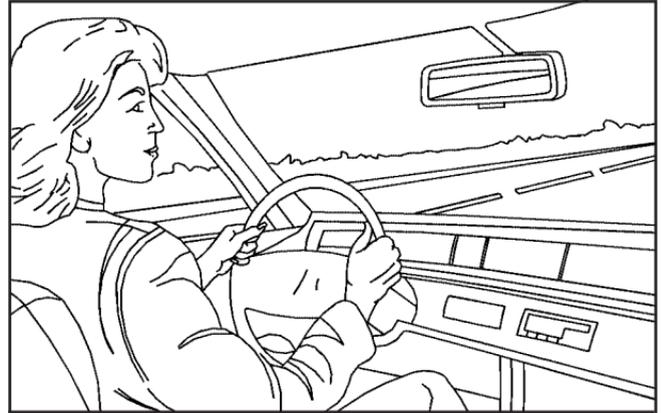
Try to adjust the speed so you can drive through the curve. Maintain a reasonable, steady speed. Wait to accelerate until you are out of the curve, and then accelerate gently into the straightaway.

Adding non-dealer/non-retailer accessories can affect your vehicle’s performance. See *Accessories and Modifications on page 5-3*.

## Steering in Emergencies

There are times when steering can be more effective than braking. For example, you come over a hill and find a truck stopped in your lane, or a car suddenly pulls out from nowhere, or a child darts out from between parked cars and stops right in front of you. You can avoid these problems by braking — if you can stop in time. But sometimes you cannot; there is not room. That is the time for evasive action — steering around the problem.

Your vehicle can perform very well in emergencies like these. First apply the brakes. See *Braking on page 4-5*. It is better to remove as much speed as you can from a possible collision. Then steer around the problem, to the left or right depending on the space available.

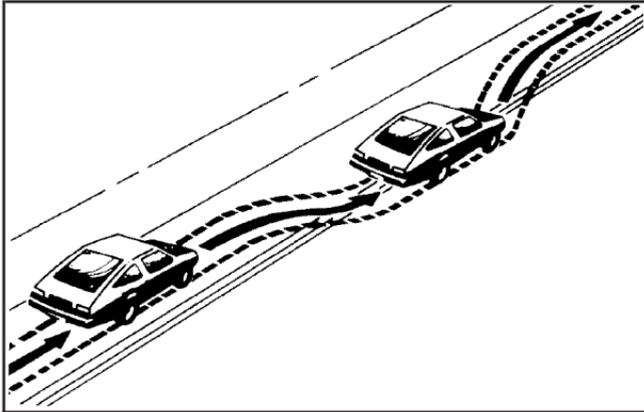


An emergency like this requires close attention and a quick decision. If you are holding the steering wheel at the recommended 9 and 3 o'clock positions, you can turn it a full 180 degrees very quickly without removing either hand. But you have to act fast, steer quickly, and just as quickly straighten the wheel once you have avoided the object.

The fact that such emergency situations are always possible is a good reason to practice defensive driving at all times and wear safety belts properly.

## Off-Road Recovery

Your vehicle's right wheels can drop off the edge of a road onto the shoulder while driving.



If the level of the shoulder is only slightly below the pavement, recovery should be fairly easy. Ease off the accelerator and then, if there is nothing in the way, steer so that your vehicle straddles the edge of the pavement. Turn the steering wheel up to one-quarter turn until the right front tire contacts the pavement edge. Then turn the steering wheel to go straight down the roadway.

## Passing

Passing another vehicle on a two-lane road can be dangerous. To reduce the risk of danger while passing:

- Look down the road, to the sides, and to crossroads for situations that might affect a successful pass. If in doubt, wait.
- Watch for traffic signs, pavement markings, and lines that could indicate a turn or an intersection. Never cross a solid or double-solid line on your side of the lane.
- Do not get too close to the vehicle you want to pass. Doing so can reduce your visibility.
- Wait your turn to pass a slow vehicle.
- When you are being passed, ease to the right.

## Loss of Control

Let us review what driving experts say about what happens when the three control systems — brakes, steering, and acceleration — do not have enough friction where the tires meet the road to do what the driver has asked.

In any emergency, do not give up. Keep trying to steer and constantly seek an escape route or area of less danger.

## Skidding

In a skid, a driver can lose control of the vehicle. Defensive drivers avoid most skids by taking reasonable care suited to existing conditions, and by not overdriving those conditions. But skids are always possible.

The three types of skids correspond to your vehicle's three control systems. In the braking skid, the wheels are not rolling. In the steering or cornering skid, too much speed or steering in a curve causes tires to slip and lose cornering force. And in the acceleration skid, too much throttle causes the driving wheels to spin.

A cornering skid is best handled by easing your foot off the accelerator pedal.

Remember: Any traction control system helps avoid only the acceleration skid. If your traction control system is off, then an acceleration skid is also best handled by easing your foot off the accelerator pedal.

If your vehicle starts to slide, ease your foot off the accelerator pedal and quickly steer the way you want the vehicle to go. If you start steering quickly enough, your vehicle may straighten out. Always be ready for a second skid if it occurs.

Of course, traction is reduced when water, snow, ice, gravel, or other material is on the road. For safety, you will want to slow down and adjust your driving to these conditions. It is important to slow down on slippery surfaces because stopping distance will be longer and vehicle control more limited.

While driving on a surface with reduced traction, try your best to avoid sudden steering, acceleration, or braking, including reducing vehicle speed by shifting to a lower gear. Any sudden changes could cause the tires to slide. You may not realize the surface is slippery until your vehicle is skidding. Learn to recognize warning clues — such as enough water, ice, or packed snow on the road to make a mirrored surface — and slow down when you have any doubt.

Remember: Any Antilock Brake System (ABS) helps avoid only the braking skid.

## Off-Road Driving

This off-road guide is for vehicles that have all-wheel drive. If your vehicle does not have all-wheel drive, you should not drive off-road unless you are on a level, solid surface.

Many of the same design features that help make your vehicle responsive on paved roads during poor weather conditions — features like all-wheel drive — help make it much better suited for off-road use. Its higher ground clearance also helps your vehicle step over some off-road obstacles. But your vehicle does not have features like special underbody shielding and a transfer case low gear range, things that are usually thought necessary for extended or severe off-road service.

Also, see *Braking on page 4-5*.

The airbag system is designed to work properly under a wide range of conditions, including off-road usage. Observe safe driving speeds, especially on rough terrain. As always, wear your safety belt.

Off-road driving can be great fun. But it does have some definite hazards. The greatest of these is the terrain itself.

“Off-roading” means you have left the North American road system behind. Traffic lanes are not marked. Curves are not banked. There are no road signs. Surfaces can be slippery, rough, uphill, or downhill. In short, you have gone right back to nature.

Off-road driving involves some new skills. And that is why it is very important that you read this guide. You will find many driving tips and suggestions. These will help make your off-road driving safer and more enjoyable.

## Before You Go Off-Roading

There are some things to do before you go out. For example, be sure to have all necessary maintenance and service work done. Is there enough fuel? Is the spare tire fully inflated? Are the fluid levels up where they should be? What are the local laws that apply to off-roading where you will be driving? If you do not know, you should check with law enforcement people in the area. Will you be on someone’s private land? If so, be sure to get the necessary permission.

## Loading Your Vehicle for Off-Road Driving

### CAUTION:

- **Cargo on the load floor piled higher than the seatbacks can be thrown forward during a sudden stop. You or your passengers could be injured. Keep cargo below the top of the seatbacks.**
- **Unsecured cargo on the load floor can be tossed about when driving over rough terrain. You or your passengers can be struck by flying objects. Secure the cargo properly.**
- **Heavy loads on the roof raise the vehicle's center of gravity, making it more likely to roll over. You can be seriously or fatally injured if the vehicle rolls over. Put heavy loads inside the cargo area, not on the roof. Keep cargo in the cargo area as far forward and low as possible.**

There are some important things to remember about how to load your vehicle.

- The heaviest things should be on the load floor and forward of the rear axle. Put heavier items as far forward as you can.
- Be sure the load is secured properly, so driving on the off-road terrain does not toss things around.

You will find other important information in this manual. See *Loading Your Vehicle* on page 4-35, *Luggage Carrier* on page 2-46, and *Tires* on page 5-51.

## Environmental Concerns

Off-road driving can provide wholesome and satisfying recreation. However, it also raises environmental concerns. We recognize these concerns and urge every off-roader to follow these basic rules for protecting the environment:

- Always use established trails, roads, and areas that have been specially set aside for public off-road recreational driving; obey all posted regulations.
- Avoid any driving practice that could damage the environment — shrubs, flowers, trees, grasses — or disturb wildlife. This includes wheel-spinning, breaking down trees, or unnecessary driving through streams or over soft ground.
- Always carry a litter bag — make sure all refuse is removed from any campsite before leaving.
- Take extreme care with open fires where permitted, camp stoves, and lanterns.
- Never park your vehicle over dry grass or other combustible materials that could catch fire from the heat of the vehicle's exhaust system.

## Traveling to Remote Areas

It makes sense to plan your trip, especially when going to a remote area. Know the terrain and plan your route. You are much less likely to get bad surprises. Get accurate maps of trails and terrain. Try to learn of any blocked or closed roads.

It is also a good idea to travel with at least one other vehicle. If something happens to one of them, the other can help quickly.

## Getting Familiar with Off-Road Driving

It is a good idea to practice in an area that is safe and close to home before you go into the wilderness. Off-road driving does require some new and different driving skills. Here is what we mean.

Tune your senses to different kinds of signals. Your eyes, for example, need to constantly sweep the terrain for unexpected obstacles. Your ears need to listen for unusual tire or engine sounds. With your arms, hands, feet, and body, you will need to respond to vibrations and vehicle bounce.

Controlling your vehicle is the key to successful off-road driving. One of the best ways to control your vehicle is to control your speed. Here are some things to keep in mind. At higher speeds:

- You approach things faster and you have less time to scan the terrain for obstacles.
- You have less time to react.
- You have more vehicle bounce when you drive over obstacles.
- You will need more distance for braking, especially since you are on an unpaved surface.

### **CAUTION:**

**When you are driving off-road, bouncing and quick changes in direction can easily throw you out of position. This could cause you to lose control and crash. So, whether you are driving on or off the road, you and your passengers should wear safety belts.**

## Scanning the Terrain

Off-road driving can take you over many different kinds of terrain. You need to be familiar with the terrain and its many different features. Here are some things to consider.

**Surface Conditions:** Off-roading can take you over hard-packed dirt, gravel, rocks, grass, sand, mud, snow, or ice. Each of these surfaces affects the steering, acceleration, and braking of your vehicle in different ways. Depending upon the kind of surface you are on, you may experience slipping, sliding, wheel spinning, delayed acceleration, poor traction, and longer braking distances.

**Surface Obstacles:** Unseen or hidden obstacles can be hazardous. A rock, log, hole, rut, or bump can startle you if you are not prepared for them. Often these obstacles are hidden by grass, bushes, snow, or even the rise and fall of the terrain itself. Here are some things to consider:

- Is the path ahead clear?
- Will the surface texture change abruptly up ahead?
- Does the travel take you uphill or downhill?  
There is more discussion of these subjects later.
- Will you have to stop suddenly or change direction quickly?

When you drive over obstacles or rough terrain, keep a firm grip on the steering wheel. Ruts, troughs, or other surface features can jerk the wheel out of your hands if you are not prepared.

When you drive over bumps, rocks, or other obstacles, the wheels can leave the ground. If this happens, even with one or two wheels, you cannot control the vehicle as well or at all.

Because you will be on an unpaved surface, it is especially important to avoid sudden acceleration, sudden turns, or sudden braking.

In a way, off-road driving requires a different kind of alertness from driving on paved roads and highways. There are no road signs, posted speed limits, or signal lights. You have to use your own good judgment about what is safe and what is not.

Drinking and driving can be very dangerous on any road. And this is certainly true for off-road driving. At the very time you need special alertness and driving skills, your reflexes, perceptions, and judgment can be affected by even a small amount of alcohol. You could have a serious — or even fatal — accident if you drink and drive or ride with a driver who has been drinking. See *Drunk Driving* on page 4-4.

## Driving on Off-Road Hills

Off-road driving often takes you up, down, or across a hill. Driving safely on hills requires good judgment and understanding of what your vehicle can and cannot do. There are some hills that simply cannot be driven, no matter how well built the vehicle.

### CAUTION:

**Many hills are simply too steep for any vehicle. If you drive up them, you will stall. If you drive down them, you cannot control your speed. If you drive across them, you will roll over. You could be seriously injured or killed. If you have any doubt about the steepness, do not drive the hill.**

## Approaching a Hill

When you approach a hill, you need to decide if it is one of those hills that is just too steep to climb, descend, or cross. Steepness can be hard to judge. On a very small hill, for example, there may be a smooth, constant incline with only a small change in elevation where you can easily see all the way to the top. On a large hill, the incline may get steeper as you near the top, but you may not see this because the crest of the hill is hidden by bushes, grass, or shrubs.

Here are some other things to consider as you approach a hill.

- Is there a constant incline, or does the hill get sharply steeper in places?
- Is there good traction on the hillside, or will the surface cause tire slipping?
- Is there a straight path up or down the hill so you will not have to make turning maneuvers?
- Are there obstructions on the hill that can block your path, such as boulders, trees, logs, or ruts?
- What is beyond the hill? Is there a cliff, an embankment, a drop-off, a fence? Get out and walk the hill if you do not know. It is the smart way to find out.
- Is the hill simply too rough? Steep hills often have ruts, gullies, troughs, and exposed rocks because they are more susceptible to the effects of erosion.

## Driving Uphill

Once you decide you can safely drive up the hill, you need to take some special steps.

- Use a low gear and get a firm grip on the steering wheel.
- Get a smooth start up the hill and try to maintain speed. Do not use more power than you need, because you do not want the wheels to start spinning or sliding.

### CAUTION:

**Turning or driving across steep hills can be dangerous. You could lose traction, slide sideways, and possibly roll over. You could be seriously injured or killed. When driving up hills, always try to go straight up.**

- Try to drive straight up the hill if at all possible. If the path twists and turns, you might want to find another route.
- Ease up on the speed as you approach the top of the hill.

- Attach a flag to the vehicle to make it more visible to approaching traffic on trails or hills.
- Sound the horn as you approach the top of the hill to let opposing traffic know you are there.
- Use your headlamps even during the day. They make your vehicle more visible to oncoming traffic.

 **CAUTION:**

**Driving to the top (crest) of a hill at full speed can cause an accident. There could be a drop-off, embankment, cliff, or even another vehicle. You could be seriously injured or killed. As you near the top of a hill, slow down and stay alert.**

There are some things you should do if the vehicle stalls, or is about to stall, and you cannot make it up the hill:

- Push the brake pedal to stop the vehicle and keep it from rolling backwards. Also, apply the parking brake.
- If the engine is still running, shift the transmission to REVERSE (R), release the parking brake, and slowly back down the hill in REVERSE (R).
- If the engine has stopped running, you will need to restart it. With the brake pedal pressed and the parking brake still applied, shift the transmission to PARK (P), or shift to NEUTRAL if you have a manual transmission, and restart the engine. Then shift to REVERSE (R), release the parking brake, and slowly back down the hill as straight as possible in REVERSE (R).
- As you are backing down the hill, put your left hand on the steering wheel at the 12 o'clock position. This way you will be able to tell if the wheels are straight and maneuver as you back down. It is best that you back down the hill with the wheels straight rather than in the left or right direction. Turning the wheel too far to the left or right will increase the possibility of a rollover.

There are also some things you must not do if you stall, or are about to stall, when going up a hill:

- Never attempt to prevent a stall by shifting into NEUTRAL (N), or pressing the clutch if you have a manual transmission, to rev-up the engine and regain forward momentum. This will not work. Your vehicle will roll backwards very quickly and you could go out of control.

Instead, apply the regular brake to stop the vehicle. Then apply the parking brake. Shift to REVERSE (R), release the parking brake, and slowly back straight down.

- Never attempt to turn around if you are about to stall when going up a hill. If the hill is steep enough to stall your vehicle, it is steep enough to cause it to roll over if you turn around. If you cannot make it up the hill you must back straight down the hill.

If, after stalling, you try to back down the hill and decide you just cannot do it, set the parking brake, put your transmission in PARK (P), or FIRST (1) if your vehicle has a manual transmission, and turn off the engine. Leave the vehicle and go get some help. Exit on the uphill side and stay clear of the path the vehicle would take if it rolled downhill.

## Driving Downhill

When off-roading takes you downhill, you will want to consider a number of things:

- How steep is the downhill? Will I be able to maintain vehicle control?
- What is the surface like? Smooth? Rough? Slippery? Hard-packed dirt? Gravel?
- Are there hidden surface obstacles? Ruts? Logs? Boulders?
- What is at the bottom of the hill? Is there a hidden creek bank or even a river bottom with large rocks?

If you decide you can go down a hill safely, then try to keep your vehicle headed straight down, and use a low gear. This way, engine drag can help the brakes and they will not have to do all the work. Descend slowly, keeping your vehicle under control at all times.

 **CAUTION:**

**Heavy braking when going down a hill can cause your brakes to overheat and fade. This could cause loss of control and a serious accident. Apply the brakes lightly when descending a hill and use a low gear to keep vehicle speed under control.**

There are some things not to do when driving down a hill. These are important because, if you ignore them, you could lose control and have a serious accident:

- When driving downhill, avoid turns that take you across the incline of the hill. A hill that is not too steep to drive down may be too steep to drive across. Your vehicle could roll over if you do not drive straight down.
- Never go downhill with the transmission in NEUTRAL (N). This is called “free wheeling.” The brakes will have to do all the work and could overheat and fade.

- Unless your vehicle has anti-lock brakes, avoid braking so hard that you lock the wheels when going downhill. If the wheels are locked, you cannot steer your vehicle. If the wheels lock up during downhill braking, you may feel the vehicle starting to slide sideways. To regain your direction, just ease off the brakes and steer to keep the front of the vehicle pointing straight downhill.

Your vehicle is much more likely to stall when going uphill. But if it happens when going downhill:

1. Stop your vehicle by applying the regular brakes. Apply the parking brake.
2. Shift to PARK (P), or NEUTRAL if you have a manual transmission, and, while still braking, restart the engine.
3. Shift back to a low gear, release the parking brake, and drive straight down.
4. If the engine will not start, get out and get help.

## Driving Across an Incline

Sooner or later, an off-road trail will probably go across the incline of a hill. If this happens, you have to decide whether to try to drive across the incline. Here are some things to consider:

### CAUTION:

**Driving across an incline that is too steep will make your vehicle roll over. You could be seriously injured or killed. If you have any doubt about the steepness of the incline, do not drive across it. Find another route instead.**

- A hill that can be driven straight up or down may be too steep to drive across. When you go straight up or down a hill, the length of the wheel base — the distance from the front wheels to the rear wheels — reduces the likelihood the vehicle will tumble end over end. But when you drive across an incline, the much more narrow track width — the distance between the left and right wheels — may not prevent the vehicle from tilting and rolling over. Also, driving across an incline puts more weight on the downhill wheels. This could cause a downhill slide or a rollover.

- Surface conditions can be a problem when you drive across a hill. Loose gravel, muddy spots, or even wet grass can cause your tires to slip sideways, downhill. If the vehicle slips sideways, it can hit something that will trip it — a rock, a rut, etc. — and roll over.
- Hidden obstacles can make the steepness of the incline even worse. If you drive across a rock with the uphill wheels, or if the downhill wheels drop into a rut or depression, your vehicle can tilt even more.

For reasons like these, you need to decide carefully whether to try to drive across an incline. Just because the trail goes across the incline does not mean you have to drive it. The last vehicle to try it might have rolled over.

When driving across an incline that is not too steep, the vehicle can hit some loose gravel and start to slide downhill. If you feel your vehicle starting to slide sideways, turn downhill. This should help straighten out the vehicle and prevent the side slipping. However, a much better way to prevent this is to get out and “walk the course” so you know what the surface is like before you drive it.

## Stalling on an Incline

### CAUTION:

**Getting out on the downhill (low) side of a vehicle stopped across an incline is dangerous. If the vehicle rolls over, you could be crushed or killed. Always get out on the uphill (high) side of the vehicle and stay well clear of the rollover path.**

If your vehicle stalls when you are crossing an incline, be sure you, and any passengers, get out on the uphill side, even if the door there is harder to open. If you get out on the downhill side and the vehicle starts to roll over, you will be right in its path.

If you have to walk down the slope, stay out of the path the vehicle will take if it does roll over.

## Driving in Mud, Sand, Snow, or Ice

When you drive in mud, snow, or sand, the wheels will not get good traction. You cannot accelerate as quickly, turning is more difficult, and you will need longer braking distances.

It is best to use a low gear when you are in mud — the deeper the mud, the lower the gear. In really deep mud, the idea is to keep your vehicle moving so you do not get stuck.

When you drive on sand, you will sense a change in wheel traction. But it will depend upon how loosely packed the sand is. On loosely packed sand, such as on beaches or sand dunes, your tires will tend to sink into the sand. This has an effect on steering, accelerating, and braking. Drive at a reduced speed and avoid sharp turns or abrupt maneuvers.

Hard packed snow and ice offer the worst tire traction. On these surfaces, it is very easy to lose control. On wet ice, for example, the traction is so poor that you will have difficulty accelerating. And, if you do get moving, poor steering and difficult braking can cause you to slide out of control.

 **CAUTION:**

**Driving on frozen lakes, ponds, or rivers can be dangerous. Underwater springs, currents under the ice, or sudden thaws can weaken the ice. Your vehicle could fall through the ice and you and your passengers could drown. Drive your vehicle on safe surfaces only.**

## Driving in Water

 **CAUTION:**

**Driving through rushing water can be dangerous. Deep water can sweep your vehicle downstream and you and your passengers could drown. If it is only shallow water, it can still wash away the ground from under your tires, and you could lose traction and roll the vehicle over. Do not drive through rushing water.**

Heavy rain can mean flash flooding, and flood waters demand extreme caution.

Find out how deep the water is before you drive through it. If it is deep enough to cover the wheel hubs, axles, or exhaust pipe, do not try it — you probably will not get through. Also, water that deep can damage the axle and other vehicle parts.

If the water is not too deep, drive slowly through it. At faster speeds, water splashes on the ignition system and your vehicle can stall. Stalling can also occur if you get the tailpipe under water. And, as long as the tailpipe is under water, you will never be able to start the engine. When you go through water, remember that when the brakes get wet, it may take you longer to stop.

See *Driving in Rain and on Wet Roads* on page 4-28 for more information on driving through water.

## After Off-Road Driving

Remove any brush or debris that has collected on the underbody, chassis, or under the hood. These accumulations can be a fire hazard.

After operation in mud or sand, have the brake linings cleaned and checked. These substances can cause glazing and uneven braking. Check the body structure, steering, suspension, wheels, tires, and exhaust system for damage. Also, check the fuel lines and cooling system for any leakage.

Your vehicle will require more frequent service due to off-road use. Refer to the Maintenance Schedule for additional information.

## Driving at Night

Night driving is more dangerous than day driving because some drivers are likely to be impaired — by alcohol or drugs, with night vision problems, or by fatigue.

Night driving tips include:

- Drive defensively.
- Do not drink and drive.
- Reduce headlamp glare by adjusting the inside rearview mirror.
- Slow down and keep more space between you and other vehicles because headlamps can only light up so much road ahead.
- Watch for animals.
- When tired, pull off the road.
- Do not wear sunglasses.
- Avoid staring directly into approaching headlamps.
- Keep the windshield and all glass on your vehicle clean — inside and out.
- Keep your eyes moving, especially during turns or curves.

No one can see as well at night as in the daytime. But, as we get older, these differences increase. A 50-year-old driver might need at least twice as much light to see the same thing at night as a 20-year-old.

## Driving in Rain and on Wet Roads

Rain and wet roads can reduce vehicle traction and affect your ability to stop and accelerate. Always drive slower in these types of driving conditions and avoid driving through large puddles and deep-standing or flowing water.

### CAUTION:

**Wet brakes can cause crashes. They might not work as well in a quick stop and could cause pulling to one side. You could lose control of the vehicle.**

**After driving through a large puddle of water or a car/vehicle wash, lightly apply the brake pedal until the brakes work normally.**

**CAUTION: (Continued)**

### CAUTION: (Continued)

**Flowing or rushing water creates strong forces. Driving through flowing water could cause your vehicle to be carried away. If this happens, you and other vehicle occupants could drown. Do not ignore police warnings and be very cautious about trying to drive through flowing water.**

## Hydroplaning

Hydroplaning is dangerous. Water can build up under your vehicle's tires so they actually ride on the water. This can happen if the road is wet enough and you are going fast enough. When your vehicle is hydroplaning, it has little or no contact with the road.

There is no hard and fast rule about hydroplaning. The best advice is to slow down when the road is wet.

## Other Rainy Weather Tips

Besides slowing down, other wet weather driving tips include:

- Allow extra following distance.
- Pass with caution.
- Keep windshield wiping equipment in good shape.
- Keep the windshield washer fluid reservoir filled.
- Have good tires with proper tread depth. See *Tires on page 5-51*.

## Before Leaving on a Long Trip

To prepare your vehicle for a long trip, consider having it serviced by your dealer/retailer before departing.

Things to check on your own include:

- *Windshield Washer Fluid*: Reservoir full? Windows clean — inside and outside?
- *Wiper Blades*: In good shape?

- *Fuel, Engine Oil, Other Fluids*: All levels checked?
- *Lamps*: Do they all work and are lenses clean?
- *Tires*: Are treads good? Are tires inflated to recommended pressure?
- *Weather and Maps*: Safe to travel? Have up-to-date maps?

## Highway Hypnosis

Always be alert and pay attention to your surroundings while driving. If you become tired or sleepy, find a safe place to park your vehicle and rest.

Other driving tips include:

- Keep the vehicle well ventilated.
- Keep interior temperature cool.
- Keep your eyes moving — scan the road ahead and to the sides.
- Check the rearview mirror and vehicle instruments often.

## Hill and Mountain Roads

Driving on steep hills or through mountains is different than driving on flat or rolling terrain. Tips for driving in these conditions include:

- Keep your vehicle serviced and in good shape.
- Check all fluid levels and brakes, tires, cooling system, and transmission.
- Going down steep or long hills, shift to a lower gear.

### CAUTION:

**If you do not shift down, the brakes could get so hot that they would not work well. You would then have poor braking or even none going down a hill. You could crash. Shift down to let the engine assist the brakes on a steep downhill slope.**

### CAUTION:

**Coasting downhill in NEUTRAL (N) or with the ignition off is dangerous. The brakes will have to do all the work of slowing down and they could get so hot that they would not work well. You would then have poor braking or even none going down a hill. You could crash. Always have the engine running and your vehicle in gear when you go downhill.**

- Stay in your own lane. Do not swing wide or cut across the center of the road. Drive at speeds that let you stay in your own lane.
- Top of hills: Be alert — something could be in your lane (stalled car, accident).
- Pay attention to special road signs (falling rocks area, winding roads, long grades, passing or no-passing zones) and take appropriate action.

## Winter Driving

Here are some tips for winter driving:

- Have your vehicle in good shape for winter.
- You might want to put winter emergency supplies in your vehicle.

Include an ice scraper, a small brush or broom, a supply of windshield washer fluid, a rag, some winter outer clothing, a small shovel, a flashlight, a red cloth, and reflective warning triangles. And, if you will be driving under severe conditions, include a small bag of sand, a piece of old carpet, or a couple of burlap bags to help provide traction. Be sure you properly secure these items in your vehicle.

Also see *Tires* on page 5-51.

### Driving on Snow or Ice

Most of the time, those places where the tires meet the road probably have good traction.

However, if there is snow or ice between the tires and the road, you can have a very slippery situation. You have a lot less traction, or grip, and need to be very careful.



What is the worst time for this? Wet ice. Very cold snow or ice can be slick and hard to drive on. But wet ice can be even more trouble because it can offer the least traction of all. You can get wet ice when it is about freezing, 32°F (0°C), and freezing rain begins to fall. Try to avoid driving on wet ice until salt and sand crews can get there.

Whatever the condition — smooth ice, packed, blowing, or loose snow — drive with caution.

Accelerate gently. Try not to break the fragile traction. If you accelerate too fast, the drive wheels will spin and polish the surface under the tires even more.

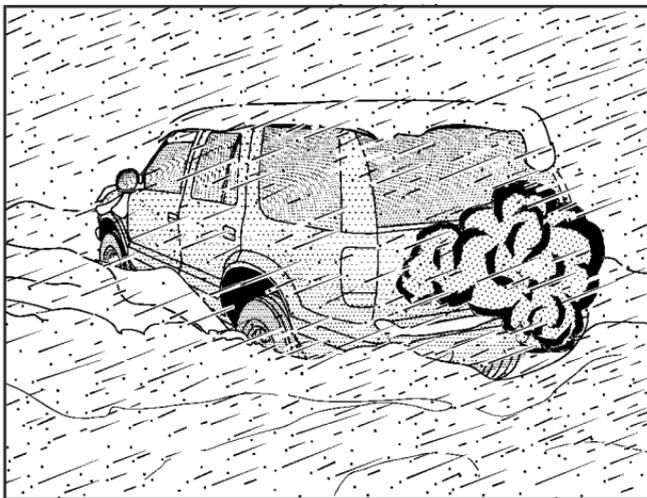
The Antilock Brake System (ABS) improves your vehicle's stability when you make a hard stop on a slippery road. Even though you have ABS, begin stopping sooner than you would on dry pavement. See *Antilock Brake System (ABS)* on page 4-6.

- Allow greater following distance on any slippery road.
- Watch for slippery spots. The road might be fine until you hit a spot that is covered with ice. On an otherwise clear road, ice patches can appear in shaded areas where the sun cannot reach, such as around clumps of trees, behind buildings, or under bridges. Sometimes the surface of a curve or an overpass can remain icy when the surrounding roads are clear. If you see a patch of ice ahead of you, brake before you are on it. Try not to brake while you are actually on the ice, and avoid sudden steering maneuvers.

## If You Are Caught in a Blizzard

If you are stopped by heavy snow, you could be in a serious situation. You should probably stay with your vehicle unless you know for sure that you are near help and you can hike through the snow. Here are some things to do to summon help and keep yourself and your passengers safe:

- Turn on the hazard warning flashers.
- Tie a red cloth to your vehicle to alert police that you have been stopped by the snow.
- Put on extra clothing or wrap a blanket around you. If you do not have blankets or extra clothing, make body insulators from newspapers, burlap bags, rags, floor mats — anything you can wrap around yourself or tuck under your clothing to keep warm.



You can run the engine to keep warm, but be careful.

### **⚠ CAUTION:**

**Snow can trap exhaust gases under your vehicle. This can cause deadly CO (carbon monoxide) gas to get inside. CO could overcome you and kill you. You cannot see it or smell it, so you might not know it is in your vehicle. Clear away snow from around the base of your vehicle, especially any that is blocking the exhaust pipe. And check around again from time to time to be sure snow does not collect there.**

**Open a window just a little on the side of the vehicle that is away from the wind. This will help keep CO out.**

Run your engine only as long as you must. This saves fuel. When you run the engine, make it go a little faster than just idle. That is, push the accelerator slightly. This uses less fuel for the heat that you get and it keeps the battery charged. You will need a well-charged battery to restart the vehicle, and possibly for signaling later on with the headlamps. Let the heater run for a while.

Then, shut the engine off and close the window almost all the way to preserve the heat. Start the engine again and repeat this only when you feel really uncomfortable from the cold. But do it as little as possible. Preserve the fuel as long as you can. To help keep warm, you can get out of the vehicle and do some fairly vigorous exercises every half hour or so until help comes.

## If Your Vehicle is Stuck in Sand, Mud, Ice, or Snow

Slowly and cautiously spin the wheels to free your vehicle when stuck in sand, mud, ice, or snow. See *Rocking Your Vehicle to Get It Out on page 4-35*.

If your vehicle has a traction system, it can often help to free a stuck vehicle. Refer to your vehicle's traction system in the Index. If the stuck condition is too severe for the traction system to free the vehicle, turn the traction system off and use the rocking method.

### CAUTION:

**If you let your vehicle's tires spin at high speed, they can explode, and you or others could be injured. The vehicle can overheat, causing an engine compartment fire or other damage. Spin the wheels as little as possible and avoid going above 35 mph (55 km/h) as shown on the speedometer.**

For information about using tire chains on your vehicle, see *Tire Chains on page 5-74*.

## Rocking Your Vehicle to Get It Out

First, turn the steering wheel left and right to clear the area around the front wheels. Turn off any traction or stability system. See *Traction Control System (TCS)* on page 4-7 and *Electronic Stability Program* on page 4-8. Then shift back and forth between REVERSE (R) and a forward gear, or with a manual transmission, between FIRST (1) or SECOND (2) and REVERSE (R), spinning the wheels as little as possible. To prevent transmission wear, wait until the wheels stop spinning before shifting gears. Release the accelerator pedal while you shift, and press lightly on the accelerator pedal when the transmission is in gear. By slowly spinning the wheels in the forward and reverse directions, you will cause a rocking motion that could free your vehicle. If that does not get your vehicle out after a few tries, it might need to be towed out. If your vehicle does need to be towed out, see *Towing Your Vehicle* on page 4-41.

## Loading Your Vehicle

It is very important to know how much weight your vehicle can carry. This weight is called the vehicle capacity weight and includes the weight of all occupants, cargo, and all nonfactory-installed options. Two labels on your vehicle show how much weight it may properly carry, the Tire and Loading Information label and the Certification/Tire label.

### CAUTION:

**Do not load the vehicle any heavier than the Gross Vehicle Weight Rating (GVWR), or either the maximum front or rear Gross Axle Weight Rating (GAWR). If you do, parts on the vehicle can break, and it can change the way your vehicle handles. These could cause you to lose control and crash. Also, overloading can shorten the life of the vehicle.**

## Tire and Loading Information Label

The diagram shows a rectangular label with a tire icon on the left. Callout A points to the tire icon. Callout B points to the title 'TIRE AND LOADING INFORMATION'. Callout C points to the 'ORIGINAL SIZE' column in the table below. Callout D points to the 'COLD TIRE PRESSURE' column in the table below.

TIRE AND LOADING INFORMATION			
SEATING CAPACITY	TOTAL	FRONT	REAR
The combined weight of occupants and cargo should never exceed XXX kg or XXX lbs.			
TIRE	ORIGINAL SIZE	COLD TIRE PRESSURE	SEE OWNER'S MANUAL FOR ADDITIONAL INFORMATION
FRONT			
REAR			
SPARE			

**Example Label**

A vehicle specific Tire and Loading Information label is attached to the center pillar (B-pillar). With the driver's door open, you will find the label attached below the door lock post (striker). The tire and loading information label shows the number of occupant seating positions (A), and the maximum vehicle capacity weight (B) in kilograms and pounds.

The Tire and Loading Information label also shows the size of the original equipment tires (C) and the recommended cold tire inflation pressures (D). For more information on tires and inflation see *Tires* on page 5-51 and *Inflation - Tire Pressure* on page 5-58.

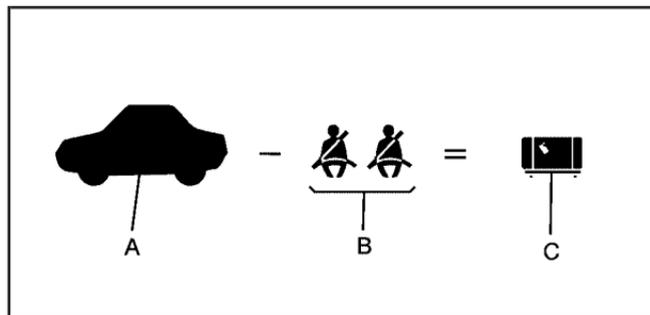
There is also important loading information on the vehicle Certification/Tire label. It tells you the Gross Vehicle Weight Rating (GVWR) and the Gross Axle Weight Rating (GAWR) for the front and rear axle. See "Certification/Tire Label" later in this section.

### Steps for Determining Correct Load Limit

1. Locate the statement "The combined weight of occupants and cargo should never exceed XXX lbs" on your vehicle's placard.
2. Determine the combined weight of the driver and passengers that will be riding in your vehicle.
3. Subtract the combined weight of the driver and passengers from XXX kg or XXX lbs.

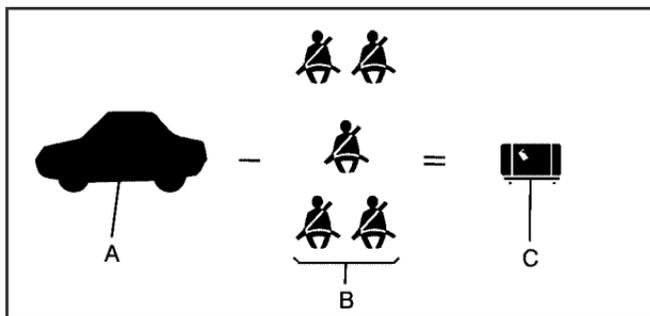
4. The resulting figure equals the available amount of cargo and luggage load capacity. For example, if the “XXX” amount equals 1,400 lbs and there will be five 150 lb passengers in your vehicle, the amount of available cargo and luggage load capacity is 650 lbs (1,400 – 750 (5 x 150) = 650 lbs).
5. Determine the combined weight of luggage and cargo being loaded on the vehicle. That weight may not safely exceed the available cargo and luggage load capacity calculated in Step 4.
6. If your vehicle will be towing a trailer, the load from your trailer will be transferred to your vehicle. Consult this manual to determine how this reduces the available cargo and luggage load capacity of your vehicle.

See *Towing a Trailer on page 4-44* for important information on towing a trailer, towing safety rules and trailering tips.

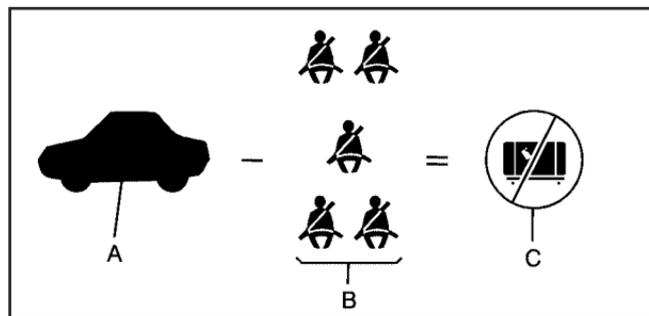


**Example 1**

Item	Description	Total
A	Vehicle Capacity Weight for Example 1 =	1,000 lbs (453 kg)
B	Subtract Occupant Weight 150 lbs (68 kg) × 2 =	300 lbs (136 kg)
C	Available Occupant and Cargo Weight =	700 lbs (317 kg)



Example 2



Example 3

Item	Description	Total
A	Vehicle Capacity Weight for Example 2 =	1,000 lbs (453 kg)
B	Subtract Occupant Weight 150 lbs (68 kg) × 5 =	750 lbs (340 kg)
C	Available Occupant and Cargo Weight =	250 lbs (113 kg)

Item	Description	Total
A	Vehicle Capacity Weight for Example 3 =	1,000 lbs (453 kg)
B	Subtract Occupant Weight 200 lbs (91 kg) × 5 =	1,000 lbs (453 kg)
C	Available Occupant and Cargo Weight =	0 lbs (0 kg)

Refer to your vehicle's tire and loading information label for specific information about your vehicle's capacity weight and seating positions.

The combined weight of the driver, passengers and cargo should never exceed your vehicle's maximum vehicle capacity weight.

### Certification/Tire Label

The diagram shows a rectangular label with the following fields and labels:

- Top row: Three boxes labeled **GVWR**, **GAWR FRT**, and **GAWR RR**.
- Second row: A large empty rectangular box.
- Third row: A box labeled **MODEL:**, followed by boxes labeled **PA** and **QAE**.
- Fourth row: A box labeled **TIRE SPEED**, followed by a box labeled **RIM**, and a box labeled **COLD TIRE PRESSURE**.
- Fifth row: Three boxes corresponding to the labels in the fourth row.
- Sixth row: Three boxes corresponding to the labels in the fourth row.
- Bottom row: A box labeled **SEE OWNER'S MANUAL FOR ADDITIONAL INFORMATION**.

A vehicle specific Certification/Tire label is attached to the lower area of the center pillar (B-pillar). The label shows the gross weight

capacity of your vehicle. This is called the Gross Vehicle Weight Rating (GVWR). The GVWR includes the weight of the vehicle, all occupants, fuel, cargo, and trailer tongue weight, if your vehicle is pulling a trailer.

The Certification/Tire label also tells you the maximum weights for the front and rear axles, called Gross Axle Weight Rating (GAWR). To find out the actual loads on your front and rear axles, you need to go to a weigh station and weigh your vehicle. Your dealer/retailer can help you with this. Be sure to spread out your load equally on both sides of the centerline.

Never exceed the GVWR for your vehicle, or the GAWR for either the front or rear axle.

Similar looking vehicles may have different GVWRs and payloads. Please consult your vehicle's Certification/Tire label or your retailer for additional details.

 **CAUTION:**

**Do not load the vehicle any heavier than the Gross Vehicle Weight Rating (GVWR), or either the maximum front or rear Gross Axle Weight Rating (GAWR). If you do, parts on the vehicle can break, and it can change the way your vehicle handles. These could cause you to lose control and crash. Also, overloading can shorten the life of the vehicle.**

Using heavier suspension components to get added durability might not change your vehicle's weight ratings. Ask your dealer/retailer to help you load your vehicle correctly if you are using these components.

**Notice:** Overloading your vehicle may cause damage. Repairs would not be covered by your warranty. Do not overload your vehicle.

If you put things inside your vehicle — like suitcases, tools, packages, or anything else — they will go as fast as the vehicle goes. If you have to stop or turn quickly, or if there is a crash, they will keep going.

 **CAUTION:**

**Things you put inside your vehicle can strike and injure people in a sudden stop or turn, or in a crash.**

- **Put things in the cargo area of your vehicle. Try to spread the weight evenly.**
- **Never stack heavier things, like suitcases, inside the vehicle so that some of them are above the tops of the seats.**
- **Do not leave an unsecured child restraint in your vehicle.**
- **When you carry something inside the vehicle, secure it whenever you can.**
- **Do not leave a seat folded down unless you need to.**

# Towing

## Towing Your Vehicle

To avoid vehicle damage, a platform or flatbed trailer should be used to transport this vehicle. Consult your dealer/retailer or a professional towing service if you need to have your disabled vehicle towed. See *Roadside Assistance Program on page 7-7*.

If you want to tow your vehicle behind another vehicle for recreational purposes (such as behind a motorhome), see “Recreational Vehicle Towing” following.

## Recreational Vehicle Towing

Recreational vehicle towing means towing your vehicle behind another vehicle – such as behind a motorhome. The two most common types of recreational vehicle towing are known as “dinghy towing” (towing your vehicle with all four wheels on the ground) and “dolly towing” (towing your vehicle with two wheels on the ground and two wheels up on a device known as a “dolly”).

With the proper preparation and equipment, many vehicles can be towed in these ways. See “Dinghy Towing” and “Dolly Towing” following in this section.

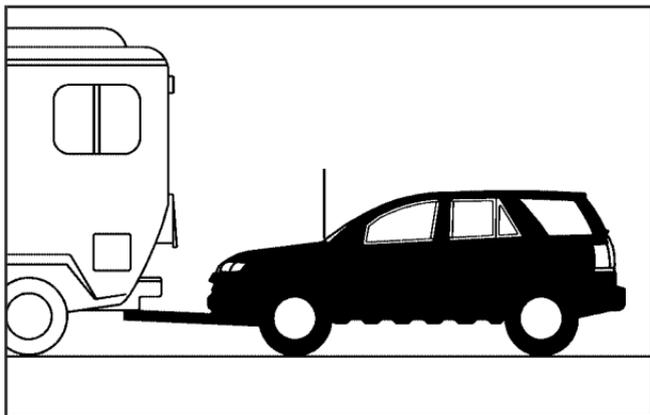
Here are some important things to consider before you do recreational vehicle towing:

- What’s the towing capacity of the towing vehicle? Be sure you read the tow vehicle manufacturer’s recommendations.
- How far will you tow? Some vehicles have restrictions on how far and how long they can tow.
- Do you have the proper towing equipment? See your dealer/retailer or trailering professional for additional advice and equipment recommendations.
- Is your vehicle ready to be towed? Just as you would prepare your vehicle for a long trip, you’ll want to make sure your vehicle is prepared to be towed. See *Before Leaving on a Long Trip on page 4-29*.

## Dinghy Towing

Front-wheel-drive and all-wheel-drive vehicles may be dinghy towed from the front. You can also tow these vehicles by placing them on a platform trailer with all four wheels off of the ground. For other towing options, see “Dolly Towing” following in this section.

For vehicles being dinghy towed, the vehicle should be run at the beginning of each day and at each RV fuel stop for about five minutes. This will ensure proper lubrication of transmission components.



To tow your vehicle from the front with all four wheels on the ground:

1. Position and attach the vehicle to tow it behind the recreational vehicle.
2. Turn the ignition key to ACC/ACCESSORY.
3. Shift the transmission to NEUTRAL (N).
4. Turn fog lamps and all accessories off.
5. Remove the IGN SW fuse from the Instrument Panel Fuse Block. See *Instrument Panel Fuse Block on page 5-97*.

**Notice:** If you tow your vehicle without performing each of the steps listed under “Dinghy Towing,” you could damage the automatic transmission. Be sure to follow all steps of the dinghy towing procedure prior to and after towing your vehicle.

**Notice:** If your vehicle has a four-speed automatic transmission, it can be dinghy towed from the front for unlimited miles at 65 mph (105 km/h). If you exceed 65 mph (105 km/h) while towing your vehicle, it could be damaged. The repairs would not be covered by your warranty. Never exceed 65 mph (105 km/h) while towing your vehicle.

Once you have reached your destination:

1. Set the parking brake.
2. Shift the transmission to PARK (P).

3. Reinstall the IGN SW fuse into the Instrument Panel Fuse Block.
4. Turn the ignition key to LOCK/OFF and remove the key from the ignition.

**Notice:** Too much or too little fluid can damage the transmission. Be sure that the transmission fluid is at the proper level before towing with all four wheels on the ground.

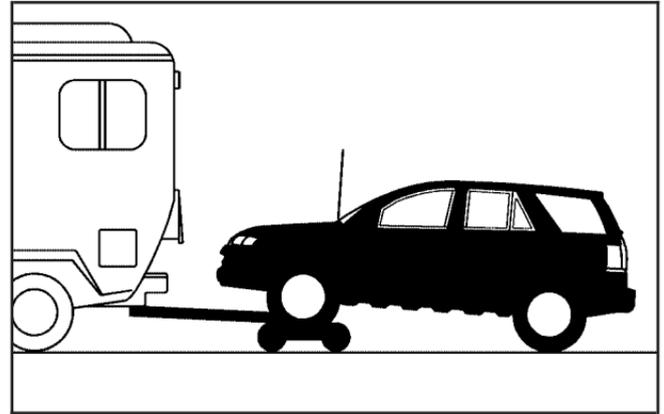
**Notice:** Don't tow a vehicle with the front drive wheels on the ground if one of the front tires is a compact spare tire. Towing with two different tire sizes on the front of the vehicle can cause severe damage to the transmission.

## Dolly Towing (All-Wheel-Drive Vehicles)

All-wheel-drive vehicles should not be towed with two wheels on the ground. To properly tow these vehicles, they should be placed on a platform trailer with all four wheels off of the ground or dinghy towed from the front.

## Dolly Towing (Front-Wheel-Drive Vehicles)

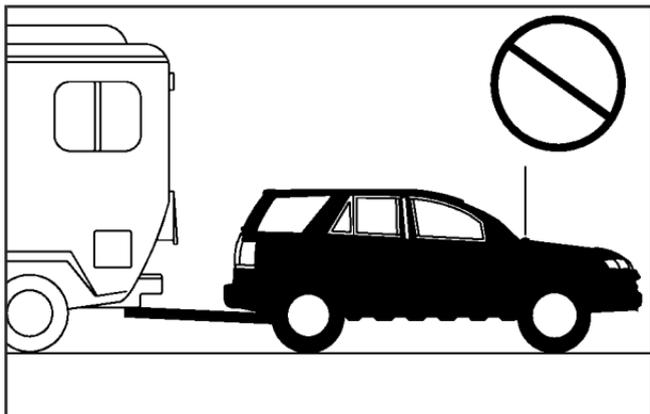
Front-wheel-drive VUE Red Line vehicles should not be towed with two wheels on the ground. To properly tow these vehicles, they should be placed on a platform trailer with all four wheels off of the ground or dinghy towed from the front.



To tow your front-wheel-drive vehicle from the front with two wheels on the ground, do the following:

1. Put the front wheels on a dolly.
2. Move the shift lever to PARK (P).
3. Set the parking brake and then remove the key.
4. Clamp the steering wheel in a straight-ahead position with a clamping device designed for towing.
5. Secure the vehicle to the dolly.
6. Release the parking brake.

## Towing Your Vehicle From the Rear



**Notice:** Towing your vehicle from the rear could damage it. Also, repairs would not be covered by the warranty. Never have your vehicle towed from the rear.

Do not tow your vehicle from the rear.

## Towing a Trailer

### CAUTION:

If you do not use the correct equipment and drive properly, you can lose control when you pull a trailer. For example, if the trailer is too heavy, the brakes may not work well — or even at all. You and your passengers could be seriously injured. You may also damage your vehicle; the resulting repairs would not be covered by your warranty. Pull a trailer only if you have followed all the steps in this section. Ask your dealer/retailer for advice and information about towing a trailer with your vehicle.

**Notice:** Pulling a trailer improperly can damage your vehicle and result in costly repairs not covered by your warranty. To pull a trailer correctly, follow the advice in this part and see your dealer/retailer for important information about towing a trailer with your vehicle.

Your vehicle can tow a trailer if it is equipped with the proper trailer towing equipment. To identify the trailering capacity of your vehicle, you should read the information in “Weight of the Trailer” that appears later in this section. Trailering is different than just driving your vehicle by itself. Trailering means changes in handling, acceleration, braking, durability and fuel economy. Successful, safe trailering takes correct equipment, and it has to be used properly.

That is the reason for this part. In it are many time-tested, important trailering tips and safety rules. Many of these are important for your safety and that of your passengers. So please read this section carefully before you pull a trailer.

Load-pulling components such as the engine, transmission, rear axle, wheel assemblies and tires are forced to work harder against the drag of the added weight. The engine is required to operate at relatively higher speeds and under greater loads, generating extra heat. What’s more, the trailer adds considerably to wind resistance, increasing the pulling requirements.

## **If You Do Decide to Pull a Trailer**

If you do, here are some important points:

- There are many different laws, including speed limit restrictions, having to do with trailering. Make sure your rig will be legal, not only where you live but also where you will be driving. A good source for this information can be state or provincial police.

- Do not tow a trailer at all during the first 500 miles (805 km) your new vehicle is driven. Your engine, axle or other parts could be damaged. The repairs would not be covered by your warranty.
- Then, during the first 500 miles (805 km) that you tow a trailer, do not drive over 50 mph (80 km/h) and do not make starts at full throttle. This helps your engine and other parts of your vehicle wear in at the heavier loads.
- You may want to shift to a lower gear selection if the transmission shifts too often (e.g., under heavy loads and/or hilly conditions). Using a lower gear will minimize heat buildup and extend the life of your transmission.
- Obey speed limit restrictions when towing a trailer. Do not drive faster than the maximum posted speed for trailers, or no more than 55 mph (90 km/h), to save wear on your vehicle’s parts.
- Do not tow a trailer when the outside temperature is above 100°F (38°C).

Three important considerations have to do with weight:

- the weight of the trailer
- the weight of the trailer tongue
- and the total weight on your vehicle’s tires

## Weight of the Trailer

How heavy can a trailer safely be?

It depends on how you plan to use your rig. For example, speed, altitude, road grades, outside temperature and how much your vehicle is used to pull a trailer are all important. It can also depend on any special equipment that you have on your vehicle, and the amount of tongue weight the vehicle can carry. See “Weight of the Trailer Tongue” later in this section for more information.

Maximum trailer weight is calculated assuming only the driver is in the tow vehicle and it has all the required trailering equipment. The weight of additional optional equipment, passengers and cargo must be subtracted from the maximum trailer weight.

Look in the following chart to find the maximum trailer weight for your vehicle.

Vehicle	Axle Ratio	Max. Trailer Wt.	*GCWR
2WD (2.4L L4 Engine)	3.91	1,500 lbs (680 kg)	5,375 lbs (2 438 kg)
2WD (3.6L V6 Engine)	2.77	3,500 lbs (1 588 kg)	7,800 lbs (3 538 kg)
AWD (3.5L V6 Engine)	2.77	3,500 lbs (1 588 kg)	8,000 lbs (3 629 kg)
AWD (3.6L V6 Engine)**	2.77	3,500 lbs (1 588 kg)	8,000 lbs (3 629 kg)

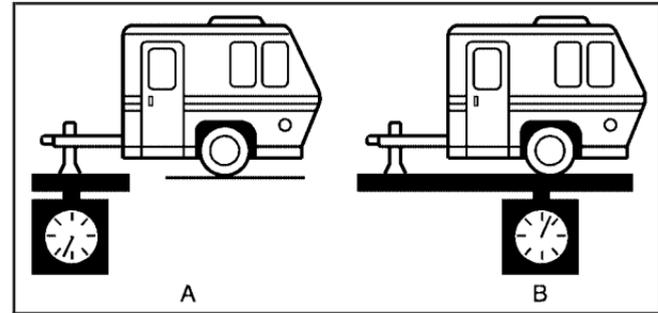
\*The Gross Combination Weight Rating (GCWR) is the total allowable weight of the completely loaded vehicle and trailer including any passengers, cargo, equipment and conversion. The GCWR for your vehicle should not be exceeded.

\*\*The VUE Red Line should not be used to tow a trailer.

You can ask your dealer/retailer for trailering information or advice.

## Weight of the Trailer Tongue

The tongue load (A) of any trailer is an important weight to measure because it affects the total or gross weight of your vehicle. The Gross Vehicle Weight (GVW) includes the curb weight of the vehicle, any cargo you may carry in it, and the people who will be riding in the vehicle. If you have a lot of options, equipment, passengers or cargo in your vehicle, it will reduce the tongue weight your vehicle can carry, which will also reduce the trailer weight your vehicle can tow. And if you tow a trailer, you must add the tongue load to the GVW because your vehicle will be carrying that weight, too. See *Loading Your Vehicle on page 4-35* for more information about your vehicle's maximum load capacity.



If you are using a weight-carrying hitch, the trailer tongue (A) should weigh 10 percent of the total loaded trailer weight (B). If you are using a weight-distributing hitch, the trailer tongue (A) should weigh 12 percent of the total loaded trailer weight (B).

After you have loaded your trailer, weigh the trailer and then the tongue, separately, to see if the weights are proper. If they are not, you may be able to get them right simply by moving some items around in the trailer.

Trailering may be limited by the vehicle's ability to carry tongue weight. Tongue weight cannot cause the vehicle to exceed the GVWR (Gross Vehicle Weight Rating) or the RGAWR (Rear Gross Axle Weight Rating). The effect of additional weight may reduce your trailering capacity more than the total of the additional weight.

Consider the following example:

A vehicle model base weight is 5,500 lbs (2 495 kg); 2,800 lbs (1 270 kg) at the front axle and 2,700 lbs (1 225 kg) at the rear axle. It has a GVWR of 7,200 lbs (3 266 kg), a RGAWR of 4,000 lbs (1 814 kg) and a GCWR (Gross Combination Weight Rating) of 14,000 lbs (6 350 kg). The trailer rating should be:

14,000 lbs (6350 kg)	GCWR
<u>-5,500 lbs (2495 kg)</u>	Vehicle Weight
8,500 lbs (3855 kg)	Trailer Rating

You can expect tongue weight to be at least 10 percent of trailer weight (850 lbs (386 kg)) and because the weight is applied well behind the rear axle, the effect on the rear axle will be greater than just the weight itself, as much as 1.5 times as much. The weight at the rear axle could be 850 lbs (386 kg) X 1.5 = 1,275 lbs (578 kg). Since the rear axle already weighs 2,700 lbs (1 225 kg), adding 1,275 lbs (578 kg) brings the total to 3,975 lbs (1 803 kg). This is very close to, but within the limit for RGAWR as well. The vehicle is set to trailer up to 8,500 lbs (3 856 kg).

But let us say your specific vehicle is equipped with some of the latest options and you have a front seat passenger and two rear seat passengers with some luggage and gear in the vehicle as well. You may add 300 lbs (136 kg) to the front axle weight and 400 lbs (181 kg) to the rear axle weight. Your vehicle now weighs:

2,800 lbs (1270 kg)	+	300 lbs (136 kg)	Front
<u>2,700 lbs (1225 kg)</u>	+	<u>400 lbs (181 kg)</u>	Rear
6,200 lbs (2812 kg)			Total

Weight is still below 7,200 lbs (3 266 kg) and you may think that you should subtract 700 additional pounds (318 kg) from your trailering capacity to stay within GCWR limits. Your maximum trailer would only be 7,800 lbs (3 538 kg). You may go further and think you must limit tongue weight to less than 1,000 lbs (454 kg) to avoid exceeding GVWR. But, you must still consider the effect on the rear axle. Because your rear axle now weighs 3,100 lbs (1 406 kg), you can only put 900 lbs (408 kg) on the rear axle without exceeding RGAWR.

The effect of tongue weight is about 1.5 times the actual weight. Dividing the 900 lbs (408 kg) by 1.5 leaves you with being able to handle only 600 lbs (272 kg) of tongue weight. Since tongue weight is usually at least 10 percent of total loaded trailer weight, you can expect that the largest trailer your vehicle can properly handle is 6,000 lbs (2 721 kg).

It is important that you make sure your vehicle does not exceed any of its ratings — GCWR, GVWR, RGAWR, Maximum Trailer Rating or Tongue Weight. The only way to be sure you are not exceeding any of these ratings is to weigh your vehicle and trailer.

## **Total Weight on Your Vehicle's Tires**

Be sure your vehicle's tires are inflated to the upper limit for cold tires. You will find these numbers on the Tire and Loading Information label. See *Loading Your Vehicle on page 4-35*. Then be sure you do not go over the GVW limit for your vehicle or the Gross Axle Weight Rating (GAWR), including the weight of the trailer tongue.

## **Hitches**

It is important to have the correct hitch equipment. Crosswinds, large trucks going by and rough roads are a few reasons why you will need the right hitch. Here are some rules to follow:

- The rear bumper on your vehicle is not intended for hitches. Do not attach rental hitches or other bumper-type hitches to it. Use only a frame-mounted hitch that does not attach to the bumper.
- Will you have to make any holes in the body of your vehicle when you install a trailer hitch? If you do, then be sure to seal the holes later when you remove the hitch. If you do not seal them, deadly carbon monoxide (CO) from your exhaust can get into your vehicle. See *Engine Exhaust on page 2-32*. Dirt and water can, too.

## Safety Chains

You should always attach chains between your vehicle and your trailer. Cross the safety chains under the tongue of the trailer so that the tongue will not drop to the road if it becomes separated from the hitch. Instructions about safety chains may be provided by the hitch manufacturer or by the trailer manufacturer. Follow the manufacturer's recommendation for attaching safety chains and do not attach them to the bumper. Always leave just enough slack so you can turn with your rig and never allow safety chains to drag on the ground.

## Trailer Brakes

Since your vehicle is equipped with StabiliTrak<sup>®</sup>, your trailer brakes cannot tap into your vehicle's hydraulic brake system.

Be sure to read and follow the instructions for the trailer brakes, so you will be able to install, adjust and maintain them properly.

## Driving with a Trailer

Towing a trailer requires a certain amount of experience. Before setting out for the open road, you will want to get to know your rig. Acquaint yourself with the feel of handling and braking with the added weight of the trailer. And always keep in mind that the vehicle you are driving is now a good deal longer and not nearly as responsive as your vehicle is by itself.

Before you start, check all trailer hitch parts and attachments, safety chains, electrical connector, lamps, tires and mirror adjustment. If the trailer has electric brakes, start your vehicle and trailer moving and then apply the trailer brake controller by hand to be sure the brakes are working. This lets you check your electrical connection at the same time.

During your trip, check occasionally to be sure that the load is secure, and that the lamps and any trailer brakes are still working.

## Following Distance

Stay at least twice as far behind the vehicle ahead as you would when driving your vehicle without a trailer. This can help you avoid situations that require heavy braking and sudden turns.

## Passing

You will need more passing distance up ahead when you are towing a trailer. And, because you are a good deal longer when towing a trailer, you will need to go much farther beyond the passed vehicle before you can return to your lane.

## Backing Up

Hold the bottom of the steering wheel with one hand. Then, to move the trailer to the left, just move that hand to the left. To move the trailer to the right, move your hand to the right. Always back up slowly and, if possible, have someone guide you.

## Making Turns

**Notice:** Making very sharp turns while trailering could cause the trailer to come in contact with the vehicle. Your vehicle could be damaged. Avoid making very sharp turns while trailering.

When you are turning with a trailer, make wider turns than normal. Do this so your trailer will not strike soft shoulders, curbs, road signs, trees or other objects. Avoid jerky or sudden maneuvers. Signal well in advance.

## Turn Signals When Towing a Trailer

When you tow a trailer, your vehicle may need a different turn signal flasher and/or extra wiring. See your dealer/retailer if you need information. The arrows on your instrument panel will flash whenever you signal a turn or lane change. Properly hooked up, the trailer lamps will also flash, telling other drivers you are about to turn, change lanes or stop.

When towing a trailer, the arrows on your instrument panel will flash for turns even if the bulbs on the trailer are burned out. Thus, you may think drivers behind you are seeing your signal when they are not. It is important to check occasionally to be sure the trailer bulbs are still working.

## Driving on Grades

**Notice:** Do not tow on steep continuous grades exceeding 6 miles (9.6 km). Extended, higher than normal engine and transmission temperatures may result and damage your vehicle. Frequent stops are very important to allow the engine and transmission to cool.

Reduce speed and shift to a lower gear before you start down a long or steep downgrade. If you do not shift down, you might have to use your brakes so much that they would get hot and no longer work well.

On a long uphill grade, shift down and reduce your speed to around 45 mph (70 km/h) to reduce the possibility of the engine and the transmission overheating. If your engine does overheat, see *Engine Overheating on page 5-25*.

## Parking on Hills

### CAUTION:

**You really should not park your vehicle, with a trailer attached, on a hill. If something goes wrong, your rig could start to move. People can be injured, and both your vehicle and the trailer can be damaged.**

But if you ever have to park your rig on a hill, here's how to do it:

1. Apply your regular brakes, but do not shift into PARK (P).  
When parking uphill, turn your wheels away from the curb. When parking downhill, turn your wheels into the curb.
2. Have someone place chocks behind the trailer wheels.
3. When the chocks are in place, release the regular brakes until the chocks absorb the load.
4. Reapply the regular brakes. Then apply your parking brake and shift into PARK (P).
5. Release the regular brakes.

## When You Are Ready to Leave After Parking on a Hill

1. Apply your regular brakes and hold the pedal down while you:
  - start your engine,
  - shift into a gear, and
  - release the parking brake.
2. Let up on the brake pedal.
3. Drive slowly until the trailer is clear of the chocks.
4. Stop and have someone pick up and store the chocks.

## Maintenance When Trailer Towing

Your vehicle will need service more often when you are pulling a trailer. See *Scheduled Maintenance on page 6-3* for more information. Things that are especially important in trailer operation are automatic transmission fluid (do not overfill), engine oil, axle lubricant, drive belt, cooling system and brake system. Each of these is covered in this manual, and the Index will help you find them quickly. If you are trailering, it is a good idea to review this information before you start your trip.

Check periodically to see that all hitch nuts and bolts are tight.

## Trailer Wiring

If the vehicle has a trailer hitch, a four wire harness with connector is attached to a bracket on the hitch platform.

The connector contains the following trailer circuits:

- Brown: Park Lamp
- Dark Green: Right Stop/Turn Signal
- Yellow: Left Stop/Turn Signal
- White: Ground

## Engine Cooling When Trailer Towing

Your cooling system may temporarily overheat during severe operating conditions. See *Engine Overheating on page 5-25*.

## Changing a Tire When Trailer Towing

If you get a flat tire while towing a trailer, be sure to secure the trailer and disconnect it from the vehicle before changing the tire.



## Section 5 Service and Appearance Care

---

<b>Service</b> .....	5-3	Power Steering Fluid .....	5-31
Accessories and Modifications .....	5-3	Windshield Washer Fluid .....	5-32
California Proposition 65 Warning .....	5-4	Brakes .....	5-33
California Perchlorate Materials Requirements .....	5-4	Battery .....	5-36
Doing Your Own Service Work .....	5-4	Jump Starting .....	5-37
Adding Equipment to the Outside of Your Vehicle .....	5-5	<b>All-Wheel Drive</b> .....	5-41
<b>Fuel</b> .....	5-5	<b>Headlamp Aiming</b> .....	5-43
Gasoline Octane .....	5-6	<b>Bulb Replacement</b> .....	5-46
Gasoline Specifications .....	5-6	Halogen Bulbs .....	5-46
California Fuel .....	5-6	Headlamps .....	5-46
Additives .....	5-7	Front Turn Signal and Parking Lamps .....	5-47
Fuels in Foreign Countries .....	5-7	Taillamps, Turn Signal, Stoplamps and Back-up Lamps .....	5-48
Filling the Tank .....	5-8	License Plate Lamp .....	5-49
Filling a Portable Fuel Container .....	5-10	Replacement Bulbs .....	5-49
<b>Checking Things Under the Hood</b> .....	5-10	<b>Windshield Wiper Blade Replacement</b> .....	5-50
Hood Release .....	5-11	<b>Tires</b> .....	5-51
Engine Compartment Overview .....	5-12	Tire Sidewall Labeling .....	5-52
Engine Oil .....	5-15	Tire Terminology and Definitions .....	5-55
Engine Oil Life System .....	5-18	Inflation - Tire Pressure .....	5-58
Engine Air Cleaner/Filter .....	5-20	High-Speed Operation .....	5-59
Automatic Transmission Fluid .....	5-22	Tire Pressure Monitor System .....	5-60
Engine Coolant .....	5-22	Tire Pressure Monitor Operation .....	5-62
Coolant Surge Tank Pressure Cap .....	5-25	Tire Inspection and Rotation .....	5-65
Engine Overheating .....	5-25	When It Is Time for New Tires .....	5-67
Cooling System .....	5-27		

## Section 5 Service and Appearance Care

---

Buying New Tires .....	5-68	Cleaning Exterior Lamps/Lenses .....	5-90
Different Size Tires and Wheels .....	5-70	Finish Care .....	5-90
Uniform Tire Quality Grading .....	5-70	Windshield and Wiper Blades .....	5-91
Wheel Alignment and Tire Balance .....	5-72	Aluminum Wheels .....	5-92
Wheel Replacement .....	5-73	Tires .....	5-92
Tire Chains .....	5-74	Sheet Metal Damage .....	5-93
If a Tire Goes Flat .....	5-75	Finish Damage .....	5-93
Changing a Flat Tire .....	5-76	Underbody Maintenance .....	5-93
Removing the Spare Tire and Tools .....	5-77	Chemical Paint Spotting .....	5-93
Removing the Flat Tire and Installing the Spare Tire .....	5-79	Vehicle Care/Appearance Materials .....	5-94
Storing a Flat or Spare Tire and Tools .....	5-85	<b>Vehicle Identification</b> .....	5-95
Compact Spare Tire .....	5-86	Vehicle Identification Number (VIN) .....	5-95
<b>Appearance Care</b> .....	5-87	Service Parts Identification Label .....	5-95
Interior Cleaning .....	5-87	<b>Electrical System</b> .....	5-96
Fabric/Carpet .....	5-88	Add-On Electrical Equipment .....	5-96
Instrument Panel, Vinyl, and Other Plastic Surfaces .....	5-89	Windshield Wiper Fuses .....	5-96
Care of Safety Belts .....	5-89	Power Windows and Other Power Options .....	5-96
Weatherstrips .....	5-89	Fuses and Circuit Breakers .....	5-97
Washing Your Vehicle .....	5-90	Instrument Panel Fuse Block .....	5-97
		Underhood Fuse Block .....	5-100
		<b>Capacities and Specifications</b> .....	5-104

## Service

For service and parts needs, visit your dealer/retailer. You will receive genuine Saturn parts and Saturn-trained and supported service people.

Genuine Saturn parts have one of these marks.

***ACDelco***<sup>®</sup>

---



## Accessories and Modifications

When non-dealer/non-retailer accessories are added to your vehicle they can affect your vehicle's performance and safety, including such things as, airbags, braking, stability, ride and handling, emissions systems, aerodynamics, durability, and electronic systems like antilock brakes, traction control and stability control. Some of these accessories could even cause malfunction or damage not covered by warranty.

GM Accessories are designed to complement and function with other systems on your vehicle. Your GM dealer/retailer can accessorize your vehicle using genuine GM Accessories. When you go to your GM dealer/retailer and ask for GM Accessories, you will know that GM-trained and supported service technicians will perform the work using genuine GM Accessories.

Also, see *Adding Equipment to Your Airbag-Equipped Vehicle* on page 1-70.

## California Proposition 65 Warning

Most motor vehicles, including this one, contain and/or emit chemicals known to the State of California to cause cancer and birth defects or other reproductive harm. Engine exhaust, many parts and systems (including some inside the vehicle), many fluids, and some component wear by-products contain and/or emit these chemicals.

## California Perchlorate Materials Requirements

Certain types of automotive applications, such as airbag initiators, seat belt pretensioners, and lithium batteries contained in remote keyless entry transmitters, may contain perchlorate materials. Special handling may be necessary. For additional information, see [www.dtsc.ca.gov/hazardouswaste/perchlorate](http://www.dtsc.ca.gov/hazardouswaste/perchlorate).

## Doing Your Own Service Work

### CAUTION:

**You can be injured and your vehicle could be damaged if you try to do service work on a vehicle without knowing enough about it.**

- **Be sure you have sufficient knowledge, experience, the proper replacement parts, and tools before you attempt any vehicle maintenance task.**
- **Be sure to use the proper nuts, bolts, and other fasteners. English and metric fasteners can be easily confused. If you use the wrong fasteners, parts can later break or fall off. You could be hurt.**

If you want to do some of your own service work, you should use the proper service manual. It tells you much more about how to service your vehicle than this manual can. To order the proper service manual, see *Service Publications Ordering Information on page 7-15*.

Your vehicle has an airbag system. Before attempting to do your own service work, see *Servicing Your Airbag-Equipped Vehicle* on page 1-70.

You should keep a record with all parts receipts and list the mileage and the date of any service work you perform. See *Maintenance Record* on page 6-18.

## **Adding Equipment to the Outside of Your Vehicle**

Things you might add to the outside of your vehicle can affect the airflow around it. This can cause wind noise and can affect fuel economy and windshield washer performance. Check with your dealer/retailer before adding equipment to the outside of your vehicle.

## **Fuel**

Use of the recommended fuel is an important part of the proper maintenance of your vehicle. To help keep the engine clean and maintain optimum vehicle performance, we recommend the use of gasoline advertised as TOP TIER Detergent Gasoline.

The 8th digit of the Vehicle Identification Number (VIN) shows the code letter or number that identifies your vehicle's engine. The VIN is at the top left of the instrument panel. See *Vehicle Identification Number (VIN)* on page 5-95.

## Gasoline Octane

If your vehicle has the 2.4L L4 engine (VIN Code P) or the 3.5L V6 engine (VIN Code N), use regular unleaded gasoline with a posted octane rating of 87 or higher. If the octane rating is less than 87, you might notice an audible knocking noise when you drive, commonly referred to as spark knock. If this occurs, use a gasoline rated at 87 octane or higher as soon as possible. If you are using gasoline rated at 87 octane or higher and you hear heavy knocking, the engine needs service.

If your vehicle has the 3.6L V6 engine (VIN Code 7), use regular unleaded gasoline with a posted octane rating of 87 or higher. For best performance or trailer towing, you could choose to use middle grade 89 octane unleaded gasoline. If the octane rating is less than 87, you might notice an audible knocking noise when you drive, commonly referred to as spark knock. If this occurs, use a gasoline rated at 87 octane or higher as soon as possible. If you are using gasoline rated at 87 octane or higher and you hear heavy knocking, the engine needs service.

## Gasoline Specifications

At a minimum, gasoline should meet ASTM specification D 4814 in the United States or CAN/CGSB-3.5 or 3.511 in Canada. Some gasolines contain an octane-enhancing additive called methylcyclopentadienyl manganese tricarbonyl (MMT). We recommend against the use of gasolines containing MMT. See *Additives on page 5-7* for additional information.

## California Fuel

If your vehicle is certified to meet California Emissions Standards, it is designed to operate on fuels that meet California specifications. See the underhood emission control label. If this fuel is not available in states adopting California emissions standards, your vehicle will operate satisfactorily on fuels meeting federal specifications, but emission control system performance might be affected. The malfunction indicator lamp could turn on and your vehicle might fail a smog-check test. See *Malfunction Indicator Lamp on page 3-41*. If this occurs, return to your authorized dealer/retailer for diagnosis. If it is determined that the condition is caused by the type of fuel used, repairs might not be covered by the vehicle warranty.

## Additives

To provide cleaner air, all gasolines in the United States are now required to contain additives that help prevent engine and fuel system deposits from forming, allowing the emission control system to work properly. In most cases, you should not have to add anything to the fuel. However, some gasolines contain only the minimum amount of additive required to meet U.S. Environmental Protection Agency regulations. To help keep fuel injectors and intake valves clean, or if your vehicle experiences problems due to dirty injectors or valves, look for gasoline that is advertised as TOP TIER Detergent Gasoline. Also, your dealer/retailer has additives that will help correct and prevent most deposit-related problems.

Gasolines containing oxygenates, such as ethers and ethanol, and reformulated gasolines might be available in your area. We recommend that you use these gasolines, if they comply with the specifications described earlier. However, E85 (85% ethanol) and other fuels containing more than 10% ethanol must not be used in vehicles that were not designed for those fuels.

**Notice:** Your vehicle was not designed for fuel that contains methanol. Do not use fuel containing methanol. It can corrode metal parts in the fuel system and also damage plastic and rubber parts. That damage would not be covered under your warranty.

Some gasolines that are not reformulated for low emissions can contain an octane-enhancing additive called methylcyclopentadienyl manganese tricarbonyl (MMT); ask the attendant where you buy gasoline whether the fuel contains MMT. We recommend against the use of such gasolines. Fuels containing MMT can reduce the life of spark plugs and the performance of the emission control system could be affected. The malfunction indicator lamp might turn on. If this occurs, return to your dealer/retailer for service.

## Fuels in Foreign Countries

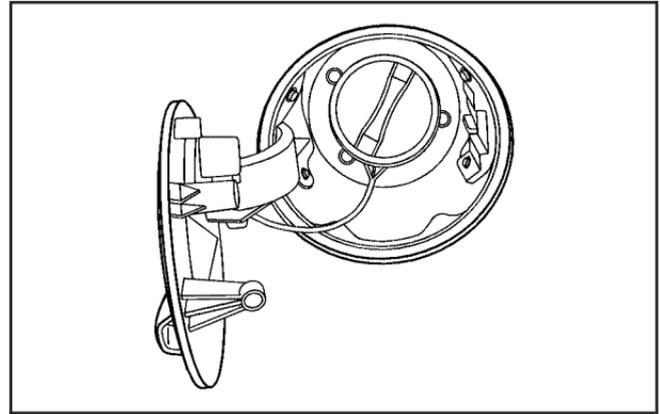
If you plan on driving in another country outside the United States or Canada, the proper fuel might be hard to find. Never use leaded gasoline or any other fuel not recommended in the previous text on fuel. Costly repairs caused by use of improper fuel would not be covered by your warranty.

To check the fuel availability, ask an auto club, or contact a major oil company that does business in the country where you will be driving.

## Filling the Tank

### CAUTION:

Fuel vapor burns violently and a fuel fire can cause bad injuries. To help avoid injuries to you and others, read and follow all the instructions on the pump island. Turn off your engine when you are refueling. Do not smoke if you are near fuel or refueling your vehicle. Do not use cellular phones. Keep sparks, flames, and smoking materials away from fuel. Do not leave the fuel pump unattended when refueling your vehicle. This is against the law in some places. Do not re-enter the vehicle while pumping fuel. Keep children away from the fuel pump; never let children pump fuel.



Unlock the gas cap door by pressing the door lock switch located on the driver's door trim.

The tethered fuel cap is located behind a hinged fuel door on the driver's side of the vehicle.

To remove the fuel cap, turn it slowly counterclockwise. The fuel cap has a spring in it; if the cap is released too soon, it will spring back to the right. To avoid gasoline contact on the painted surface of your car when filling your fuel tank, place the tethered cap on the fuel filler door.

 **CAUTION:**

Fuel can spray out on you if you open the fuel cap too quickly. If you spill fuel and then something ignites it, you could be badly burned. This spray can happen if your tank is nearly full, and is more likely in hot weather. Open the fuel cap slowly and wait for any hiss noise to stop. Then unscrew the cap all the way.

Be careful not to spill fuel. Do not top off or overfill the tank and wait a few seconds after you have finished pumping before removing the nozzle. Clean fuel from painted surfaces as soon as possible. See *Washing Your Vehicle* on page 5-90.

When replacing the fuel cap, turn it clockwise until it clicks. Make sure the cap is fully installed. The diagnostic system can determine if the fuel cap has been left off or improperly installed. This would allow fuel to evaporate into the atmosphere. See *Malfunction Indicator Lamp* on page 3-41.

 **CAUTION:**

If a fire starts while you are refueling, do not remove the nozzle. Shut off the flow of fuel by shutting off the pump or by notifying the station attendant. Leave the area immediately.

**Notice:** If you need a new fuel cap, be sure to get the right type. Your dealer/ retailer can get one for you. If you get the wrong type, it may not fit properly. This may cause your malfunction indicator lamp to light and may damage your fuel tank and emissions system. See *Malfunction Indicator Lamp* on page 3-41.

## Filling a Portable Fuel Container

### CAUTION:

Never fill a portable fuel container while it is in your vehicle. Static electricity discharge from the container can ignite the fuel vapor. You can be badly burned and your vehicle damaged if this occurs. To help avoid injury to you and others:

- Dispense fuel only into approved containers.
- Do not fill a container while it is inside a vehicle, in a vehicle's trunk, pickup bed, or on any surface other than the ground.
- Bring the fill nozzle in contact with the inside of the fill opening before operating the nozzle. Contact should be maintained until the filling is complete.
- Do not smoke while pumping fuel.
- Do not use a cellular phone while pumping fuel.

## Checking Things Under the Hood

### CAUTION:

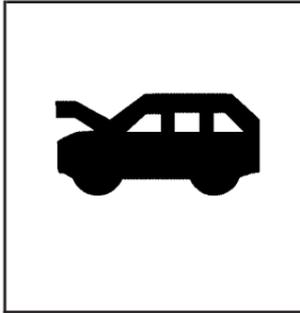
An electric fan under the hood can start up and injure you even when the engine is not running. Keep hands, clothing, and tools away from any underhood electric fan.

### CAUTION:

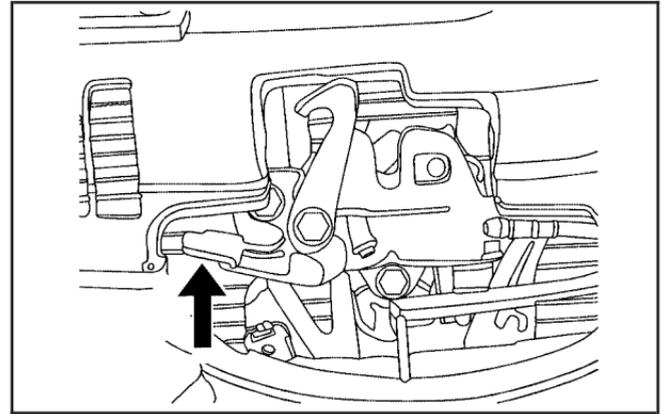
Things that burn can get on hot engine parts and start a fire. These include liquids like fuel, oil, coolant, brake fluid, windshield washer and other fluids, and plastic or rubber. You or others could be burned. Be careful not to drop or spill things that will burn onto a hot engine.

## Hood Release

To open the hood, do the following:



1. Pull the handle with this symbol on it. It is located under the instrument panel on the driver side of the vehicle.

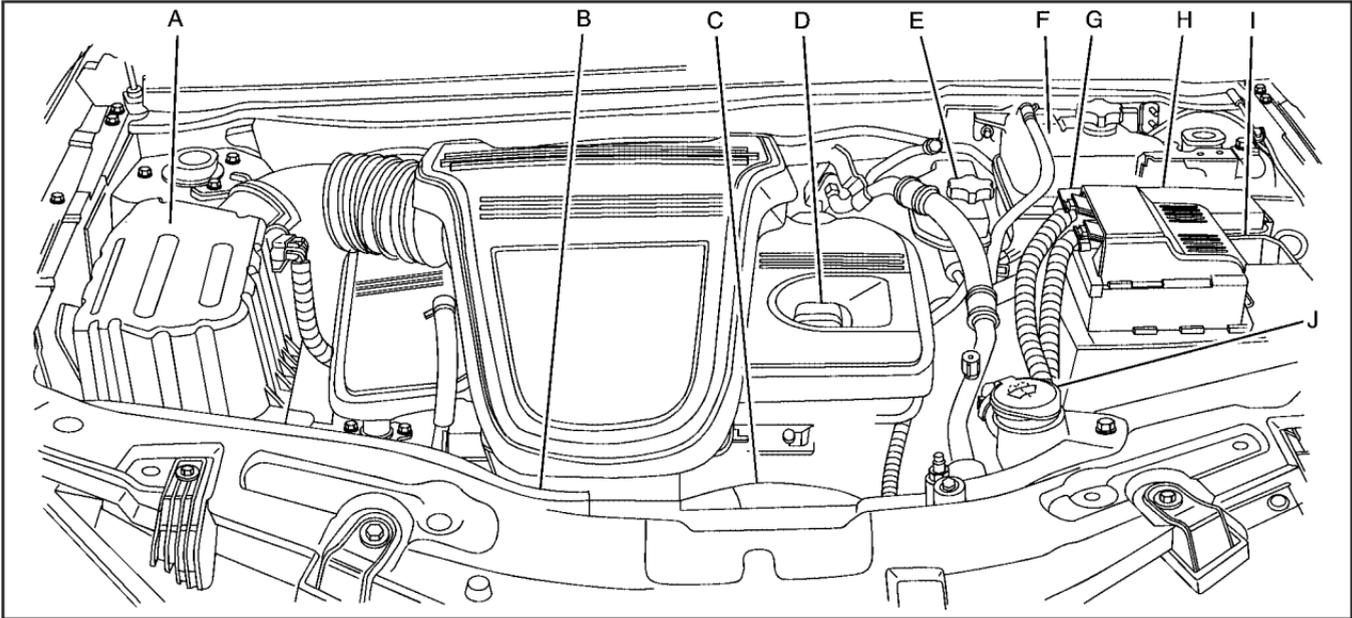


2. Then go to the front of the vehicle and lift up on the secondary hood release lever.
3. Lift the hood.

Before closing the hood, be sure all the filler caps are on properly. Then pull the hood down and close it firmly.

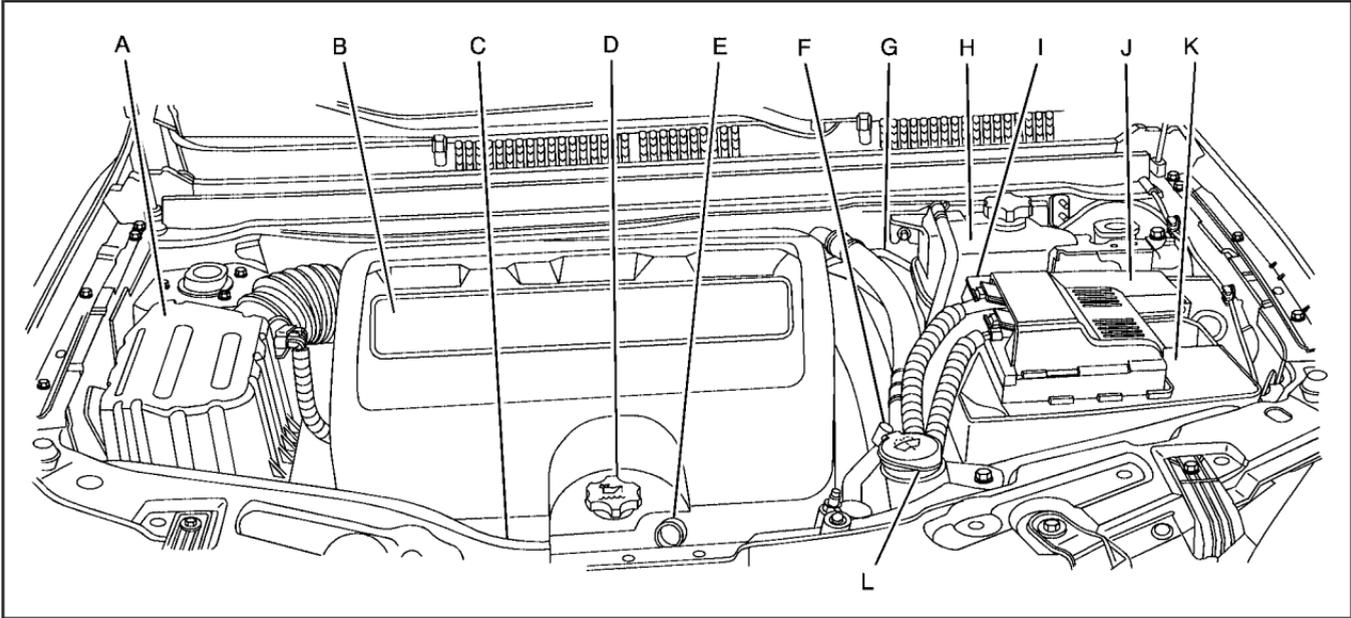
# Engine Compartment Overview

When you open the hood on the 2.4L L4 engine, you will see the following:



- A. Engine Air Cleaner/Filter. See *Engine Air Cleaner/Filter on page 5-20*.
- B. Electric Engine Cooling Fan (Out of View). See *Cooling System on page 5-27*.
- C. Engine Oil Dipstick (Out of View). See “Checking Engine Oil” under *Engine Oil on page 5-15*.
- D. Engine Oil Fill Cap (Out of View). See “When to Add Engine Oil” under *Engine Oil on page 5-15*.
- E. Brake Fluid Reservoir. See *Brakes on page 5-33*.
- F. Engine Coolant Surge Tank. See “Checking Coolant” under *Engine Coolant on page 5-22*.
- G. Remote Positive (+) Terminal. See *Jump Starting on page 5-37*.
- H. Underhood Fuse Block. See *Underhood Fuse Block on page 5-100*.
- I. Battery. See *Battery on page 5-36*.
- J. Windshield Washer Fluid Reservoir. See “Adding Washer Fluid” under *Windshield Washer Fluid on page 5-32*.

When you open the hood on the 3.5L V6 engine (3.6L V6 similar), you will see the following:



- A. Engine Air Cleaner/Filter. See *Engine Air Cleaner/Filter on page 5-20*.
- B. Power Steering Fluid Reservoir (Out of View). See *Power Steering Fluid on page 5-31*.
- C. Electric Engine Cooling Fan (Out of View). See *Cooling System on page 5-27*.
- D. Engine Oil Fill Cap. See “When to Add Engine Oil” under *Engine Oil on page 5-15*.
- E. Engine Oil Dipstick (Out of View). See “Checking Engine Oil” under *Engine Oil on page 5-15*.
- F. Automatic Transmission Fluid Dipstick (Out of View). See “Checking the Fluid Level” under *Automatic Transmission Fluid on page 5-22*.
- G. Brake Fluid Reservoir (Out of View). See *Brakes on page 5-33*.
- H. Engine Coolant Recovery Tank. See *Cooling System on page 5-27*.
- I. Remote Positive (+) Terminal. See *Jump Starting on page 5-37*.
- J. Underhood Fuse Block. See *Underhood Fuse Block on page 5-100*.
- K. Battery. See *Battery on page 5-36*.
- L. Windshield Washer Fluid Reservoir. See “Adding Washer Fluid” under *Windshield Washer Fluid on page 5-32*.

## Engine Oil

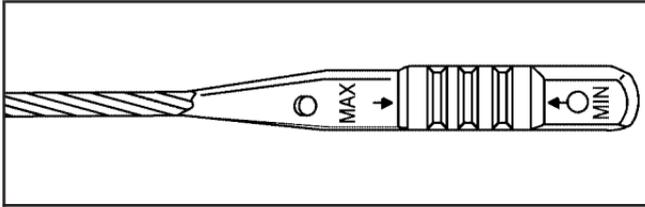
### Checking Engine Oil

It is a good idea to check the engine oil every time you get fuel. In order to get an accurate reading, the oil must be warm and the vehicle must be on level ground.

The engine oil dipstick handle is a yellow loop. See *Engine Compartment Overview on page 5-12* for the location of the engine oil dipstick.

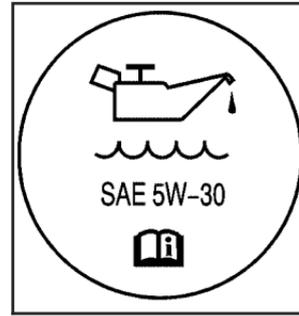
1. Turn off the engine and give the oil several minutes to drain back into the oil pan. If you do not do this, the oil dipstick might not show the actual level.
2. Pull the dipstick and clean it with a paper towel or cloth, then push it back in all the way. Remove it again, keeping the tip down and check the level.

## When to Add Engine Oil



If the oil is below the MIN (minimum) mark, add at least one quart/liter of the recommended oil. This section explains what kind of oil to use. For engine oil crankcase capacity, see *Capacities and Specifications* on page 5-104.

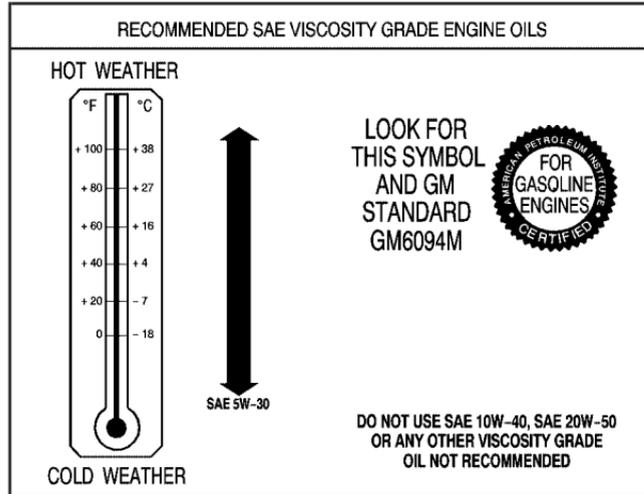
**Notice:** Do not add too much oil. If the engine has so much oil that the oil level gets above the upper mark that shows the proper operating range, the engine could be damaged.



See *Engine Compartment Overview* on page 5-12 for the location of the engine oil fill cap.

Be sure to add enough oil to put the level somewhere in the proper operating range. Push the dipstick all the way back in when you are through.

## What Kind of Engine Oil to Use



Look for three things:

- GM6094M

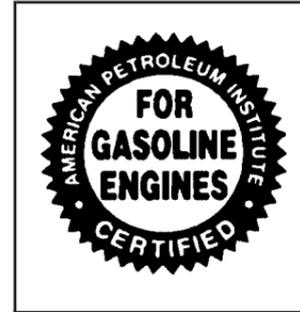
Your vehicle's engine requires oil meeting GM Standard GM6094M. Look for and use only an oil that meets GM Standard GM6094M.

- SAE 5W-30

As shown in the viscosity chart, SAE 5W-30 is best for your vehicle.

These numbers on an oil container show its viscosity, or thickness. Do not use other viscosity oils such as SAE 20W-50.

- American Petroleum Institute (API) starburst symbol



Oils meeting these requirements should have the starburst symbol on the container. This symbol indicates that the oil has been certified by the American Petroleum Institute (API).

Look for this information on the oil container, and use only those oils that are identified as meeting GM Standard GM6094M and have the starburst symbol on the front of the oil container.

**Notice:** Use only engine oil identified as meeting GM Standard GM6094M and showing the American Petroleum Institute Certified For Gasoline Engines starburst symbol. Failure to use the recommended oil can result in engine damage not covered by your warranty.

If you are in an area of extreme cold, where the temperature falls below  $-20^{\circ}\text{F}$  ( $-29^{\circ}\text{C}$ ), it is recommended that you use either an SAE 5W-30 synthetic oil or an SAE 0W-30 oil. Both provide easier cold starting and better protection for the engine at extremely low temperatures.

## Engine Oil Additives

Do not add anything to the oil. The recommended oils with the starburst symbol that meet GM Standard GM6094M are all you need for good performance and engine protection.

## Engine Oil Life System

### When to Change Engine Oil

Your vehicle has a computer system that lets you know when to change the engine oil and filter. This is based on engine revolutions and engine temperature, and not on mileage. Based on driving conditions, the mileage at which an oil change will be indicated can vary considerably. For the oil life system to work properly, you must reset the system every time the oil is changed.

When the system has calculated that oil life has been diminished, it will indicate that an oil change is necessary. A change engine oil light will come on. See *Change Engine Oil Light* on page 3-44. Change the oil as soon as possible within the next 600 miles (1 000 km). It is possible that, if you are driving under the best conditions, the oil life system might not indicate that an oil change is necessary for over a year. However, the engine oil and filter must be changed at least once a year and at this time the system must be reset. Your dealer/retailer has trained service people who will perform this work using genuine parts and reset the system. It is also important to check the oil regularly and keep it at the proper level.

If the system is ever reset accidentally, you must change the oil at 3,000 miles (5 000 km) since your last oil change. Remember to reset the oil life system whenever the oil is changed.

## How to Reset the Engine Oil Life System

The Engine Oil Life System calculates when to change the engine oil and filter based on vehicle use. Whenever the oil is changed, reset the system so it can calculate when the next oil change is required. If a situation occurs where you change the oil prior to a change engine oil light being turned on, reset the system.

After changing the engine oil, reset the system:

1. Turn the ignition key to ON/RUN with the engine off.
2. Fully press and release the accelerator pedal three times within five seconds.

If the change engine oil light is not on, the system is reset.

If the light comes on again and stays on for 30 seconds at the next ignition cycle, it did not reset. You will need to reset the system again.

## What to Do with Used Oil

Used engine oil contains certain elements that can be unhealthy for your skin and could even cause cancer. Do not let used oil stay on your skin for very long. Clean your skin and nails with soap and water, or a good hand cleaner. Wash or properly dispose of clothing or rags containing used engine oil. See the manufacturer's warnings about the use and disposal of oil products.

Used oil can be a threat to the environment. If you change your own oil, be sure to drain all the oil from the filter before disposal. Never dispose of oil by putting it in the trash, pouring it on the ground, into sewers, or into streams or bodies of water. Instead, recycle it by taking it to a place that collects used oil. If you have a problem properly disposing of used oil, ask your dealer/retailer, a service station, or a local recycling center for help.

## Engine Air Cleaner/Filter

See *Engine Compartment Overview on page 5-12* for the location of the engine air cleaner/filter.

### When to Inspect the Engine Air Cleaner/Filter

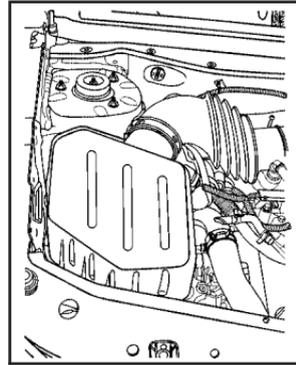
Inspect the air cleaner/filter at the Maintenance II intervals and replace it at the first oil change after each 50,000 mile (80 000 km) interval. See *Scheduled Maintenance on page 6-3* for more information. If you are driving in dusty/dirty conditions, inspect the filter at each engine oil change.

## How to Inspect the Engine Air Cleaner/Filter

To inspect the air cleaner/filter remove the filter from the vehicle and lightly shake the filter to release loose dust and dirt. If the filter remains caked with dirt, a new filter is required.

To inspect or replace the engine air cleaner/filter, do the following:

1. Unscrew the clamp on the air duct hose.



2. Disconnect the hose.
3. Unscrew the four bolts on the side of the air cleaner assembly.

4. Turn the cover upward to disengage the cover hinges.
5. Remove the air cleaner cover assembly and air filter element.
6. Inspect or replace the air filter element.  
If the air filter element is dirty, you should replace it. If it is only dusty, it may be cleaned by blowing compressed air through it from the clean side.  
Make sure you are away from the engine compartment when cleaning the air filter with compressed air.  
Wipe all dust from inside of the housing and inspect the air cleaner and air outlet duct for cracks, cuts and deterioration. The air outlet duct must be replaced if damaged.
7. Reverse Steps 1 through 5 to reinstall the engine air cleaner/filter cover and air duct hose.

 **CAUTION:**

**Operating the engine with the air cleaner/filter off can cause you or others to be burned. The air cleaner not only cleans the air; it helps to stop flames if the engine backfires. If it is not there and the engine backfires, you could be burned. Do not drive with it off, and be careful working on the engine with the air cleaner/filter off.**

***Notice:*** If the air cleaner/filter is off, a backfire can cause a damaging engine fire. And, dirt can easily get into your engine, which will damage it. Always have the air cleaner/filter in place when you are driving.

## Automatic Transmission Fluid

It is not necessary to check the transmission fluid level. A transmission fluid leak is the only reason for fluid loss. If a leak occurs, take your vehicle to the dealer/retailer and have it repaired as soon as possible.

Change the fluid and filter at the intervals listed in *Additional Required Services on page 6-6*, and be sure to use the transmission fluid listed in *Recommended Fluids and Lubricants on page 6-13*.

**Notice:** Use of the incorrect automatic transmission fluid may damage your vehicle, and the damages may not be covered by your warranty. Always use the automatic transmission fluid listed in *Recommended Fluids and Lubricants on page 6-13*.

For the 2.4L, 3.5L and 3.6L engines, the transmission fluid will not reach the end of the dipstick unless the transmission is at operating temperature. If you need to check the transmission fluid level, please take your vehicle to your dealer/retailer.

## Engine Coolant

The cooling system in your vehicle is filled with DEX-COOL<sup>®</sup> engine coolant. This coolant is designed to remain in your vehicle for five years or 150,000 miles (240 000 km), whichever occurs first, if you add only DEX-COOL<sup>®</sup> extended life coolant.

The following explains your cooling system and how to add coolant when it is low. If you have a problem with engine overheating, see *Engine Overheating on page 5-25*.

A 50/50 mixture of clean, drinkable water and DEX-COOL<sup>®</sup> coolant will:

- Give freezing protection down to -34°F (-37°C).
- Give boiling protection up to 265°F (129°C).
- Protect against rust and corrosion.
- Help keep the proper engine temperature.
- Let the warning lights and gages work as they should.

**Notice:** Using coolant other than DEX-COOL<sup>®</sup> may cause premature engine, heater core, or radiator corrosion. In addition, the engine coolant may require changing sooner, at the first maintenance service after each 30,000 miles (50 000 km) or 24 months, whichever occurs first. Any repairs would not be covered by your warranty. Always use DEX-COOL<sup>®</sup> (silicate-free) coolant in your vehicle.

## What to Use

Use a mixture of one-half clean, drinkable water and one-half DEX-COOL<sup>®</sup> coolant which will not damage aluminum parts. If you use this coolant mixture, you do not need to add anything else.

### CAUTION:

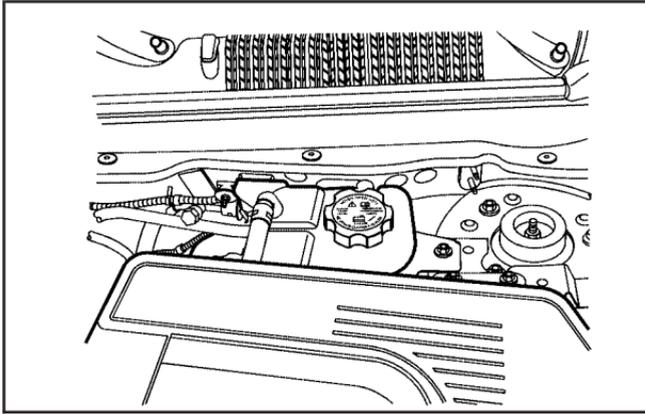
Adding only plain water to the cooling system can be dangerous. Plain water, or some other liquid such as alcohol, can boil before the proper coolant mixture will. The vehicle's coolant warning system is set for the proper coolant mixture. With plain water or the wrong mixture, the engine could get too hot but you would not get the overheat warning. The engine could catch fire and you or others could be burned. Use a 50/50 mixture of clean, drinkable water and DEX-COOL<sup>®</sup> coolant.

**Notice:** If you use an improper coolant mixture, your engine could overheat and be badly damaged. The repair cost would not be covered by your warranty. Too much water in the mixture can freeze and crack the engine, radiator, heater core, and other parts.

If you have to add coolant more than four times a year, have your dealer/retailer check your cooling system.

**Notice:** If you use extra inhibitors and/or additives in your vehicle's cooling system, you could damage your vehicle. Use only the proper mixture of the engine coolant listed in this manual for the cooling system. See *Recommended Fluids and Lubricants on page 6-13* for more information.

## Checking Coolant



The surge tank is located on the driver side of the engine compartment. See *Engine Compartment Overview* on page 5-12 for more information on location.

### CAUTION:

Turning the surge tank pressure cap when the engine and radiator are hot can allow steam and scalding liquids to blow out and burn you badly. Never turn the surge tank pressure cap — even a little — when the engine and radiator are hot.

The vehicle must be on a level surface. When your engine is cold, the coolant level should be between the MIN and MAX lines.

### Adding Coolant

If you need more coolant, add the proper DEX-COOL<sup>®</sup> coolant mixture at the surge tank, but only when the engine is cool. See *Engine Overheating* on page 5-25 for instructions on “How to Add Coolant to the Coolant Surge Tank.”

 **CAUTION:**

You can be burned if you spill coolant on hot engine parts. Coolant contains ethylene glycol, and it will burn if the engine parts are hot enough. Do not spill coolant on a hot engine.

When replacing the pressure cap, make sure it is hand-tight and fully seated.

## Coolant Surge Tank Pressure Cap

**Notice:** If the pressure cap is not tightly installed, coolant loss and possible engine damage may occur. Be sure the cap is properly and tightly secured.

If you need to replace your coolant surge tank pressure cap, see your retailer.

## Engine Overheating

There is a coolant temperature warning light on your vehicle's instrument panel. See *Engine Coolant Temperature Warning Light on page 3-40*.

## If Steam Is Coming From Your Engine

 **CAUTION:**

Steam from an overheated engine can burn you badly, even if you just open the hood. Stay away from the engine if you see or hear steam coming from it. Just turn it off and get everyone away from the vehicle until it cools down. Wait until there is no sign of steam or coolant before you open the hood.

If you keep driving when your engine is overheated, the liquids in it can catch fire. You or others could be badly burned. Stop your engine if it overheats, and get out of the vehicle until the engine is cool.

**Notice:** If your engine catches fire because you keep driving with no coolant, your vehicle can be badly damaged. The costly repairs would not be covered by your warranty.

## If No Steam Is Coming From Your Engine

If you get an engine overheat warning, but see or hear no steam, the problem may not be too serious. Sometimes the engine can get a little too hot when you:

- Climb a long hill on a hot day.
- Stop after high-speed driving.
- Idle for long periods in traffic.
- Tow a trailer.

If you get the overheat warning with no sign of steam, try this for a minute or so:

1. If you have an air conditioner and it is on, turn it off.
2. Turn on your heater to full hot at the highest fan speed and open the windows as necessary.
3. Try to minimize engine load. If you are in a traffic jam, shift to NEUTRAL (N); otherwise, shift to the highest gear possible while driving.

If you no longer have the overheat warning, you can drive. Just to be safe, drive slower for about ten minutes. If the warning does not come back on, you can drive normally.

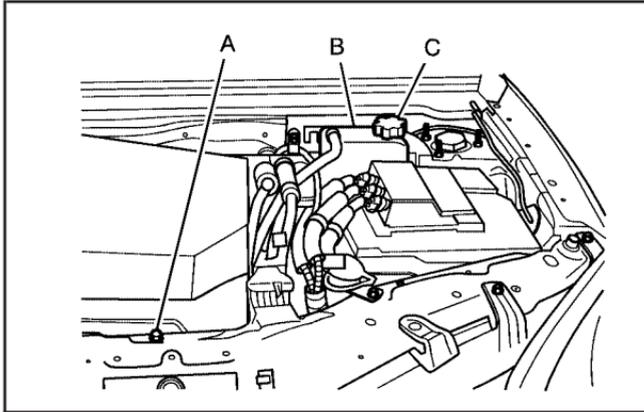
If the warning continues and you have not stopped, pull over, stop, and park your vehicle right away.

If there is still no sign of steam, idle the engine for three minutes while you are parked. If the warning continues, turn off the engine and get everyone out of the vehicle until it cools down.

You may decide not to lift the hood but to get service help right away.

## Cooling System

When you decide it is safe to lift the hood, here is what you will see:



**2.4L L4 Engine shown,  
3.5L V6 and 3.6L V6 Engines similar**

- A. Electric Engine Fan
- B. Coolant Surge Tank
- C. Pressure Cap

### **⚠ CAUTION:**

**An electric engine cooling fan under the hood can start up even when the engine is not running and can injure you. Keep hands, clothing, and tools away from any underhood electric fan.**

If the coolant inside the coolant surge tank is boiling, do not do anything else until it cools down. The vehicle should be parked on a level surface.

The coolant level should be between the MIN and MAX lines. If it is not, you may have a leak at the radiator hoses, heater hoses, radiator, water pump, or somewhere else in the cooling system.

## CAUTION:

Heater and radiator hoses, and other engine parts, can be very hot. Do not touch them. If you do, you can be burned.

Do not run the engine if there is a leak. If you run the engine, it could lose all coolant. That could cause an engine fire, and you could be burned. Get any leak fixed before you drive the vehicle.

If there seems to be no leak, with the engine on, check to see if the electric engine cooling fan is running. If the engine is overheating, the fan should be running. If it is not, your vehicle needs service. Turn off the engine.

**Notice:** Engine damage from running the engine without coolant is not covered by the warranty.

**Notice:** Using coolant other than DEX-COOL<sup>®</sup> may cause premature engine, heater core, or radiator corrosion. In addition, the engine coolant could require changing sooner, at 30,000 miles (50 000 km) or 24 months, whichever occurs first. Any repairs would not be covered by the warranty. Always use DEX-COOL<sup>®</sup> (silicate-free) coolant in the vehicle.

## How to Add Coolant to the Coolant Surge Tank

**Notice:** This vehicle has a specific coolant fill procedure. Failure to follow this procedure could cause your engine to overheat and be severely damaged.

If you have not found a problem yet, check to see if coolant is visible in the surge tank. If coolant is visible but the coolant level is not at between the MIN and MAX lines, add a 50/50 mixture of clean, drinkable water and DEX-COOL<sup>®</sup> coolant at the coolant surge tank, but be sure the cooling system, including the coolant surge tank pressure cap, is cool before you do it. See *Engine Coolant* on page 5-22 for more information.

 **CAUTION:**

Steam and scalding liquids from a hot cooling system can blow out and burn you badly. They are under pressure, and if you turn the coolant surge tank pressure cap — even a little — they can come out at high speed. Never turn the cap when the cooling system, including the coolant surge tank pressure cap, is hot. Wait for the cooling system and coolant surge tank pressure cap to cool if you ever have to turn the pressure cap.

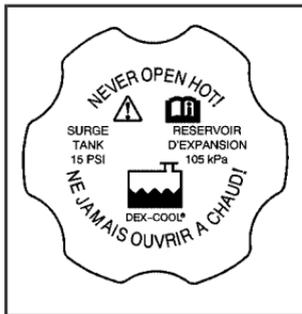
 **CAUTION:**

Adding only plain water to the cooling system can be dangerous. Plain water, or some other liquid such as alcohol, can boil before the proper coolant mixture will. The vehicle's coolant warning system is set for the proper coolant mixture. With plain water or the wrong mixture, the engine could get too hot but you would not get the overheat warning. The engine could catch fire and you or others could be burned. Use a 50/50 mixture of clean, drinkable water and DEX-COOL<sup>®</sup> coolant.

**Notice:** In cold weather, water can freeze and crack the engine, radiator, heater core and other parts. Use the recommended coolant and the proper coolant mixture.

## CAUTION:

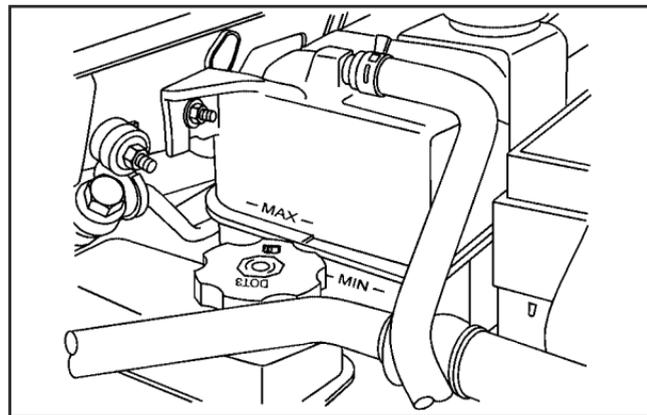
You can be burned if you spill coolant on hot engine parts. Coolant contains ethylene glycol and it will burn if the engine parts are hot enough. Do not spill coolant on a hot engine.



1. You can remove the coolant surge tank pressure cap when the cooling system, including the coolant surge tank pressure cap and upper radiator hose, is no longer hot.

Turn the pressure cap slowly counterclockwise about one-quarter of a turn. If you hear a hiss, wait for that to stop. This will allow any pressure still left to be vented out the discharge hose.

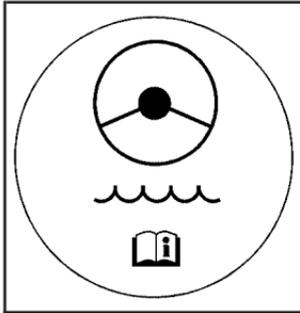
2. Then keep turning the pressure cap slowly, and remove it.



3. Fill the coolant surge tank with the proper DEX-COOL® coolant mixture, to between the MIN and MAX lines.
4. With the coolant surge tank pressure cap off, start the engine and let it run until you can feel the upper radiator hose getting hot. Watch out for the engine cooling fan.  
By this time, the coolant level inside the coolant surge tank may be lower. If the level is lower, add more of the proper DEX-COOL® coolant mixture to the coolant surge tank until the level reaches between the MIN and MAX lines.
5. Then replace the pressure cap. Be sure the pressure cap is hand-tight.

Check the level in the surge tank when the cooling system has cooled down. If the coolant is not at the proper level, repeat Steps 1 through 3 and reinstall the pressure cap. If the coolant still is not at the proper level when the system cools down again, see your retailer.

## Power Steering Fluid



See *Engine Compartment Overview* on page 5-12 for reservoir location.

## When to Check Power Steering Fluid

Power steering fluid is used in all vehicles with V6 engines. Vehicles with the 4-cylinder engine have electric power steering and does not use power steering fluid.

It is not necessary to regularly check power steering fluid unless you suspect there is a leak in the system or you hear an unusual noise. A fluid loss in this system could indicate a problem. Have the system inspected and repaired.

## How to Check Power Steering Fluid

To check the power steering fluid, do the following:

1. Turn the key off and let the engine compartment cool down.
2. Remove engine oil fill cap.
3. Slide engine cover rearward and lift to remove.
4. Wipe the cap and the top of the reservoir clean.
5. Unscrew the cap and wipe the dipstick with a clean rag.
6. Replace the cap and completely tighten it.
7. Remove the cap again and look at the fluid level on the dipstick.

The fluid level should be within the area indicated on the dipstick when the engine is cold.

## What to Use

To determine what kind of fluid to use, *Recommended Fluids and Lubricants* on page 6-13. Always use the proper fluid.

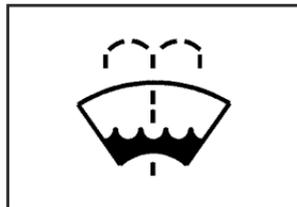
**Notice:** Use of the incorrect fluid may damage your vehicle and the damages may not be covered by your warranty. Always use the correct fluid listed in *Recommended Fluids and Lubricants* on page 6-13.

## Windshield Washer Fluid

### What to Use

When you need windshield or rear window washer fluid, be sure to read the manufacturer's instructions before use. If you will be operating your vehicle in an area where the temperature may fall below freezing, use a fluid that has sufficient protection against freezing.

## Adding Windshield Washer Fluid



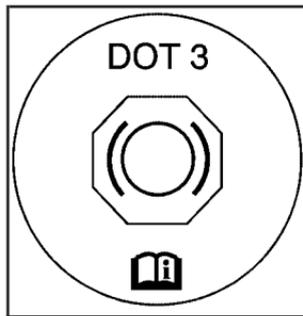
Open the cap with the washer symbol on it. Add washer fluid until the tank is full. See *Engine Compartment Overview* on page 5-12 for reservoir location.

### Notice:

- When using concentrated washer fluid, follow the manufacturer's instructions for adding water.
- Do not mix water with ready-to-use washer fluid. Water can cause the solution to freeze and damage your washer fluid tank and other parts of the washer system. Also, water does not clean as well as washer fluid.
- Fill the washer fluid tank only three-quarters full when it is very cold. This allows for fluid expansion if freezing occurs, which could damage the tank if it is completely full.
- Do not use engine coolant (antifreeze) in your windshield washer. It can damage the vehicle's windshield washer system and paint.

## Brakes

### Brake Fluid



The brake master cylinder reservoir is filled with DOT-3 brake fluid. See *Engine Compartment Overview on page 5-12* for the location of the reservoir.

There are only two reasons why the brake fluid level in the reservoir might go down. The first is that the brake fluid goes down to an acceptable level during normal brake lining wear. When new linings are put in, the fluid level goes back up. The other reason is that fluid is leaking out of the brake hydraulic system. If it is, have the brake hydraulic system fixed, since a leak means that sooner or later the brakes will not work well.

It is not a good idea to top off the brake fluid. Adding brake fluid will not correct a leak. If fluid is added when the linings are worn, there will be too much fluid when new brake linings are installed. Add or remove brake fluid, as necessary, only when work is done on the brake hydraulic system.

#### **CAUTION:**

**If your vehicle has too much brake fluid, it can spill on the engine. The fluid will burn if the engine is hot enough. You or others could be burned, and your vehicle could be damaged. Add brake fluid only when work is done on the brake hydraulic system.**

When the brake fluid falls to a low level, the brake warning light comes on. See *Brake System Warning Light on page 3-37*.

## What to Add

When you need brake fluid, use only DOT-3 brake fluid. Use new brake fluid from a sealed container only. See *Recommended Fluids and Lubricants* on page 6-13.

Always clean the brake fluid reservoir cap and the area around the cap before removing it. This helps keep dirt from entering the reservoir.

### CAUTION:

With the wrong kind of fluid in the brake hydraulic system, the brakes might not work well. This could cause a crash. Always use the proper brake fluid.

### Notice:

- Using the wrong fluid can badly damage brake hydraulic system parts. For example, just a few drops of mineral-based oil, such as engine oil, in the brake hydraulic system can damage brake hydraulic system parts so badly that they will have to be replaced. Do not let someone put in the wrong kind of fluid.
- If you spill brake fluid on your vehicle's painted surfaces, the paint finish can be damaged. Be careful not to spill brake fluid on your vehicle. If you do, wash it off immediately. See *Washing Your Vehicle* on page 5-90.

## Brake Wear

Your vehicle has disc brakes. Disc brake pads have built-in wear indicators that make a high-pitched warning sound when the brake pads are worn and new pads are needed. The sound can come and go or be heard all the time your vehicle is moving, except when you are pushing on the brake pedal firmly.

### CAUTION:

**The brake wear warning sound means that soon the brakes will not work well. That could lead to an accident. When you hear the brake wear warning sound, have your vehicle serviced.**

**Notice:** Continuing to drive with worn-out brake pads could result in costly brake repair.

Some driving conditions or climates can cause a brake squeal when the brakes are first applied or lightly applied. This does not mean something is wrong with the brakes.

Properly torqued wheel nuts are necessary to help prevent brake pulsation. When tires are rotated, inspect brake pads for wear and evenly tighten wheel nuts in the proper sequence to torque specifications in *Capacities and Specifications on page 5-104*.

Brake linings should always be replaced as complete axle sets.

## Brake Pedal Travel

See your dealer/retailer if the brake pedal does not return to normal height, or if there is a rapid increase in pedal travel. This could be a sign that brake service might be required.

## Brake Adjustment

Every time you apply the brakes, with or without the vehicle moving, the brakes adjust for wear.

## Replacing Brake System Parts

The braking system on a vehicle is complex. Its many parts have to be of top quality and work well together if the vehicle is to have really good braking. Your vehicle was designed and tested with top-quality brake parts. When you replace parts of the braking system — for example, when the brake linings wear down and you need new ones put in — be sure you get new approved replacement parts. If you do not, the brakes might not work properly. For example, if someone puts in brake linings that are wrong for your vehicle, the balance between the front and rear brakes can change — for the worse. The braking performance you have come to expect can change in many other ways if someone puts in the wrong replacement brake parts.

## Battery

Your vehicle has a maintenance free battery. When it is time for a new battery, see your dealer/retailer for one that has the replacement number shown on the original battery's label. See *Engine Compartment Overview on page 5-12* for battery location.

**Warning:** Battery posts, terminals, and related accessories contain lead and lead compounds, chemicals known to the State of California to cause cancer and reproductive harm. Wash hands after handling.

## Vehicle Storage

### CAUTION:

**Batteries have acid that can burn you and gas that can explode. You can be badly hurt if you are not careful. See *Jump Starting on page 5-37* for tips on working around a battery without getting hurt.**

**Infrequent Usage:** If you drive your vehicle infrequently, remove the black, negative (–) cable from the battery. This will help keep the battery from running down.

**Extended Storage:** For extended storage of your vehicle, remove the black, negative (–) cable from the battery or use a battery trickle charger. This will help maintain the charge of the battery over an extended period of time.

## Jump Starting

If your vehicle's battery has run down, you may want to use another vehicle and some jumper cables to start your vehicle. Be sure to use the following steps to do it safely.

### CAUTION:

**Batteries can hurt you. They can be dangerous because:**

- They contain acid that can burn you.
- They contain gas that can explode or ignite.
- They contain enough electricity to burn you.

**If you do not follow these steps exactly, some or all of these things can hurt you.**

**Notice:** Ignoring these steps could result in costly damage to your vehicle that would not be covered by your warranty.

**Trying to start your vehicle by pushing or pulling it will not work, and it could damage your vehicle.**

1. Check the other vehicle. It must have a 12-volt battery with a negative ground system.

**Notice:** If the other vehicle's system is not a 12-volt system with a negative ground, both vehicles can be damaged. Only use vehicles with 12-volt systems with negative grounds to jump start your vehicle.

2. Get the vehicles close enough so the jumper cables can reach, but be sure the vehicles are not touching each other. If they are, it could cause a ground connection you do not want. You would not be able to start your vehicle, and the bad grounding could damage the electrical systems.

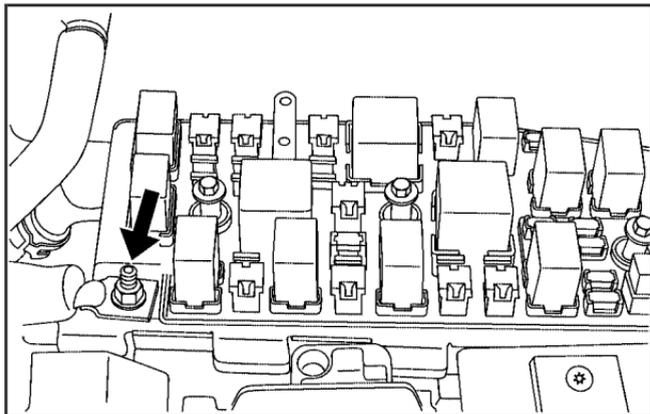
To avoid the possibility of the vehicles rolling, set the parking brake firmly on both vehicles involved in the jump start procedure. Put the transmission in PARK (P) before setting the parking brake.

**Notice:** If you leave your radio or other accessories on during the jump starting procedure, they could be damaged. The repairs would not be covered by your warranty. Always turn off your radio and other accessories when jump starting your vehicle.

3. Turn off the ignition on both vehicles. Unplug unnecessary accessories plugged into the cigarette lighter or the accessory power outlet. Turn off the radio and all lamps that are not needed. This will avoid sparks and help save both batteries. And it could save the radio!

4. Open the hood on the other vehicle and locate the positive (+) and negative (-) terminal locations on that vehicle.

Open the hood on your vehicle and find the remote positive (+) and remote negative (-) jump starting terminals.



The vehicle is equipped with a remote positive (+) terminal. This is located in the engine compartment on the driver's side of the vehicle, on the underhood fuse block. See *Engine Compartment Overview on page 5-12* for more information on location.

To uncover the remote positive (+) terminal, press the tab on the bottom of the fuse block and lift the cover up.

The remote negative (-) terminal is a stud on the driver's side near the underhood fuse block. See *Engine Compartment Overview on page 5-12*.

Place the negative (-) jumper cable clamp on the negative (-) terminal on top of the battery.

**⚠ CAUTION:**

**An electric fan can start up even when the engine is not running and can injure you. Keep hands, clothing and tools away from any underhood electric fan.**

 **CAUTION:**

Using a match near a battery can cause battery gas to explode. People have been hurt doing this, and some have been blinded. Use a flashlight if you need more light.

**Be sure the battery has enough water. You do not need to add water to the battery installed in your new vehicle. But if a battery has filler caps, be sure the right amount of fluid is there. If it is low, add water to take care of that first. If you do not, explosive gas could be present.**

**Battery fluid contains acid that can burn you. Do not get it on you. If you accidentally get it in your eyes or on your skin, flush the place with water and get medical help immediately.**

 **CAUTION:**

**Fans or other moving engine parts can injure you badly. Keep your hands away from moving parts once the engine is running.**

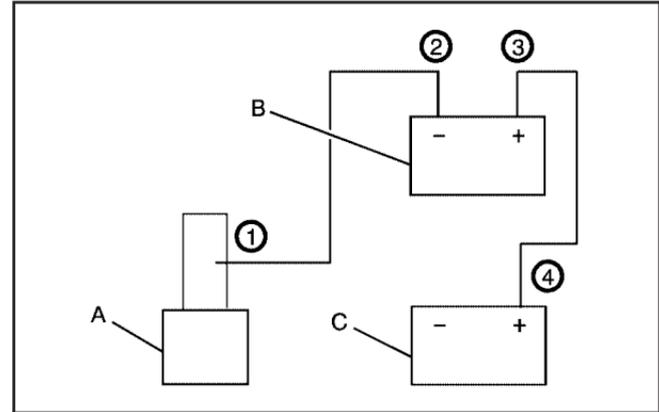
5. Check that the jumper cables do not have loose or missing insulation. If they do, you could get a shock. The vehicles could be damaged too.  
Before you connect the cables, here are some basic things you should know. Positive (+) will go to positive (+) or to a remote positive (+) terminal if the vehicle has one. Negative (-) will go to a heavy, unpainted metal engine part or to a remote negative (-) terminal if the vehicle has one.  
Do not connect positive (+) to negative (-) or you will get a short that would damage the battery and maybe other parts too. And do not connect the negative (-) cable to the negative (-) terminal on the dead battery because this can cause sparks.
6. Connect the red positive (+) cable to the positive (+) terminal on the vehicle with the dead battery. Use a remote positive (+) terminal if the vehicle has one.

7. Do not let the other end touch metal. Connect it to the positive (+) terminal of the good battery. Use a remote positive (+) terminal if the vehicle has one.
8. Now connect the black negative (-) cable to the negative (-) terminal of the good battery. Use a remote negative (-) terminal if the vehicle has one.

Do not let the other end touch anything until the next step. The other end of the negative (-) cable does not go to the dead battery. It goes to a heavy, unpainted metal engine part or to a remote negative (-) terminal on the vehicle with the dead battery.

9. Connect the other end of the negative (-) cable away from the dead battery, but not near engine parts that move. The electrical connection is just as good there, and the chance of sparks getting back to the battery is much less.
10. Now start the vehicle with the good battery and run the engine for a while.
11. Press the unlock symbol on the remote keyless entry transmitter to disarm your security system, if equipped.
12. Try to start the vehicle that had the dead battery. If it will not start after a few tries, it probably needs service.

**Notice:** If the jumper cables are connected or removed in the wrong order, electrical shorting may occur and damage the vehicle. The repairs would not be covered by your warranty. Always connect and remove the jumper cables in the correct order, making sure that the cables do not touch each other or other metal.



**Jumper Cable Removal**

- A. Heavy, Unpainted Metal Engine Part or Remote Negative (-) Terminal
- B. Good Battery or Remote Positive (+) and Remote Negative (-) Terminals
- C. Dead Battery or Remote Positive (+) Terminal

To disconnect the jumper cables from both vehicles, do the following:

1. Disconnect the black negative (-) cable from the vehicle that had the dead battery.
2. Disconnect the black negative (-) cable from the vehicle with the good battery.
3. Disconnect the red positive (+) cable from the vehicle with the good battery.
4. Disconnect the red positive (+) cable from the other vehicle.
5. Return the underhood fuse block cover to its original position, if applicable.

## All-Wheel Drive

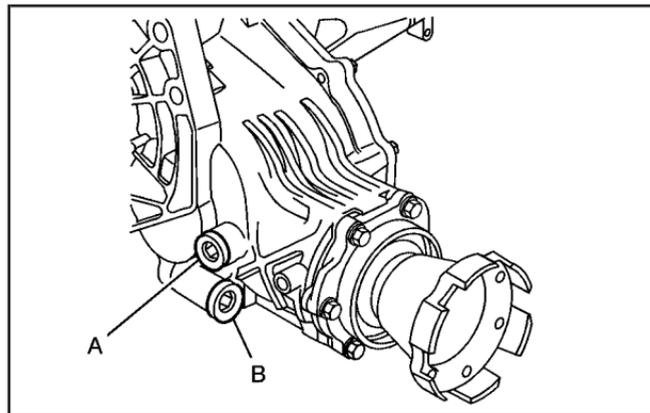
If you have an all-wheel-drive vehicle, be sure to perform the lubricant checks described in this section.

### Transfer Case

#### When to Check and Change Lubricant

Refer to the Maintenance Schedule to determine how often to check the lubricant and when to change it. See *Scheduled Maintenance on page 6-3*.

## How to Check Lubricant



- A. Fill Plug
- B. Drain Plug

To get an accurate reading, the vehicle should be on a level surface.

If the level is below the bottom of the filler plug hole, located on the transfer case, you'll need to add some lubricant. Add enough lubricant to raise the level to the bottom of the filler plug hole. A fluid loss could indicate a problem; check and have it repaired, if needed.

## What to Use

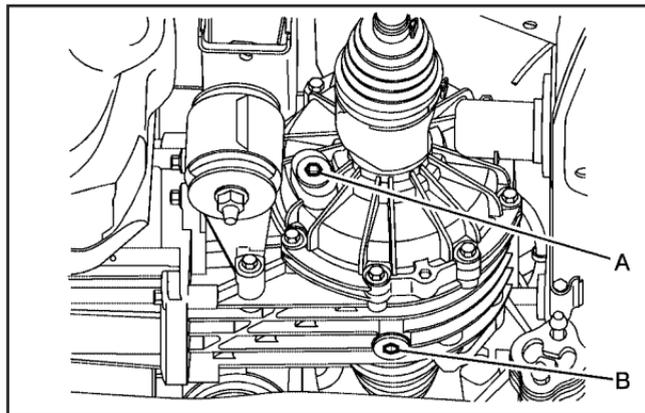
Refer to the Maintenance Schedule to determine what kind of lubricant to use. See *Recommended Fluids and Lubricants* on page 6-13.

## Carrier Assembly-Differential (Rear Drive Module)

### When to Check and Change Lubricant

Refer to the Maintenance Schedule to determine how often to check the lubricant and when to change it. See *Scheduled Maintenance* on page 6-3

## How to Check Lubricant



**AWD Differential Case**

- A. Fill Plug
- B. Drain Plug

To get an accurate reading, the vehicle should be on a level surface.

If the level is below the bottom of the filler plug hole, you'll need to add some lubricant. Add enough lubricant to raise the level to the bottom of the filler plug hole. A fluid loss could indicate a problem; check and have it repaired, if needed.

## What to Use

Refer to the Maintenance Schedule to determine what kind of lubricant to use. See *Recommended Fluids and Lubricants on page 6-13*.

## Headlamp Aiming

The visual optical headlamp aiming system has been preset at the factory and should need no further adjustment.

However, if the vehicle is damaged in a crash, the aim of the headlamps may be affected and adjustment may be necessary.

If oncoming vehicles flash their high beams at you, this may mean the vertical aim of your headlamps needs to be adjusted.

It is recommended that the vehicle is taken to your dealer/retailer for service if the headlamps need to be adjusted. It is possible however, to re-aim the headlamps as described.

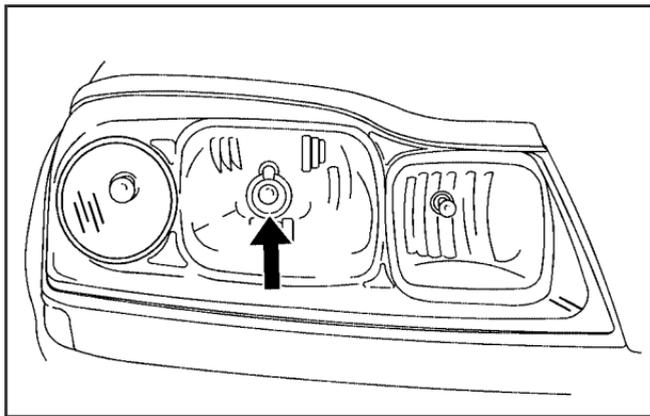
The vehicle should:

- Be placed so the headlamps are 25 ft. (7.6 m) from a light colored wall.
- Have all four tires on a level surface which is level all the way to the wall.
- Be placed so it is perpendicular to the wall or other flat surface.
- Not have any snow, ice, or mud on it.
- Be fully assembled and all other work stopped while headlamp aiming is being performed.
- Normally loaded with a full tank of fuel and one person or 160 lbs (75 kg) sitting on the driver seat.
- Have all tires properly inflated.
- Have the spare tire is in its proper location.

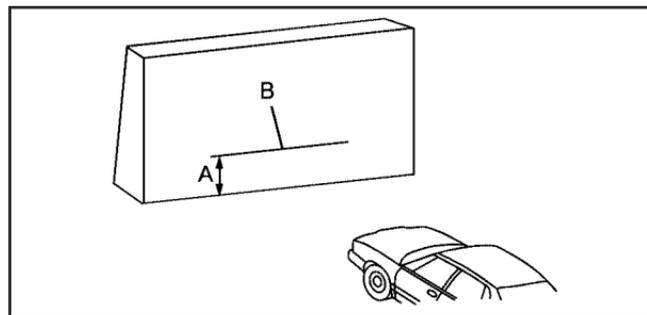
Headlamp aiming is done with the vehicle's low-beam headlamps. The high-beam headlamps will be correctly aimed if the low-beam headlamps are aimed properly.

To adjust the vertical aim:

1. Open the hood. See *Hood Release on page 5-11* for more information.



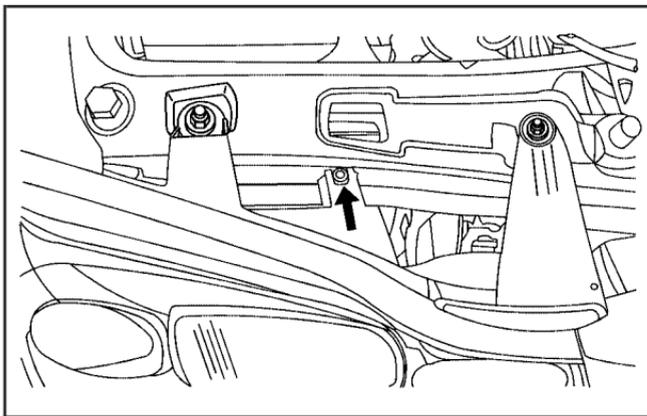
2. Locate the aim dot on the lens of the low-beam headlamp.
3. Measure the distance from the ground to the aim dot on the low-beam headlamp. Record the distance.



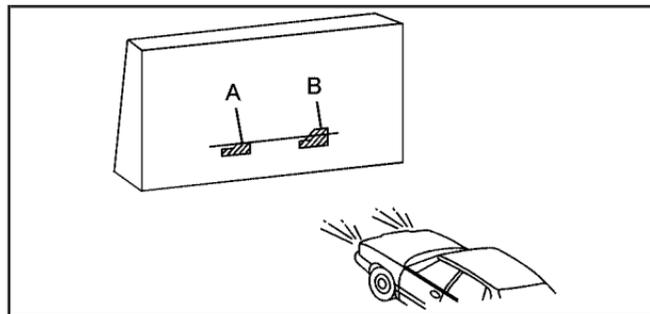
4. At the wall measure from the ground upward (A) to the recorded distance from Step 3 and mark it.
5. Draw or tape a horizontal line (B) on the wall the width of the vehicle at the height of the mark in Step 4.

**Notice:** Do not cover a headlamp to improve beam cut-off when aiming. Covering a headlamp may cause excessive heat build-up which may cause damage to the headlamp.

6. Turn on the low-beam headlamps and place a piece of cardboard or equivalent in front of the headlamp not being adjusted. This allows only the beam of light from the headlamp being adjusted to be seen on the flat surface.



7. Locate the vertical headlamp aiming screws, which are under the hood near each headlamp assembly. The adjustment screw can be turned with a 6 mm socket.
8. Turn the vertical aiming screw until the headlamp beam is aimed to the horizontal tape line. Turn it clockwise or counterclockwise to raise or lower the angle of the beam.



9. Make sure that the light from the headlamp is positioned at the bottom edge of the horizontal tape line. The lamp on the left (A) shows the correct headlamp aim. The lamp on the right (B) shows the incorrect headlamp aim.
10. Repeat Steps 7 through 9 for the opposite headlamp.

## Bulb Replacement

For the proper type of replacement bulbs, see *Replacement Bulbs on page 5-49*.

For any bulb changing procedure not listed in this section, contact your dealer/retailer.

## Halogen Bulbs

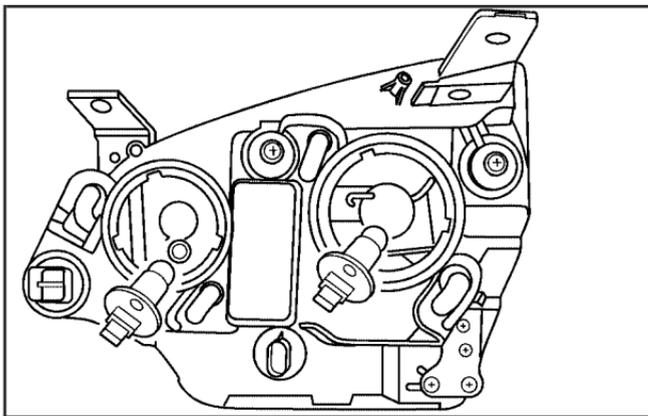
### CAUTION:

**Halogen bulbs have pressurized gas inside and can burst if you drop or scratch the bulb. You or others could be injured. Be sure to read and follow the instructions on the bulb package.**

## Headlamps

To replace one of the headlamp bulbs, use the following procedure. To replace the parking/turn signal lamp bulb, see *Front Turn Signal and Parking Lamps on page 5-47*.

1. Open the hood. See *Hood Release on page 5-11* for more information.
2. Remove the two screws from the top of the front fascia and grille. They are inboard of the headlamp assembly.
3. Remove the three screws retaining the headlamp assembly.
4. Insert a flat blade tool through the opening in the top. Make sure the tool fits through the opening in the headlamp bracket lower arm.
5. Push the locking tab toward the rear of the vehicle with the tool to lift the headlamp bracket lower arm.
6. Pull back on the front fascia and then pull the headlamp assembly out from the vehicle. Another person might be needed to assist with this step.

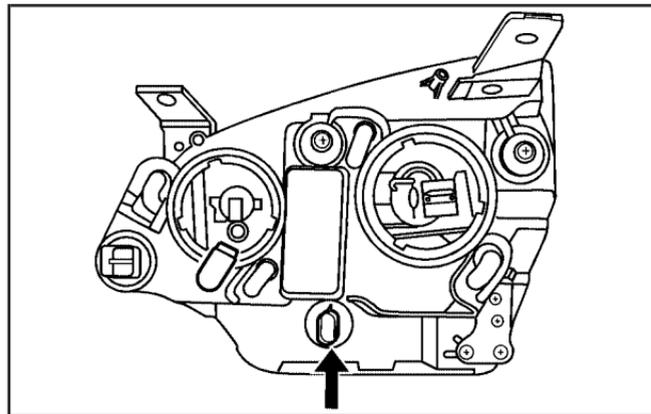


7. Disconnect the electrical connector from the bulb assembly.
8. Turn the bulb assembly counterclockwise to remove it from the housing.
9. Replace the old bulb with a new one.
10. Reverse Steps 1 through 8 to reinstall.

## Front Turn Signal and Parking Lamps

To replace a front turn signal or parking lamp bulb:

1. Follow Steps 1 through 6 under *Headlamps on page 5-46* to access the front turn signal or parking lamp.

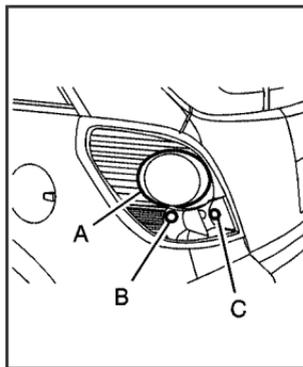


2. Turn the bulb to be replaced counterclockwise to remove it from the headlamp assembly.
3. Pull the bulb out of the bulb socket assembly.
4. Push the new bulb into the bulb socket assembly.

5. Insert the bulb assembly into the headlamp assembly.
6. Turn the bulb assembly clockwise until seated.
7. Reverse the steps to reinstall the headlamp assembly.

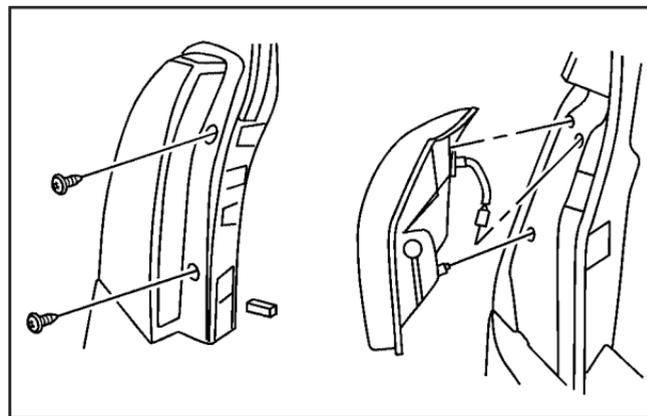
## Taillamps, Turn Signal, Stoplamps and Back-up Lamps

To replace one of these bulbs:



- A. Taillamp/Stoplamp
- B. Turn Signal Lamp
- C. Back-up Lamp

1. Open the liftgate.

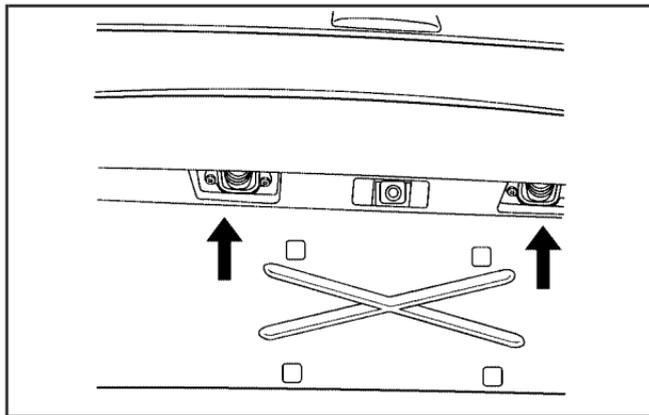


2. Remove the two screws holding in the taillamp assembly.
3. Slide the taillamp assembly rearward and away from the vehicle.
4. Turn the bulb socket being replaced counterclockwise to disconnect it.
5. Pull the bulb out of the bulb socket.
6. Push the new bulb into the bulb socket.
7. Reverse Steps 2 through 4 to reinstall the taillamp assembly.

## License Plate Lamp

To replace one of these bulbs:

1. Remove the two screws holding each of the license plate lamps to the fascia.



2. Turn and pull the license plate lamp forward through the fascia opening.

3. Turn the bulb socket counterclockwise and pull the bulb straight out of the socket.
4. Install the new bulb.
5. Reverse Steps 1 through 3 to reinstall the license plate lamp.

## Replacement Bulbs

Exterior Lamp	Bulb Number
Back-up Lamp	3157K LL
Front Turn Signal/Parking Lamp	3457NAK
High-Beam Headlamp	9005LL
Low-Beam Headlamp	H11
Rear Turn Signal Lamp	4157NAK
Stoptail/Taillamp	3157K LL

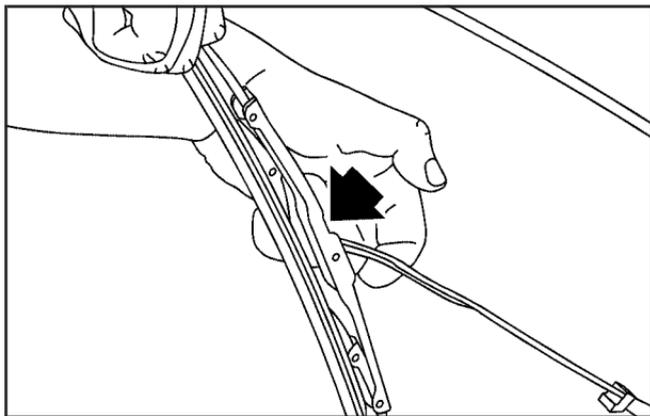
For replacement bulbs not listed here, contact your dealer/retailer.

# Windshield Wiper Blade Replacement

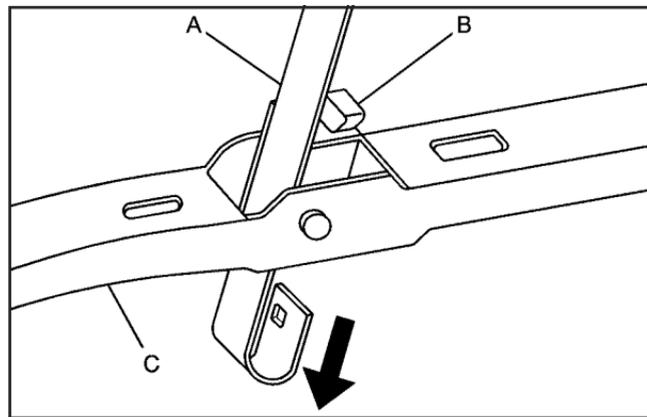
Windshield wiper blades should be inspected for wear and cracking. See *Scheduled Maintenance on page 6-3* for more information.

Replacement blades come in different types and are removed in different ways. For proper type and length, see *Maintenance Replacement Parts on page 6-15*.

To replace the windshield wiper blade assembly do the following:



1. Lift the wiper arm away from the windshield.



2. Push the release lever (B) to disengage the hook and push the wiper arm (A) out of the blade (C).
3. Push the new wiper blade securely on the wiper arm until you hear the release lever click into place.

To replace the rear wiper blade, lift the rear wiper arm from the window and pull the blade.

# Tires

Your new vehicle comes with high-quality tires made by a leading tire manufacturer. If you ever have questions about your tire warranty and where to obtain service, see your vehicle Warranty booklet for details.

## CAUTION:

- Poorly maintained and improperly used tires are dangerous.
- Overloading your tires can cause overheating as a result of too much flexing. You could have an air-out and a serious accident. See *Loading Your Vehicle on page 4-35*.

CAUTION: (Continued)

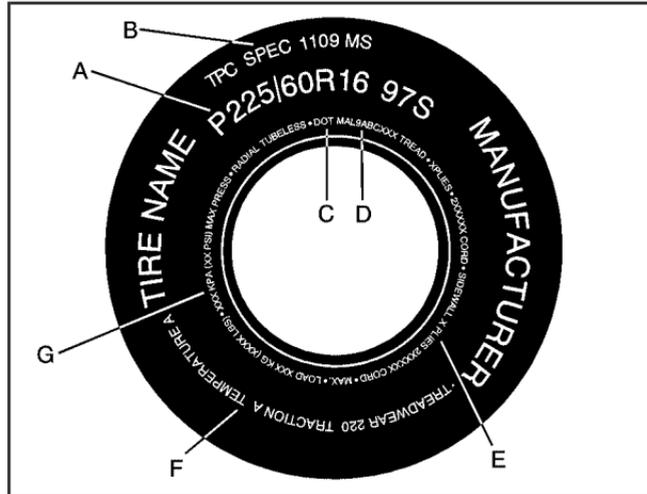
## CAUTION: (Continued)

- Underinflated tires pose the same danger as overloaded tires. The resulting accident could cause serious injury. Check all tires frequently to maintain the recommended pressure. Tire pressure should be checked when your tires are cold. See *Inflation - Tire Pressure on page 5-58*.
- Overinflated tires are more likely to be cut, punctured, or broken by a sudden impact — such as when you hit a pothole. Keep tires at the recommended pressure.
- Worn, old tires can cause accidents. If your tread is badly worn, or if your tires have been damaged, replace them.

See *High-Speed Operation on page 5-59* for inflation pressure adjustment for high speed driving.

## Tire Sidewall Labeling

Useful information about a tire is molded into its sidewall. The examples below show a typical passenger vehicle tire and a compact spare tire sidewall.



Passenger (P-Metric) Tire Example

**(A) Tire Size:** The tire size is a combination of letters and numbers used to define a particular tire's width, height, aspect ratio, construction type, and service description. See the "Tire Size" illustration later in this section for more detail.

**(B) TPC Spec (Tire Performance Criteria Specification):** Original equipment tires designed to GM's specific tire performance criteria have a TPC specification code molded onto the sidewall. GM's TPC specifications meet or exceed all federal safety guidelines.

**(C) DOT (Department of Transportation):** The Department of Transportation (DOT) code indicates that the tire is in compliance with the U.S. Department of Transportation Motor Vehicle Safety Standards.

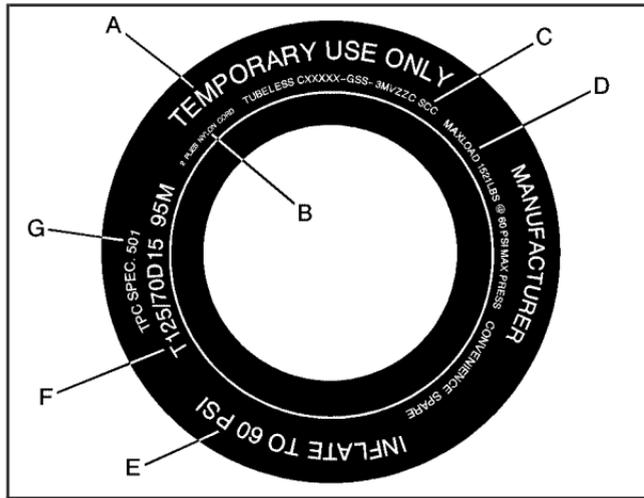
**(D) Tire Identification Number (TIN):** The letters and numbers following DOT (Department of Transportation) code is the Tire Identification Number (TIN). The TIN shows the manufacturer and plant code, tire size, and date the tire was manufactured. The TIN is molded onto both sides of the tire, although only one side may have the date of manufacture.

**(E) Tire Ply Material:** The type of cord and number of plies in the sidewall and under the tread.

**(F) Uniform Tire Quality Grading (UTQG):** Tire manufacturers are required to grade tires based on three performance factors: treadwear, traction, and temperature resistance. For more information see *Uniform Tire Quality Grading on page 5-70*.

**(G) Maximum Cold Inflation Load**

**Limit:** Maximum load that can be carried and the maximum pressure needed to support that load.



**Compact Spare Tire Example**

**(A) Temporary Use Only:** The compact spare tire or temporary use tire has a tread life of approximately 3,000 miles (5 000 km) and should not be driven at speeds over 65 mph (105 km/h). The compact spare tire is for emergency use when a regular road tire has lost air and gone flat. If your vehicle has a compact spare tire, see *Compact Spare Tire on page 5-86* and *If a Tire Goes Flat on page 5-75*.

**(B) Tire Ply Material:** The type of cord and number of plies in the sidewall and under the tread.

**(C) Tire Identification Number (TIN):** The letters and numbers following the DOT (Department of Transportation) code is the Tire Identification Number (TIN). The TIN shows the manufacturer and plant code, tire size, and date the tire was manufactured. The TIN is molded onto both sides of the tire, although only one side may have the date of manufacture.

**(D) Maximum Cold Inflation Load Limit:** Maximum load that can be carried and the maximum pressure needed to support that load.

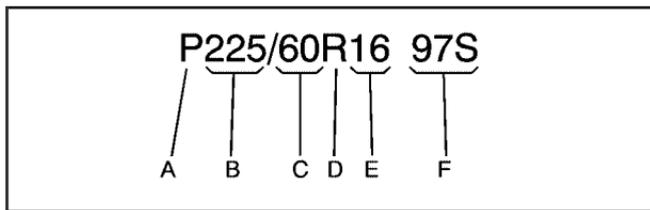
**(E) Tire Inflation:** The temporary use tire or compact spare tire should be inflated to 60 psi (420 kPa). For more information on tire pressure and inflation see *Inflation - Tire Pressure on page 5-58*.

**(F) Tire Size :** A combination of letters and numbers define a tire's width, height, aspect ratio, construction type, and service description. The letter T as the first character in the tire size means the tire is for temporary use only.

**(G) TPC Spec (Tire Performance Criteria Specification):** Original equipment tires designed to GM's specific tire performance criteria have a TPC specification code molded onto the sidewall. GM's TPC specifications meet or exceed all federal safety guidelines.

### Tire Size

The following illustration shows an example of a typical passenger vehicle tire size.



**(A) Passenger (P-Metric) Tire:** The United States version of a metric tire sizing system. The letter P as the first character in the tire size means a passenger vehicle tire engineered to standards set by the U.S. Tire and Rim Association.

**(B) Tire Width:** The three-digit number indicates the tire section width in millimeters from sidewall to sidewall.

**(C) Aspect Ratio:** A two-digit number that indicates the tire height-to-width measurements. For example, if the tire size aspect ratio is 60, as shown in item C of the illustration, it would mean that the tire's sidewall is 60 percent as high as it is wide.

**(D) Construction Code:** A letter code is used to indicate the type of ply construction in the tire. The letter R means radial ply construction; the letter D means diagonal or bias ply construction; and the letter B means belted-bias ply construction.

**(E) Rim Diameter:** Diameter of the wheel in inches.

**(F) Service Description:** These characters represent the load range and speed rating of the tire. The load index represents the load carry capacity a tire is certified to carry. The load index can range from 1 to 279. The speed rating is the maximum speed a tire is certified to carry a load. Speed ratings range from A to Z.

## Tire Terminology and Definitions

**Air Pressure:** The amount of air inside the tire pressing outward on each square inch of the tire. Air pressure is expressed in pounds per square inch (psi) or kilopascal (kPa).

**Accessory Weight:** This means the combined weight of optional accessories. Some examples of optional accessories are, automatic transmission, power steering, power brakes, power windows, power seats, and air conditioning.

**Aspect Ratio:** The relationship of a tire's height to its width.

**Belt:** A rubber coated layer of cords that is located between the plies and the tread. Cords may be made from steel or other reinforcing materials.

**Bead:** The tire bead contains steel wires wrapped by steel cords that hold the tire onto the rim.

**Bias Ply Tire:** A pneumatic tire in which the plies are laid at alternate angles less than 90 degrees to the centerline of the tread.

**Cold Tire Pressure:** The amount of air pressure in a tire, measured in pounds per square inch (psi) or kilopascals (kPa) before a tire has built up heat from driving. See *Inflation - Tire Pressure on page 5-58*.

**Curb Weight:** The weight of a motor vehicle with standard and optional equipment including the maximum capacity of fuel, oil, and coolant, but without passengers and cargo.

**DOT Markings:** A code molded into the sidewall of a tire signifying that the tire is in compliance with the U.S. Department of Transportation (DOT) motor vehicle safety standards. The DOT code includes the Tire Identification Number (TIN), an alphanumeric designator which can also identify the tire manufacturer, production plant, brand, and date of production.

**GVWR:** Gross Vehicle Weight Rating. See *Loading Your Vehicle on page 4-35*.

**GAWR FRT:** Gross Axle Weight Rating for the front axle. See *Loading Your Vehicle on page 4-35*.

**GAWR RR:** Gross Axle Weight Rating for the rear axle. See *Loading Your Vehicle on page 4-35*.

**Intended Outboard Sidewall:** The side of an asymmetrical tire, that must always face outward when mounted on a vehicle.

**Kilopascal (kPa):** The metric unit for air pressure.

**Light Truck (LT-Metric) Tire:** A tire used on light duty trucks and some multipurpose passenger vehicles.

**Load Index:** An assigned number ranging from 1 to 279 that corresponds to the load carrying capacity of a tire.

**Maximum Inflation Pressure:** The maximum air pressure to which a cold tire can be inflated. The maximum air pressure is molded onto the sidewall.

**Maximum Load Rating:** The load rating for a tire at the maximum permissible inflation pressure for that tire.

**Maximum Loaded Vehicle Weight:** The sum of curb weight, accessory weight, vehicle capacity weight, and production options weight.

**Normal Occupant Weight:** The number of occupants a vehicle is designed to seat multiplied by 150 lbs (68 kg). See *Loading Your Vehicle on page 4-35*.

**Occupant Distribution:** Designated seating positions.

**Outward Facing Sidewall:** The side of an asymmetrical tire that has a particular side that faces outward when mounted on a vehicle. The side of the tire that contains a whitewall, bears white lettering, or bears manufacturer, brand, and/or model name molding that is higher or deeper than the same moldings on the other sidewall of the tire.

**Passenger (P-Metric) Tire:** A tire used on passenger cars and some light duty trucks and multipurpose vehicles.

**Recommended Inflation Pressure:** Vehicle manufacturer's recommended tire inflation pressure as shown on the tire placard. See *Inflation - Tire Pressure on page 5-58* and *Loading Your Vehicle on page 4-35*.

**Radial Ply Tire:** A pneumatic tire in which the ply cords that extend to the beads are laid at 90 degrees to the centerline of the tread.

**Rim:** A metal support for a tire and upon which the tire beads are seated.

**Sidewall:** The portion of a tire between the tread and the bead.

**Speed Rating:** An alphanumeric code assigned to a tire indicating the maximum speed at which a tire can operate.

**Traction:** The friction between the tire and the road surface. The amount of grip provided.

**Tread:** The portion of a tire that comes into contact with the road.

**Treadwear Indicators:** Narrow bands, sometimes called wear bars, that show across the tread of a tire when only 1/16 inch (1.6 mm) of tread remains. See *When It Is Time for New Tires on page 5-67*.

**UTQGS (Uniform Tire Quality Grading Standards):** A tire information system that provides consumers with ratings for a tire's traction, temperature, and treadwear. Ratings are determined by tire manufacturers using government testing procedures. The ratings are molded into the sidewall of the tire. See *Uniform Tire Quality Grading on page 5-70*.

**Vehicle Capacity Weight:** The number of designated seating positions multiplied by 150 lbs (68 kg) plus the rated cargo load. See *Loading Your Vehicle on page 4-35*.

**Vehicle Maximum Load on the Tire:** Load on an individual tire due to curb weight, accessory weight, occupant weight, and cargo weight.

**Vehicle Placard:** A label permanently attached to a vehicle showing the vehicle's capacity weight and the original equipment tire size and recommended inflation pressure. See "Tire and Loading Information Label" under *Loading Your Vehicle on page 4-35*.

## Inflation - Tire Pressure

Tires need the correct amount of air pressure to operate effectively.

**Notice:** Do not let anyone tell you that under-inflation or over-inflation is all right. It is not. If your tires do not have enough air (under-inflation), you can get the following:

- Too much flexing
- Too much heat
- Tire overloading
- Premature or irregular wear
- Poor handling
- Reduced fuel economy

If your tires have too much air (over-inflation), you can get the following:

- Unusual wear
- Poor handling
- Rough ride
- Needless damage from road hazards

A vehicle specific Tire and Loading Information label is attached to your vehicle. This label shows your vehicle's original equipment tires and the correct inflation pressures for your tires when they are cold. The recommended cold tire inflation pressure, shown on the label, is the minimum amount of air pressure needed to support your vehicle's maximum load carrying capacity.

For additional information regarding how much weight your vehicle can carry, and an example of the Tire and Loading Information label, see *Loading Your Vehicle on page 4-35*. How you load your vehicle affects vehicle handling and ride comfort. Never load your vehicle with more weight than it was designed to carry.

### When to Check

Check your tires once a month or more. Do not forget to check the compact spare tire, it should be at 60 psi (420 kPa). For additional information regarding the compact spare tire, see *Compact Spare Tire on page 5-86*.

## How to Check

Use a good quality pocket-type gage to check tire pressure. You cannot tell if your tires are properly inflated simply by looking at them. Radial tires may look properly inflated even when they are under-inflated. Check the tire's inflation pressure when the tires are cold. Cold means your vehicle has been sitting for at least three hours or driven no more than 1 mile (1.6 km).

Remove the valve cap from the tire valve stem. Press the tire gage firmly onto the valve to get a pressure measurement. If the cold tire inflation pressure matches the recommended pressure on the Tire and Loading Information label, no further adjustment is necessary. If the inflation pressure is low, add air until you reach the recommended amount.

If you overfill the tire, release air by pushing on the metal stem in the center of the tire valve. Re-check the tire pressure with the tire gage.

Be sure to put the valve caps back on the valve stems. They help prevent leaks by keeping out dirt and moisture.

## High-Speed Operation

### CAUTION:

**Driving at high speeds, 100 mph (160 km/h) or higher, puts an additional strain on tires. Sustained high-speed driving causes excessive heat build up and can cause sudden tire failure. You could have a crash and you or others could be killed. Some high-speed rated tires require inflation pressure adjustment for high speed operation. When speed limits and road conditions are such that a vehicle can be driven at high speeds, make sure the tires are rated for high speed operation, in excellent condition, and set to the correct cold tire inflation pressure for the vehicle load.**

If your vehicle has P235/55R18 size tires, they will require inflation pressure adjustment when driving your vehicle at speeds of 100 mph (160 km/h) or higher. Set the cold inflation pressure to the maximum inflation pressure shown on the tire sidewall, or 38 psi (262 kPa), whichever is lower. See the example following.

When you end this high-speed driving, return the tires to the cold tire inflation pressure shown on the Tire and Loading Information label. See *Loading Your Vehicle on page 4-35* and *Inflation - Tire Pressure on page 5-58*.

Example:

You will find the maximum load and inflation pressure molded on the tire's sidewall, in small letters, near the rim flange. It will read something like this: Maximum load 690 kg (1521 lbs) 300 kPa (44 psi) Max. Press.

For this example, you would set the inflation pressure for high-speed driving at 38 psi (262 kPa).

## Tire Pressure Monitor System

The Tire Pressure Monitor System (TPMS) uses radio and sensor technology to check tire pressure levels. The TPMS sensors monitor the air pressure in your vehicle's tires and transmit tire pressure readings to a receiver located in the vehicle.

Each tire, including the spare (if provided), should be checked monthly when cold and inflated to the inflation pressure recommended by the vehicle manufacturer on the vehicle placard or tire inflation pressure label.

(If your vehicle has tires of a different size than the size indicated on the vehicle placard or tire inflation pressure label, you should determine the proper tire inflation pressure for those tires.)

As an added safety feature, your vehicle has been equipped with a tire pressure monitoring system (TPMS) that illuminates a low tire pressure telltale when one or more of your tires is significantly under-inflated.

Accordingly, when the low tire pressure telltale illuminates, you should stop and check your tires as soon as possible, and inflate them to the proper pressure. Driving on a significantly under-inflated tire causes the tire to overheat and can lead to tire failure. Under-inflation also reduces fuel efficiency and tire tread life, and may affect the vehicle's handling and stopping ability.

Please note that the TPMS is not a substitute for proper tire maintenance, and it is the driver's responsibility to maintain correct tire pressure, even if under-inflation has not reached the level to trigger illumination of the TPMS low tire pressure telltale.

Your vehicle has also been equipped with a TPMS malfunction indicator to indicate when the system is not operating properly. The TPMS malfunction indicator is combined with the low tire pressure telltale. When the system detects a malfunction, the telltale will flash for approximately one minute and then remain continuously illuminated. This sequence will continue upon subsequent vehicle start-ups as long as the malfunction exists.

When the malfunction indicator is illuminated, the system may not be able to detect or signal low tire pressure as intended. TPMS malfunctions may occur for a variety of reasons, including the installation of replacement or alternate tires or wheels on the vehicle that prevent the TPMS from functioning properly. Always check the TPMS malfunction telltale after replacing one or more tires or wheels on your vehicle to ensure that the replacement or alternate tires and wheels allow the TPMS to continue to function properly.

See *Tire Pressure Monitor Operation on page 5-62* for additional information.

## **Federal Communications Commission (FCC) and Industry and Science Canada**

The Tire Pressure Monitor System (TPMS) operates on a radio frequency and complies with Part 15 of the FCC Rules. Operation is subject to the following two conditions:

1. This device may not cause harmful interference.
2. This device must accept any interference received, including interference that may cause undesired operation.

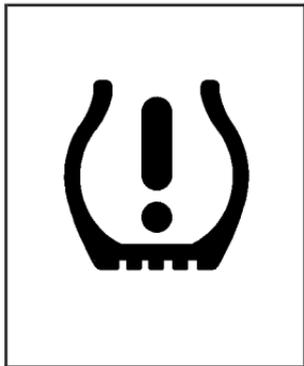
The TPMS operates on a radio frequency and complies with RSS-210 of Industry and Science Canada. Operation is subject to the following two conditions:

1. This device may not cause interference.
2. This device must accept any interference received, including interference that may cause undesired operation of the device.

Changes or modifications to this system by other than an authorized service facility could void authorization to use this equipment.

## Tire Pressure Monitor Operation

The Tire Pressure Monitor System (TPMS) is designed to warn the driver when a low tire pressure condition exists. TPMS sensors are mounted onto each tire and wheel assembly, excluding the spare tire and wheel assembly. The TPMS sensors monitor the air pressure in the vehicle's tires and transmit the tire pressure readings to a receiver located in the vehicle.



When a low tire pressure condition is detected, the TPMS illuminates the low tire pressure warning light on the instrument panel cluster.

The low tire pressure warning light comes on at each ignition cycle until the tires are inflated to the correct inflation pressure.

The low tire pressure warning light may come on in cool weather when the vehicle is first started, and then turn off as you start to drive. This may be an early indicator that the air pressure in the tire(s) are getting low and need to be inflated to the proper pressure.

A Tire and Loading Information label, attached to your vehicle, shows the size of your vehicle's original equipment tires and the correct inflation pressure for your vehicle's tires when they are cold. See *Loading Your Vehicle* on page 4-35, for an example of the Tire and Loading Information label and its location on your vehicle. Also see *Inflation - Tire Pressure* on page 5-58.

Your vehicle's TPMS system can warn you about a low tire pressure condition but it does not replace normal tire maintenance. See *Tire Inspection and Rotation* on page 5-65 and *Tires* on page 5-51.

**Notice:** Liquid tire sealants could damage the Tire Pressure Monitor System (TPMS) sensors. Sensor damage caused by using a tire sealant is not covered by your warranty. Do not use liquid tire sealants.

## TPMS Malfunction Light

The TPMS will not function properly if one or more of the TPMS sensors are missing or inoperable. When the system detects a malfunction, the low tire warning light flashes for about one minute and then stays on for the remainder of the ignition cycle. The TPMS malfunction light comes on at each ignition cycle until the problem is corrected. Some of the conditions that can cause the malfunction light to come on are:

- One of the road tires has been replaced with the spare tire. The spare tire does not have a TPMS sensor. The TPMS malfunction light should go off once you re-install the road tire containing the TPMS sensor.
- The TPMS sensor matching process was started but not completed or not completed successfully after rotating the vehicle's tires. The TPMS malfunction light should go off once the TPMS sensor matching process is performed successfully. See "TPMS Sensor Matching Process" later in this section.
- One or more TPMS sensors are missing or damaged. The TPMS malfunction light should go off when the TPMS sensors are installed and the sensor matching process is performed successfully. See your dealer/retailer for service.
- Replacement tires or wheels do not match your vehicle's original equipment tires or wheels. Tires and wheels other than those recommended for your vehicle could prevent the TPMS from functioning properly. See *Buying New Tires on page 5-68*.
- Operating electronic devices or being near facilities using radio wave frequencies similar to the TPMS could cause the TPMS sensors to malfunction.

## TPMS Sensor Matching Process

Each TPMS sensor has a unique identification code. Any time you replace one or more of the TPMS sensors or rotate the vehicle's tires, the identification codes will need to be matched to the new tire/wheel position. The sensors are matched, to the tire/wheel positions, in the following order: driver side front tire, passenger side front tire, passenger side rear tire, and driver side rear tire using a TPMS diagnostic tool. See your dealer/retailer for service.

The TPMS sensors can also be matched to each tire/wheel position by increasing or decreasing the tire's air pressure. When increasing the tire's pressure, do not exceed the maximum inflation pressure indicated on the tire's sidewall. To decrease the tire's air-pressure use the pointed end of the valve cap, a pencil-style air pressure gage, or a key.

You have two minutes to match each tire and wheel position. If it takes longer than two minutes to match any tire and wheel position, the matching process stops and you will need to start over.

The TPMS matching process is outlined below:

1. Set the parking brake.
2. Turn the ignition switch to ON/RUN with the engine off.
3. Press and hold the RKE transmitter's Lock and Unlock buttons at the same time, for about three seconds. The horn will sound twice to indicate the receiver is ready for the sensor matching process to begin.
4. Start with the driver side front tire. The driver side turn signal lamp comes on.
5. Remove the valve cap from the tire's valve stem. Activate the TPMS sensor by increasing or decreasing the tire's air pressure for five seconds, or until a horn chirp sounds. The horn chirp, which may take up to 30 seconds to sound, confirms that the sensor identification code has been matched to the tire/wheel position.

6. Proceed to the passenger side front tire. The passenger side front turn signal lamp comes on. Repeat the procedure in Step 5.
7. Proceed to the passenger side rear tire. The passenger side rear turn signal lamp comes on. Repeat the procedure in Step 5.
8. Proceed to the driver side rear tire. The driver side rear turn signal lamp comes on. Repeat the procedure in Step 5. The horn sounds two times to indicate the sensor identification code has been matched to the driver side rear tire, and the TPMS sensor matching process is no longer active.
9. Turn the ignition switch to LOCK/OFF.
10. Set all four tires to the recommended air pressure level as indicated on the Tire and Loading Information label.
11. Put the valve caps back on the valve stems.

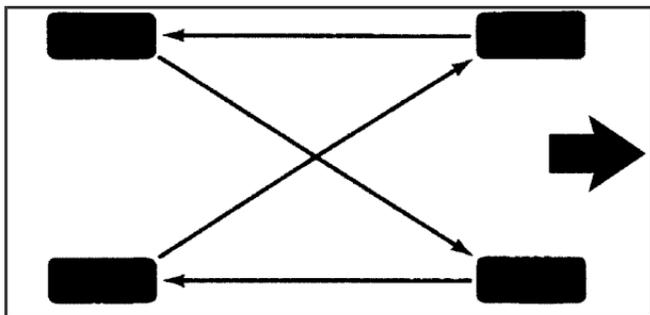
## Tire Inspection and Rotation

We recommend that you regularly inspect your vehicle's tires, including the spare tire, for signs of wear or damage. See *When It Is Time for New Tires on page 5-67* for more information.

Tires should be rotated every 5,000 to 8,000 miles (8 000 to 13 000 km). See *Scheduled Maintenance on page 6-3*.

The purpose of a regular tire rotation is to achieve a uniform wear for all tires on the vehicle. This will ensure that your vehicle continues to perform most like it did when the tires were new.

Any time you notice unusual wear, rotate your tires as soon as possible and check wheel alignment. Also check for damaged tires or wheels. See *When It Is Time for New Tires on page 5-67* and *Wheel Replacement on page 5-73*.



When rotating your vehicle's tires, always use the correct rotation pattern shown here.

Do not include the compact spare tire in the tire rotation.

After the tires have been rotated, adjust the front and rear inflation pressures as shown on the Tire and Loading Information label. See *Inflation - Tire Pressure* on page 5-58 and *Loading Your Vehicle* on page 4-35.

Reset the Tire Pressure Monitor System. See *Tire Pressure Monitor Operation* on page 5-62.

Make certain that all wheel nuts are properly tightened. See "Wheel Nut Torque" under *Capacities and Specifications* on page 5-104.

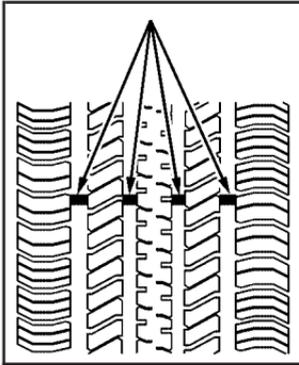
**⚠ CAUTION:**

**Rust or dirt on a wheel, or on the parts to which it is fastened, can make wheel nuts become loose after time. The wheel could come off and cause an accident. When you change a wheel, remove any rust or dirt from places where the wheel attaches to the vehicle. In an emergency, you can use a cloth or a paper towel to do this; but be sure to use a scraper or wire brush later, if needed, to get all the rust or dirt off. See *Changing a Flat Tire* on page 5-76.**

Make sure the spare tire is stored securely. Push, pull, and then try to rotate or turn the tire. If it moves, tighten the cable. See *Storing a Flat or Spare Tire and Tools* on page 5-85.

## When It Is Time for New Tires

Various factors, such as maintenance, temperatures, driving speeds, vehicle loading, and road conditions influence when you need new tires.



One way to tell when it is time for new tires is to check the treadwear indicators, which will appear when your tires have only 1/16 inch (1.6 mm) or less of tread remaining.

You need new tires if any of the following statements are true:

- You can see the indicators at three or more places around the tire.
- You can see cord or fabric showing through the tire's rubber.
- The tread or sidewall is cracked, cut, or snagged deep enough to show cord or fabric.
- The tire has a bump, bulge, or split.
- The tire has a puncture, cut, or other damage that cannot be repaired well because of the size or location of the damage.

The rubber in tires degrades over time, even if they are not being used. This is also true for the spare tire, if your vehicle has one. Multiple conditions affect how fast this aging takes place, including temperatures, loading conditions, and inflation pressure maintenance. With proper care and maintenance tires will typically wear out before they degrade due to age. If you are unsure about the need to replace your tires as they get older, consult the tire manufacturer for more information.

## Buying New Tires

GM has developed and matched specific tires for your vehicle. The original equipment tires installed on your vehicle, when it was new, were designed to meet General Motors Tire Performance Criteria Specification (TPC Spec) system rating. If you need replacement tires, GM strongly recommends that you get tires with the same TPC Spec rating. This way, your vehicle will continue to have tires that are designed to give the same performance and vehicle safety, during normal use, as the original tires.

GM's exclusive TPC Spec system considers over a dozen critical specifications that impact the overall performance of your vehicle, including brake system performance, ride and handling, traction control, and tire pressure monitoring performance. GM's TPC Spec number is molded onto the tire's sidewall near the tire size. If the tires have an all-season tread design, the TPC Spec number will be followed by an MS for mud and snow. See *Tire Sidewall Labeling on page 5-52* for additional information.

GM recommends replacing tires in sets of four. This is because uniform tread depth on all tires will help keep your vehicle performing most like it did when the tires were new. Replacing less than a full set of tires can affect the braking and handling performance of your vehicle. See *Tire Inspection and Rotation on page 5-65* for information on proper tire rotation.

### CAUTION:

**Mixing tires could cause you to lose control while driving. If you mix tires of different sizes, brands, or types (radial and bias-belted tires), the vehicle may not handle properly, and you could have a crash. Using tires of different sizes, brands, or types may also cause damage to your vehicle. Be sure to use the correct size, brand, and type of tires on all wheels. It is all right to drive with your compact spare temporarily, as it was developed for use on your vehicle. See *Compact Spare Tire on page 5-86*.**

 **CAUTION:**

**If you use bias-ply tires on your vehicle, the wheel rim flanges could develop cracks after many miles of driving. A tire and/or wheel could fail suddenly, causing a crash. Use only radial-ply tires with the wheels on your vehicle.**

If you must replace your vehicle's tires with those that do not have a TPC Spec number, make sure they are the same size, load range, speed rating, and construction type (radial and bias-belted tires) as your vehicle's original tires.

Vehicles that have a tire pressure monitoring system could give an inaccurate low-pressure warning if non-TPC Spec rated tires are installed on your vehicle. Non-TPC Spec rated tires may give a low-pressure warning that is higher or lower than the proper warning level you would get with TPC Spec rated tires. See *Tire Pressure Monitor System* on page 5-60.

Your vehicle's original equipment tires are listed on the Tire and Loading Information Label. See *Loading Your Vehicle* on page 4-35, for more information about the Tire and Loading Information Label and its location on your vehicle.

## Different Size Tires and Wheels

If you add wheels or tires that are a different size than your original equipment wheels and tires, this may affect the way your vehicle performs, including its braking, ride and handling characteristics, stability, and resistance to rollover. Additionally, if your vehicle has electronic systems such as, anti-lock brakes, rollover airbags, traction control, and stability control, the performance of these systems can be affected.

### CAUTION:

**If you add different sized wheels, your vehicle may not provide an acceptable level of performance and safety if tires not recommended for those wheels are selected. You may increase the chance that you will crash and suffer serious injury. Only use Saturn specific wheel and tire systems developed for your vehicle, and have them properly installed by a Saturn certified technician.**

See *Buying New Tires on page 5-68* and *Accessories and Modifications on page 5-3* for additional information.

## Uniform Tire Quality Grading

Quality grades can be found where applicable on the tire sidewall between tread shoulder and maximum section width. For example:

### **Treadwear 200 Traction AA Temperature A**

The following information relates to the system developed by the United States National Highway Traffic Safety Administration (NHTSA), which grades tires by treadwear, traction, and temperature performance. This applies only to vehicles sold in the United States. The grades are molded on the sidewalls of most passenger car tires. The Uniform Tire Quality Grading (UTQG) system does not apply to deep tread, winter-type snow tires, space-saver, or temporary use spare tires, tires with nominal rim diameters of 10 to 12 inches (25 to 30 cm), or to some limited-production tires.

While the tires available on General Motors passenger cars and light trucks may vary with respect to these grades, they must also conform to federal safety requirements and additional General Motors Tire Performance Criteria (TPC) standards.

## **Treadwear**

The treadwear grade is a comparative rating based on the wear rate of the tire when tested under controlled conditions on a specified government test course. For example, a tire graded 150 would wear one and a half (1.5) times as well on the government course as a tire graded 100. The relative performance of tires depends upon the actual conditions of their use, however, and may depart significantly from the norm due to variations in driving habits, service practices, and differences in road characteristics and climate.

## **Traction – AA, A, B, C**

The traction grades, from highest to lowest, are AA, A, B, and C. Those grades represent the tire's ability to stop on wet pavement as measured under controlled conditions on specified government test surfaces of asphalt and concrete. A tire marked C may have poor traction performance.

***Warning:*** The traction grade assigned to this tire is based on straight-ahead braking traction tests, and does not include acceleration, cornering, hydroplaning, or peak traction characteristics.

## Temperature – A, B, C

The temperature grades are A (the highest), B, and C, representing the tire's resistance to the generation of heat and its ability to dissipate heat when tested under controlled conditions on a specified indoor laboratory test wheel. Sustained high temperature can cause the material of the tire to degenerate and reduce tire life, and excessive temperature can lead to sudden tire failure. The grade C corresponds to a level of performance which all passenger car tires must meet under the Federal Motor Vehicle Safety Standard No. 109. Grades B and A represent higher levels of performance on the laboratory test wheel than the minimum required by law.

**Warning:** The temperature grade for this tire is established for a tire that is properly inflated and not overloaded. Excessive speed, underinflation, or excessive loading, either separately or in combination, can cause heat buildup and possible tire failure.

## Wheel Alignment and Tire Balance

The tires and wheels on your vehicle were aligned and balanced carefully at the factory to give you the longest tire life and best overall performance. Adjustments to wheel alignment and tire balancing will not be necessary on a regular basis. However, if you notice unusual tire wear or your vehicle pulling to one side or the other, the alignment might need to be checked. If you notice your vehicle vibrating when driving on a smooth road, the tires and wheels might need to be rebalanced. See your dealer/retailer for proper diagnosis.

## Wheel Replacement

Replace any wheel that is bent, cracked or badly rusted or corroded. If wheel nuts keep coming loose, the wheel, wheel bolts and wheel nuts should be replaced. If the wheel leaks air, replace it (except some aluminum wheels, which can sometimes be repaired). See your dealer/retailer if any of these conditions exist.

Your dealer/retailer will know the kind of wheel you need.

Each new wheel should have the same load-carrying capacity, diameter, width, offset and be mounted the same way as the one it replaces.

If you need to replace any of your wheels, wheel bolts or wheel nuts, replace them only with new Saturn original equipment parts. This way, you will be sure to have the right wheel, wheel bolts and wheel nuts for your vehicle.

### CAUTION:

**Using the wrong replacement wheels, wheel bolts, or wheel nuts on your vehicle can be dangerous. It could affect the braking and handling of your vehicle, make your tires lose air and make you lose control. You could have a collision in which you or others could be injured. Always use the correct wheel, wheel bolts, and wheel nuts for replacement.**

***Notice:*** The wrong wheel can also cause problems with bearing life, brake cooling, speedometer or odometer calibration, headlamp aim, bumper height, vehicle ground clearance, and tire or tire chain clearance to the body and chassis.

See *Changing a Flat Tire* on page 5-76 for more information.

## Used Replacement Wheels

### CAUTION:

Putting a used wheel on your vehicle is dangerous. You cannot know how it has been used or how far it has been driven. It could fail suddenly and cause a crash. If you have to replace a wheel, use a new Saturn original equipment wheel.

## Tire Chains

### CAUTION:

Do not use tire chains. There is not enough clearance. Tire chains used on a vehicle without the proper amount of clearance can cause damage to the brakes, suspension or other vehicle parts. The area damaged by the tire chains could cause you to lose control of the vehicle and you or others may be injured in a crash.

Use another type of traction device only if its manufacturer recommends it for use on the vehicle and tire size combination and road conditions. Follow that manufacturer's instructions. To help avoid damage to the vehicle, drive slowly, readjust or remove the device if it is contacting the vehicle, and do not spin the vehicle's wheels. If you do find traction devices that will fit, install them on the front tires.

## If a Tire Goes Flat

It is unusual for a tire to blowout while you are driving, especially if you maintain your vehicle's tires properly. If air goes out of a tire, it is much more likely to leak out slowly. But if you should ever have a blowout, here are a few tips about what to expect and what to do:

If a front tire fails, the flat tire creates a drag that pulls the vehicle toward that side. Take your foot off the accelerator pedal and grip the steering wheel firmly. Steer to maintain lane position, and then gently brake to a stop well out of the traffic lane.

A rear blowout, particularly on a curve, acts much like a skid and may require the same correction you would use in a skid. In any rear blowout remove your foot from the accelerator pedal. Get the vehicle under control by steering the way you want the vehicle to go. It may be very bumpy and noisy, but you can still steer. Gently brake to a stop, well off the road if possible.

### CAUTION:

**Lifting a vehicle and getting under it to do maintenance or repairs is dangerous without the appropriate safety equipment and training. The jack provided with your vehicle is designed only for changing a flat tire. If it is used for anything else, you or others could be badly injured or killed if the vehicle slips off the jack. Use the jack provided with your vehicle only for changing a flat tire.**

If a tire goes flat, the next part shows how to use the jacking equipment to change a flat tire safely.

## Changing a Flat Tire

If a tire goes flat, avoid further tire and wheel damage by driving slowly to a level place. Turn on your vehicle's hazard warning flashers. See *Hazard Warning Flashers* on page 3-6 for more information.

### CAUTION:

Changing a tire can be dangerous. The vehicle can slip off the jack and roll over or fall on you or other people. You and they could be badly injured or even killed. Find a level place to change your tire. To help prevent the vehicle from moving:

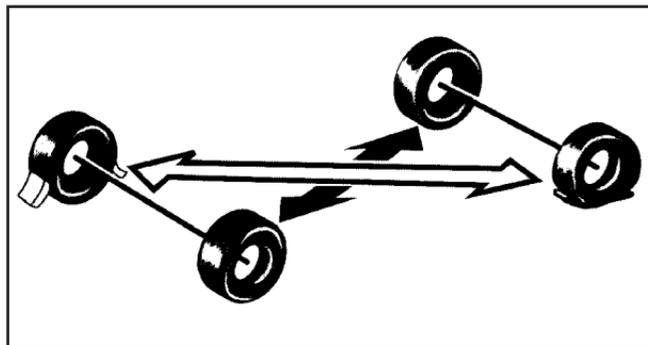
1. Set the parking brake firmly.
2. Put the shift lever in PARK (P).
3. Turn off the engine and do not restart while the vehicle is raised.
4. Do not allow passengers to remain in the vehicle.

CAUTION: (Continued)

### CAUTION: (Continued)

To be even more certain the vehicle will not move, you should put blocks at the front and rear of the tire farthest away from the one being changed. That would be the tire, on the other side, at the opposite end of the vehicle.

When your vehicle has a flat tire, use the following example as a guide to assist you in the placement of wheel blocks.

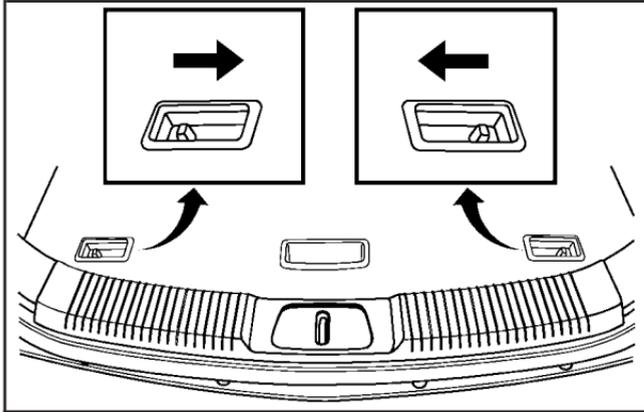


The following information tells you how to use the jack and change a tire.

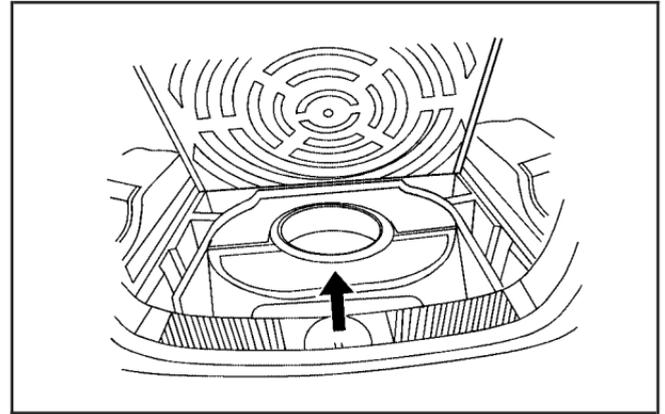
## Removing the Spare Tire and Tools

To access the spare tire:

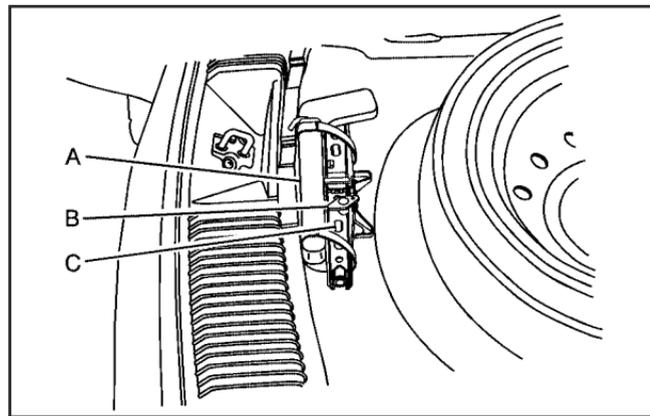
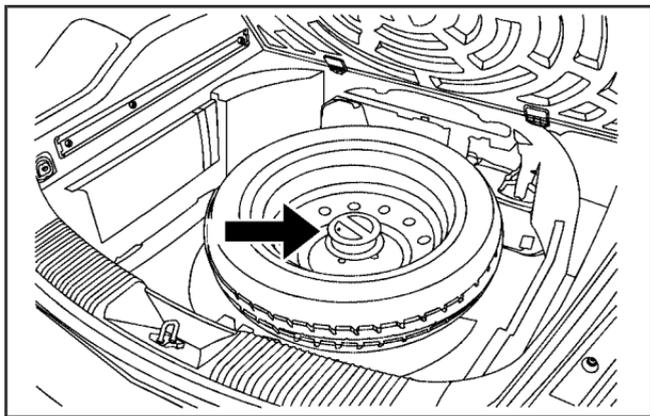
1. Open the liftgate.



2. Push the levers on the load floor.
3. Lift the load floor and hang the hook to the tailgate opening.



4. Remove the tire protector foam.

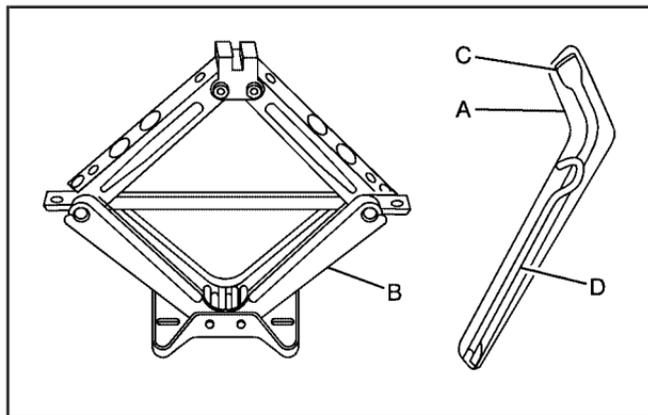


5. Remove the wheel retainer bolt holding down the spare tire by turning it counterclockwise.
6. Remove the compact spare tire. See *Compact Spare Tire* on page 5-86 for more information.

The tools you will need are located between the compact spare tire and the liftgate. To access the tools:

- A. Tool Bag
- B. Wing-bolt
- C. Jack
  1. Remove the wing-bolt (B) from the jack.
  2. Remove the jack (C) and tool bag (A).
  3. Remove the straps holding the bag containing the wheel wrench and extension jack handle.  
Remove the wheel wrench and extension jack handle from the bag.

The tools you will be using include:

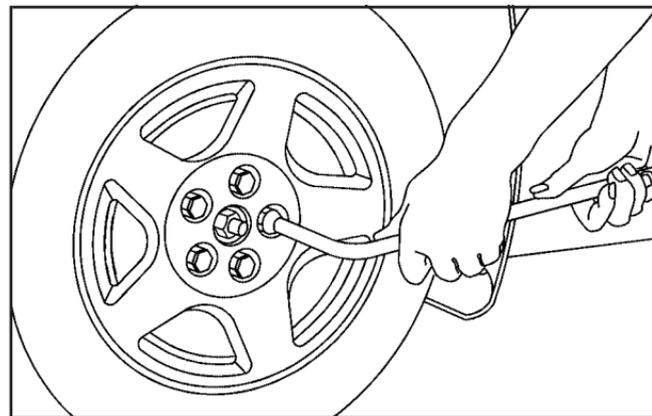


A. Tool Bag  
B. Jack

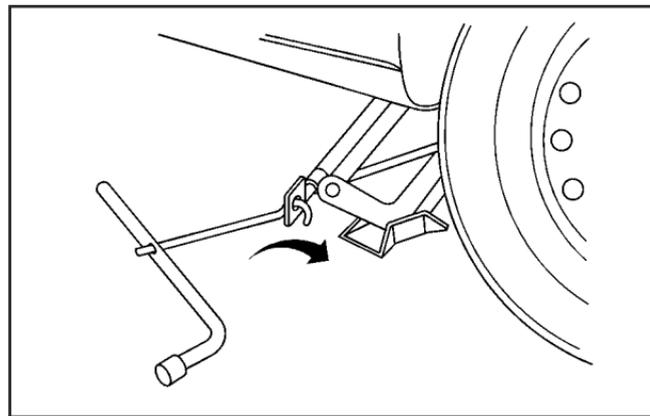
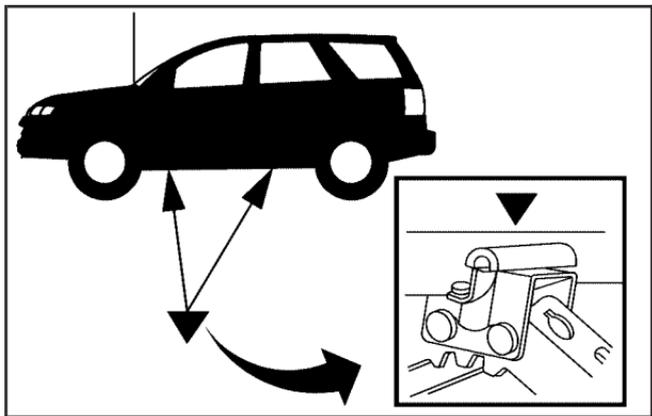
C. Wheel Wrench  
D. Extension Jack  
Handle

## Removing the Flat Tire and Installing the Spare Tire

1. Do a safety check before proceeding. See *Changing a Flat Tire* on page 5-76 for more information.



2. Use the wheel wrench to loosen all the wheel nuts. Do not remove them yet.
3. Attach the wheel wrench to the jack bolt head and rotate the wheel wrench clockwise. That will raise the lift head a little.



4. Position the lift head at the jack location nearest the flat tire. Make sure all of the jack lift head is touching the jacking flange under the body. Do not place the jack under a body panel. The lower body panel has an arrow to aid in locating the jacking location.
5. Put the compact spare tire near you.

6. Raise the vehicle by turning the jack handle clockwise. Raise the vehicle far enough off the ground so there is enough room for the road tire to be removed.

 **CAUTION:**

Getting under a vehicle when it is jacked up is dangerous. If the vehicle slips off the jack, you could be badly injured or killed. Never get under a vehicle when it is supported only by a jack.

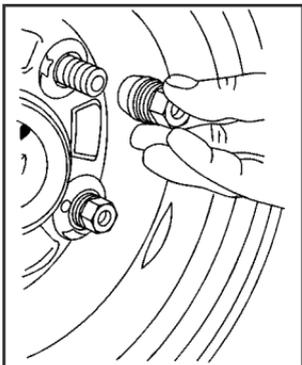
 **CAUTION:**

Raising your vehicle with the jack improperly positioned can damage the vehicle and even make the vehicle fall. To help avoid personal injury and vehicle damage, be sure to fit the jack lift head into the proper location before raising the vehicle.

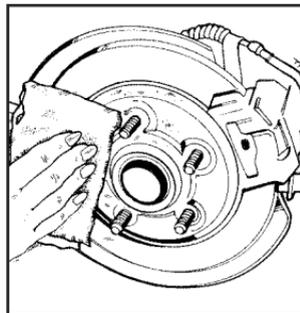
 **CAUTION:**

Lifting a vehicle and getting under it to do maintenance or repairs is dangerous without the appropriate safety equipment and training. The jack provided with your vehicle is designed only for changing a flat tire. If it is used for anything else, you or others could be badly injured or killed if the vehicle slips off the jack. Use the jack provided with your vehicle only for changing a flat tire.

*Notice:* Make sure that the jack lift head is in the correct position or you may damage your vehicle. The repairs would not be covered by your warranty.



7. Remove all of the wheel nuts.



9. Remove any rust or dirt from the wheel bolts, mounting surfaces and spare wheel.

8. Remove the flat tire.

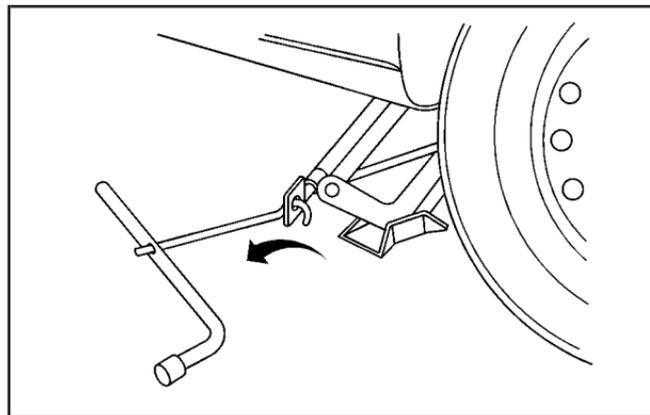
**⚠ CAUTION:**

Rust or dirt on a wheel, or on the parts to which it is fastened, can make wheel nuts become loose after time. The wheel could come off and cause an accident. When you change a wheel, remove any rust or dirt from places where the wheel attaches to the vehicle. In an emergency, you can use a cloth or a paper towel to do this; but be sure to use a scraper or wire brush later, if needed, to get all the rust or dirt off. See *Changing a Flat Tire on page 5-76*.

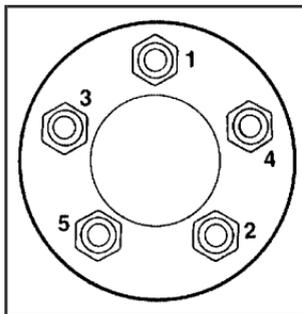
10. Place the compact spare tire on the wheel-mounting surface.
11. Reinstall the wheel nuts. Tighten each nut by hand until the wheel is held against the hub.

**⚠ CAUTION:**

**Never use oil or grease on studs or nuts. Because the nuts might come loose. The vehicle's wheel could fall off, causing a crash.**



12. Lower the vehicle by turning the jack handle counterclockwise.



13. Tighten the wheel nuts firmly in a crisscross sequence, as shown.

**⚠ CAUTION:**

Incorrect or improperly tightened wheel nuts can cause the wheel to come loose and even come off. This could lead to a crash. If you have to replace them, be sure to get new original equipment wheel nuts. Stop somewhere as soon as you can and have the nuts tightened with a torque wrench to the proper torque specification. See *Capacities and Specifications on page 5-104* for wheel nut torque specification.

**Notice:** Improperly tightened wheel nuts can lead to brake pulsation and rotor damage. To avoid expensive brake repairs, evenly tighten the wheel nuts in the proper sequence and to the proper torque specification. See *Capacities and Specifications on page 5-104* for the wheel nut torque specification.

14. Lower the jack all the way and remove the jack from under the vehicle.
15. Tighten the bolts firmly with the wheel wrench.

When reinstalling full plastic covers or center caps, tighten all the plastic caps hand snug, then tighten with the wheel wrench an additional one-quarter of a turn.

**Notice:** Wheel covers will not fit on your vehicle's compact spare. If you try to put a wheel cover on the compact spare, the cover or the spare could be damaged.

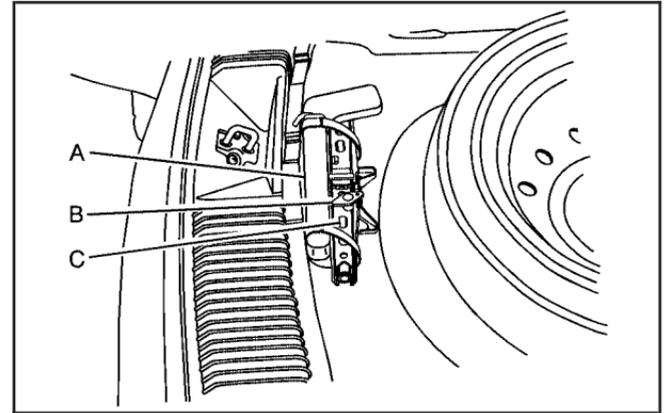
## Storing a Flat or Spare Tire and Tools

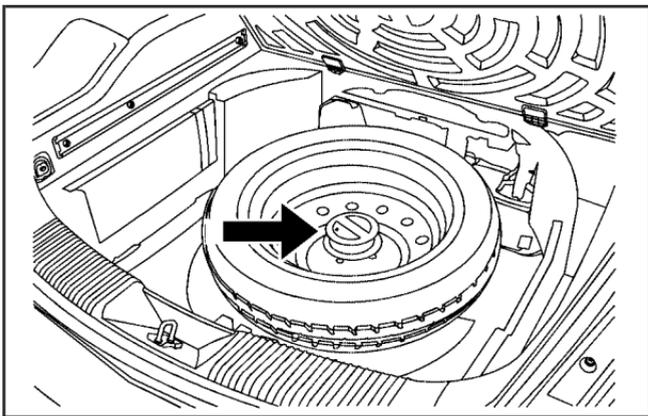
### CAUTION:

Storing a jack, a tire, or other equipment in the passenger compartment of the vehicle could cause injury. In a sudden stop or collision, loose equipment could strike someone. Store all these in the proper place.

To store the flat or spare tire and tools, do the following:

1. Place the wheel wrench into the bag and use the straps to secure the bag to the fully collapsed jack.
2. Install the jack between the back of the trunk and the compact spare tire and secure with the wing bolt.
3. Reverse Steps 1 through 3 under *Removing the Spare Tire and Tools* on page 5-77 to replace the floor and lock in place.
4. Place the flat, or damaged tire, face down, on the bottom of the spare tire compartment.





5. Place the wheel retainer bolt onto the wheel stow rod and tighten by turning it clockwise.

The compact spare is for temporary use only. Replace the compact spare tire with a full-size tire as soon as you can.

## Compact Spare Tire

Although the compact spare tire was fully inflated when the vehicle was new, it can lose air after a time. Check the inflation pressure regularly. It should be 60 psi (420 kPa).

After installing the compact spare on the vehicle, stop as soon as possible and make sure the spare tire is correctly inflated. The compact spare is made to perform well at speeds up to 65 mph (105 km/h) for distances up to 3,000 miles (5 000 km), so you can finish your trip and have the full-size tire repaired or replaced at your convenience. Of course, it is best to replace the spare with a full-size tire as soon as possible. The spare tire will last longer and be in good shape in case it is needed again.

**Notice:** When the compact spare is installed, do not take your vehicle through an automatic car wash with guide rails. The compact spare can get caught on the rails. That can damage the tire and wheel, and maybe other parts of your vehicle.

Do not use the compact spare on other vehicles.

And do not mix the compact spare tire or wheel with other wheels or tires. They will not fit. Keep the spare tire and its wheel together.

**Notice:** Tire chains will not fit your compact spare. Using them can damage your vehicle and can damage the chains too. Do not use tire chains on your compact spare.

# Appearance Care

## Interior Cleaning

Your vehicle's interior will continue to look its best if it is cleaned often. Although not always visible, dust and dirt can accumulate on your upholstery. Dirt can damage carpet, fabric, leather, and plastic surfaces. Regular vacuuming is recommended to remove particles from your upholstery. It is important to keep your upholstery from becoming and remaining heavily soiled. Soils should be removed as quickly as possible. Your vehicle's interior may experience extremes of heat that could cause stains to set rapidly.

Lighter colored interiors may require more frequent cleaning. Use care because newspapers and garments that transfer color to your home furnishings may also transfer color to your vehicle's interior.

When cleaning your vehicle's interior, only use cleaners specifically designed for the surfaces being cleaned. Permanent damage may result from using cleaners on surfaces for which they were not intended. Use glass cleaner only on glass. Remove any accidental over-spray from other surfaces immediately. To prevent over-spray, apply cleaner directly to the cleaning cloth.

**Notice:** If you use abrasive cleaners when cleaning glass surfaces on your vehicle, you could scratch the glass and/or cause damage to the rear window defogger. When cleaning the glass on your vehicle, use only a soft cloth and glass cleaner.

Many cleaners contain solvents that may become concentrated in your vehicle's breathing space. Before using cleaners, read and adhere to all safety instructions on the label. While cleaning your vehicle's interior, maintain adequate ventilation by opening your vehicle's doors and windows.

Dust may be removed from small buttons and knobs using a small brush with soft bristles.

Your dealer/retailer has a product for cleaning your vehicle's glass. Should it become necessary, you can also obtain a product from your dealer/retailer to remove odors from your vehicle's upholstery.

Do not clean your vehicle using:

- A knife or any other sharp object to remove a soil from any interior surface.
- A stiff brush. It can cause damage to your vehicle's interior surfaces.
- Heavy pressure or aggressive rubbing with a cleaning cloth. Use of heavy pressure can damage your interior and does not improve the effectiveness of soil removal.
- Laundry detergents or dishwashing soaps with degreasers can leave residue that streaks and attracts dirt. For liquid cleaners, about 20 drops per gallon (3.78 L) of water is a good guide. Use only mild, neutral-pH soaps.
- Too much cleaner that saturates the upholstery.
- Organic solvents such as naphtha, alcohol, etc. that can damage your vehicle's interior.

## Fabric/Carpet

Use a vacuum cleaner with a soft brush attachment frequently to remove dust and loose dirt. A canister vacuum with a beater bar in the nozzle may only be used on floor carpet and carpeted floor mats. For any soil, always try to remove it first with plain water or club soda. Before cleaning, gently remove as much of the soil as possible using one of the following techniques:

- For liquids: gently blot the remaining soil with a paper towel. Allow the soil to absorb into the paper towel until no more can be removed.
- For solid dry soils: remove as much as possible and then vacuum.

To clean:

1. Saturate a lint-free, clean white cloth with water or club soda.
2. Wring the cloth to remove excess moisture.
3. Start on the outside edge of the soil and gently rub toward the center. Continue cleaning, using a clean area of the cloth each time it becomes soiled.
4. Continue to gently rub the soiled area until the cleaning cloth remains clean.
5. If the soil is not completely removed, use a mild soap solution and repeat the cleaning process that was used with plain water.

If any of the soil remains, a commercial fabric cleaner or spot lifter may be necessary. When a commercial upholstery cleaner or spot lifter is to be used, test a small hidden area for colorfastness first. If the locally cleaned area gives any impression that a ring formation may result, clean the entire surface.

After the cleaning process has been completed, a paper towel can be used to blot excess moisture from the fabric or carpet.

## Instrument Panel, Vinyl, and Other Plastic Surfaces

A soft cloth dampened with water may be used to remove dust. If a more thorough cleaning is necessary, a clean soft cloth dampened with a mild soap solution can be used to gently remove dust and dirt. Never use spot lifters or removers on plastic surfaces. Many commercial cleaners and coatings that are sold to preserve and protect soft plastic surfaces may permanently change the appearance and feel of your interior and are not recommended. Do not use silicone or wax-based products, or those containing organic solvents to clean your vehicle's interior because they can alter the appearance by increasing the gloss in a non-uniform manner.

Some commercial products may increase gloss on your instrument panel. The increase in gloss may cause annoying reflections in the windshield and even make it difficult to see through the windshield under certain conditions.

## Care of Safety Belts

Keep belts clean and dry.

### CAUTION:

**Do not bleach or dye safety belts. If you do, it may severely weaken them. In a crash, they might not be able to provide adequate protection. Clean safety belts only with mild soap and lukewarm water.**

## Weatherstrips

Silicone grease on weatherstrips will make them last longer, seal better, and not stick or squeak. Apply silicone grease with a clean cloth. During very cold, damp weather frequent application may be required. See *Recommended Fluids and Lubricants* on page 6-13.

## Washing Your Vehicle

The best way to preserve your vehicle's finish is to keep it clean by washing it often.

**Notice:** Certain cleaners contain chemicals that can damage the emblems or nameplates on your vehicle. Check the cleaning product label. If it states that it should not be used on plastic parts, do not use it on your vehicle or damage may occur and it would not be covered by the warranty.

Do not wash the vehicle in direct sunlight. Use a car washing soap. Do not use cleaning agents that are petroleum based or that contain acid or abrasives, as they can damage the paint, metal or plastic on your vehicle. Approved cleaning products can be obtained from your dealer/retailer. See *Vehicle Care/Appearance Materials on page 5-94*. Follow all manufacturers' directions regarding correct product usage, necessary safety precautions and appropriate disposal of any vehicle care product.

Rinse the vehicle well, before washing and after to remove all cleaning agents completely. If they are allowed to dry on the surface, they could stain.

Dry the finish with a soft, clean chamois or an all-cotton towel to avoid surface scratches and water spotting.

High pressure car washes may cause water to enter the vehicle. Avoid using high pressure washes closer than 12 inches (30 cm) to the surface of the vehicle. Use of power washers exceeding 1,200 psi (8 274 kPa) can result in damage or removal of paint and decals.

## Cleaning Exterior Lamps/Lenses

Use only lukewarm or cold water, a soft cloth and a car washing soap to clean exterior lamps and lenses. Follow instructions under *Washing Your Vehicle on page 5-90*.

## Finish Care

Occasional waxing or mild polishing of your vehicle by hand may be necessary to remove residue from the paint finish. You can get approved cleaning products from your dealer/retailer. See *Vehicle Care/Appearance Materials on page 5-94*.

If your vehicle has a basecoat/clearcoat paint finish, the clearcoat gives more depth and gloss to the colored basecoat. Always use waxes and polishes that are non-abrasive and made for a basecoat/clearcoat paint finish.

**Notice: Machine compounding or aggressive polishing on a basecoat/clearcoat paint finish may damage it. Use only non-abrasive waxes and polishes that are made for a basecoat/clearcoat paint finish on your vehicle.**

Foreign materials such as calcium chloride and other salts, ice melting agents, road oil and tar, tree sap, bird droppings, chemicals from industrial chimneys, etc., can damage your vehicle's finish if they remain on painted surfaces. Wash the vehicle as soon as possible. If necessary, use non-abrasive cleaners that are marked safe for painted surfaces to remove foreign matter.

Exterior painted surfaces are subject to aging, weather and chemical fallout that can take their toll over a period of years. You can help to keep the paint finish looking new by keeping your vehicle garaged or covered whenever possible.

## Protecting Exterior Bright Metal Parts

Bright metal parts should be cleaned regularly to keep their luster. Washing with water is all that is usually needed. However, you may use chrome polish on chrome or stainless steel trim, if necessary.

Use special care with aluminum trim. To avoid damaging protective trim, never use auto or chrome polish, steam or caustic soap to clean aluminum. A coating of wax, rubbed to high polish, is recommended for all bright metal parts.

## Windshield and Wiper Blades

Clean the outside of the windshield with glass cleaner.

Clean the rubber blades using a lint free cloth or paper towel soaked with windshield washer fluid or a mild detergent. Wash the windshield thoroughly when cleaning the blades. Bugs, road grime, sap, and a buildup of vehicle wash/wax treatments may cause wiper streaking. Replace the wiper blades if they are worn or damaged.

Wipers can be damaged by:

- Extreme dusty conditions
- Sand and salt
- Heat and sun
- Snow and ice, without proper removal

## Aluminum Wheels

**Notice:** Chrome wheels and other chrome trim may be damaged if you do not wash your vehicle after driving on roads that have been sprayed with magnesium, calcium or sodium chloride. These chlorides are used on roads for conditions such as ice and dust. Always wash your vehicle's chrome with soap and water after exposure.

**Notice:** If you use strong soaps, chemicals, abrasive polishes, cleaners, brushes, or cleaners that contain acid on aluminum or chrome-plated wheels, you could damage the surface of the wheel(s). The repairs would not be covered by your warranty. Use only approved cleaners on aluminum or chrome-plated wheels.

Keep the wheels clean using a soft clean cloth with mild soap and water. Rinse with clean water. After rinsing thoroughly, dry with a soft clean towel. A wax may then be applied.

**Notice:** Using chrome polish on aluminum wheels could damage the wheels. The repairs would not be covered by your warranty. Use chrome polish on chrome wheels only.

The surface of these wheels is similar to the painted surface of the vehicle. Do not use strong soaps, chemicals, abrasive polishes, abrasive cleaners, cleaners with acid, or abrasive cleaning brushes on them because the surface could be damaged. Do not use chrome polish on aluminum wheels.

**Notice:** If you drive your vehicle through an automatic car wash that has silicone carbide tire cleaning brushes, you could damage the aluminum or chrome-plated wheels. The repairs would not be covered by your warranty. Never drive a vehicle equipped with aluminum or chrome-plated wheels through an automatic car wash that uses silicone carbide tire cleaning brushes.

## Tires

To clean the tires, use a stiff brush with tire cleaner.

**Notice:** Using petroleum-based tire dressing products on your vehicle may damage the paint finish and/or tires. When applying a tire dressing, always wipe off any overspray from all painted surfaces on your vehicle.

## Sheet Metal Damage

If the vehicle is damaged and requires sheet metal repair or replacement, make sure the body repair shop applies anti-corrosion material to parts repaired or replaced to restore corrosion protection.

Original manufacturer replacement parts will provide the corrosion protection while maintaining the warranty.

## Finish Damage

Any stone chips, fractures or deep scratches in the finish should be repaired right away. Bare metal will corrode quickly and may develop into major repair expense.

Minor chips and scratches can be repaired with touch-up materials available from your dealer/retailer. Larger areas of finish damage can be corrected in your dealer's/retailer's body and paint shop.

## Underbody Maintenance

Chemicals used for ice and snow removal and dust control can collect on the underbody. If these are not removed, corrosion and rust can develop on the underbody parts such as fuel lines, frame, floor pan, and exhaust system even though they have corrosion protection.

At least every spring, flush these materials from the underbody with plain water. Clean any areas where mud and debris can collect. Dirt packed in close areas of the frame should be loosened before being flushed. Your dealer/retailer or an underbody car washing system can do this for you.

## Chemical Paint Spotting

Some weather and atmospheric conditions can create a chemical fallout. Airborne pollutants can fall upon and attack painted surfaces on the vehicle. This damage can take two forms: blotchy, ring-shaped discolorations, and small, irregular dark spots etched into the paint surface.

Although no defect in the paint job causes this, we will repair, at no charge to the owner, the surfaces of new vehicles damaged by this fallout condition within 12 months or 12,000 miles (20 000 km) of purchase, whichever occurs first.

## Vehicle Care/Appearance Materials

Description	Usage
Polishing Cloth Wax-Treated	Interior and exterior polishing cloth.
Tar and Road Oil Remover	Removes tar, road oil, and asphalt.
Chrome Cleaner and Polish	Use on chrome or stainless steel.
White Sidewall Tire Cleaner	Removes soil and black marks from whitewalls.
Vinyl Cleaner	Cleans vinyl.
Glass Cleaner	Removes dirt, grime, smoke, and fingerprints.
Chrome and Wire Wheel Cleaner	Removes dirt and grime from chrome wheels and wire wheel covers.
Finish Enhancer	Removes dust, fingerprints, and surface contaminants. Spray on wipe off.

Description	Usage
Swirl Remover Polish	Removes swirl marks, fine scratches, and other light surface contamination.
Cleaner Wax	Removes light scratches and protects finish.
Foaming Tire Shine Low Gloss	Cleans, shines, and protects tires. No wiping necessary.
Wash Wax Concentrate	Medium foaming shampoo. Cleans and lightly waxes. Biodegradable and phosphate free.
Spot Lifter	Removes spots and stains from carpets, vinyl, and cloth upholstery.
Odor Eliminator	Odorless spray odor eliminator used on fabrics, vinyl, leather, and carpet.

## Vehicle Identification

### Vehicle Identification Number (VIN)



This is the legal identifier for your vehicle. It appears on a plate in the front corner of the instrument panel, on the driver side. It can be seen through the windshield from outside the vehicle. The VIN also appears on the Certification/Tire and Service Parts labels and the certificates of title and registration.

## Engine Identification

The eighth character in the VIN is the engine code. This code helps identify the vehicle's engine, specifications, and replacement parts. See "Engine Specifications" under *Capacities and Specifications on page 5-104* for your vehicle's engine code.

## Service Parts Identification Label

This label is on the inside of the glove box. It is very helpful if you ever need to order parts. The label has the following information:

- Vehicle Identification Number (VIN)
- Model designation
- Paint information
- Production options and special equipment

Do not remove this label from the vehicle.

## Electrical System

### Add-On Electrical Equipment

**Notice:** Do not add anything electrical to your vehicle unless you check with your dealer/retailer first. Some electrical equipment can damage your vehicle and the damage would not be covered by your warranty. Some add-on electrical equipment can keep other components from working as they should.

Add-on equipment can drain your vehicle's battery, even if your vehicle is not operating.

Your vehicle has an airbag system. Before attempting to add anything electrical to your vehicle, see *Servicing Your Airbag-Equipped Vehicle on page 1-70*.

### Windshield Wiper Fuses

The windshield wiper motor is protected by a circuit breaker and a fuse. If the motor overheats due to heavy snow, etc., the wiper will stop until the motor cools. If the overload is caused by some electrical problem, have it fixed.

### Power Windows and Other Power Options

Circuit breakers in the fuse block protect the power windows and other power accessories. When the current load is too heavy, the circuit breaker opens and closes, protecting the circuit until the problem is fixed or goes away.

## Fuses and Circuit Breakers

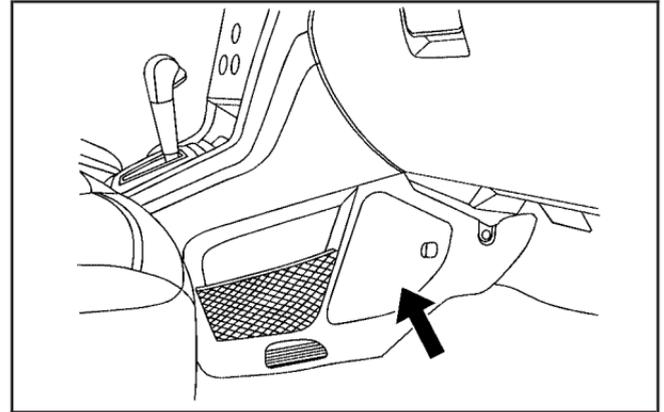
The wiring circuits in your vehicle are protected from short circuits by fuses. This greatly reduces the chance of circuit overload and fire caused by electrical problems.

There are two fuse blocks — the underhood fuse block, and the instrument panel fuse block.

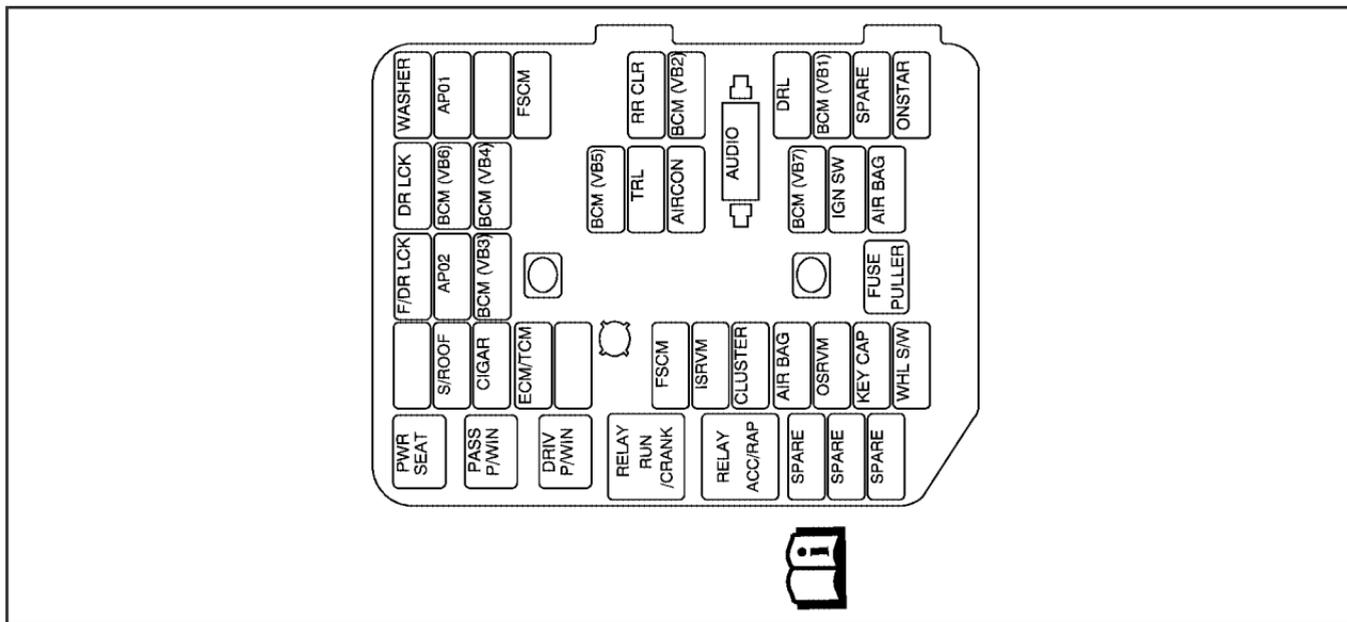
To identify and check fuses and relays, refer to the Fuse Usage Chart on the inside surface of the fuse panel door.

## Instrument Panel Fuse Block

The instrument panel fuse block is located on the passenger side of the lower console.



Pull the latch of the fuse box cover straight back to access the fuses.



Fuses	Usage
PWR SEAT	Power Seat
PASS P/WIN	Passenger Side Power Window

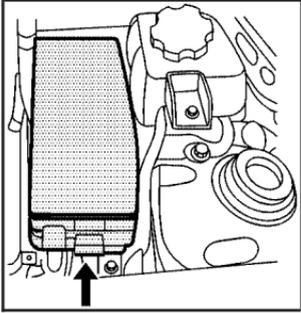
Fuses	Usage
DRIV P/WIN	Driver Side Power Window
S/ROOF	Sunroof Module

<b>Fuses</b>	<b>Usage</b>
CIGAR	Cigarette Lighter
ECM/TCM	Engine Control Module (ECM)/ Transmission Control Module (TCM)
FSCM	Fuel Storage Control Module
ISRVM	Inner Side Rearview Mirror)
Cluster	Instrument Panel Cluster
AIR BAG	Airbag System
OSRVM	Outer Side Rearview Mirror
KEY CAP	Key Capture Solenoid
WHL S/W	Steering Wheel Switch
F/DR LCK	Front Driver Door Lock
APO2	Accessory Power Outlet 2
BCM (VB3)	Body Control Module (BCM) (VB3)
DR LCK	Door Lock
BCM (VB6)	Body Control Module (VB6)
BCM (VB4)	Body Control Module (VB4)
BCM (VB5)	Body Control Module (VB5)
TRL	Trailer
AIRCON	Air Conditioner

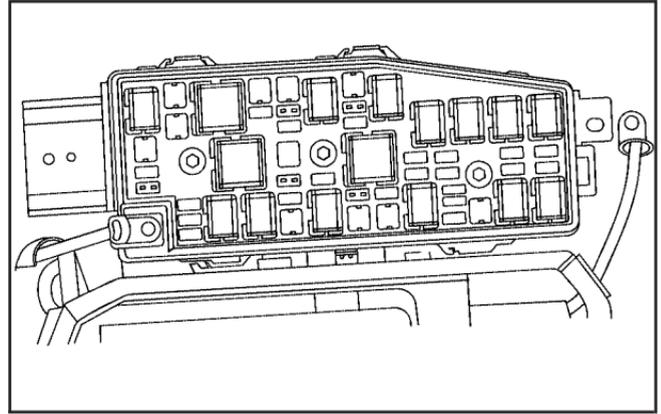
<b>Fuses</b>	<b>Usage</b>
AUDIO	Audio
BCM (VB7)	Body Control Module (VB7)
IGN SW	Ignition Switch
AIR BAG	Air Bag System
WASHER	Washer Pump
APO1	Accessory Power Outlet 1
FSCM	Fuel Storage Control Module
RR CLR	Rear Closure
BCM (VB2)	Body Control Module (VB2)
DRL	Daytime Running Light
BCM (VB1)	Body Control Module (VB1)
ONSTAR	OnStar®

<b>Relays</b>	<b>Usage</b>
RELAY ACC/RAP	Accessory, Retained Accessory Power (RAP) Relay
RELAY RUN/CRANK	Run/Crank Relay

## Underhood Fuse Block



The underhood fuse block is located on the driver's side of the engine compartment, near the battery.



**Notice:** Spilling liquid on any electrical components on your vehicle may damage it. Always keep the covers on any electrical component.



<b>Fuses</b>	<b>Usage</b>
ENG-3	Engine 3
ENG-2	Engine 2
ENG-1	Engine 1
HYBRID BEC	Hybrid Auxiliary BEC
RUN	Run
S/ROOF	Sunroof Module
HTD/SEAT	Heated Seat Control Module
BCM	Body Control Module
STRTR	Starter Motor
WPR	Windshield Wiper
4WD/ESCM	All-Wheel Drive System
ABS	Antilock Brake System Module
A/C CLTCH	Air Conditioning Compressor
BLWR MTR	Blower Motor
AMP	Amplifier
HORN	Horn
ABS	Antilock Brake System Module

<b>Fuses</b>	<b>Usage</b>
I/P BEC	Instrument Panel Bussed Electrical Center
FRT FOG	Front Fog Lamps
I/P BEC	Instrument Panel Bussed Electrical Center
DRL	Daytime Running Light
T/LAMP RT	Right Turn and Parking Lamps
T/LAMP LT	Left Turn and Parking Lamps
TRLR T/LAMP	Trailer Parking Lamps
HDLP HI LT	Passenger Side High-Beam Headlamp
STOP LP	Stoplamps
DEFOG	Defroster Fog
HDLP LO RT	Driver Side Low-Beam Headlamp
HDLP LO LT	Passenger Side Low-Beam Headlamp
HDLP RT HI	Driver Side High-Beam Headlamp
OSRVM HTR	Outside Rearview Mirror Heating

<b>Relays</b>	<b>Usage</b>
FAN MAIN RLY	Cooling Fan Main Relay
FAN CTRL RLY	Cooling Fan Control Relay
FAN AUX RLY	Cooling Fan Auxiliary Relay
PWR/TRN RLY	Engine Control Module/CAM, Canister, Injectors, Electronic Throttle Control Relay
STRTR RLY	Starter Relay
RUN RLY	Run Relay
A/C CLTCH RLY	Air Conditioning Compressor Relay

<b>Relays</b>	<b>Usage</b>
WPR SPD RLY	Windshield Wiper Speed Relay
HORN RLY	Horn Relay
WPR CNTRL RLY	Windshield Wiper Control Relay
T/LAMP RLY	Parking Lamp Relay
HDLP HI RLY	High-Beam Headlamp Relay
HDLP LO RLY	Low—Beam Headlamp Relay
FRT FOG RLY	Front Foglamp Relay
STOP LP RLY	Stoplamp Relay
DEFOG RLY	Defroster Fog Relay

## Capacities and Specifications

Application	Capacities	
	English	Metric
Air Conditioning Refrigerant R134a	For the air conditioning system refrigerant charge amount, see the refrigerant caution label located under the hood. See your dealer/retailer for more information.	
Cooling System		
2.4L L4 Engine	9.0 qt	8.5 L
3.5L V6 Engine	10.9 qt	10.4 L
3.6L V6 Engine	11.4 qt	10.9 L
Engine Oil with Filter		
2.4L L4 Engine	5.0 qt	4.7 L
3.5L V6 Engine	4.0 qt	3.8 L
3.6L V6 Engine	5.5 qt	5.2 L
Fuel Tank		
All Wheel Drive	16.7 gal	63.0 L
Front Wheel Drive	19.2 gal	73.0 L

Application	Capacities	
	English	Metric
Transmission		
Four-Speed Automatic	6.9 qt	6.5 L
Six-Speed Automatic	9.5 qt	9.0 L
Wheel Nut Torque	100 ft lb	140 N•m
All capacities are approximate. When adding, be sure to fill to the approximate level, as recommended in this manual. Recheck fluid level after filling.		

### Engine Specifications

Engine	VIN Code	Transmission	Spark Plug Gap
2.4L L4 (LE5)	P	Automatic	0.040 inches (1.01 mm)
3.5L V6 (LZ4)	N	Automatic	0.040 inches (1.01 mm)
3.6L V6 (LY7)	7	Automatic	0.044 inches (1.1 mm)



## Section 6 Maintenance Schedule

---

<b>Maintenance Schedule</b> .....	6-2	Owner Checks and Services .....	6-9
Introduction .....	6-2	At Each Fuel Fill .....	6-10
Maintenance Requirements .....	6-2	At Least Once a Month .....	6-10
Your Vehicle and the Environment .....	6-2	At Least Once a Year .....	6-11
Using the Maintenance Schedule .....	6-2	Recommended Fluids and Lubricants .....	6-13
Scheduled Maintenance .....	6-3	Maintenance Replacement Parts .....	6-15
Additional Required Services .....	6-6	Engine Drive Belt Routing .....	6-16
Maintenance Footnotes .....	6-8	Maintenance Record .....	6-18

# Maintenance Schedule

## Introduction

**Important: Keep engine oil at the proper level and change as recommended.**

## Maintenance Requirements

***Notice:* Maintenance intervals, checks, inspections, replacement parts, and recommended fluids and lubricants as prescribed in this manual are necessary to keep your vehicle in good working condition. Any damage caused by failure to follow scheduled maintenance might not be covered by warranty.**

## Your Vehicle and the Environment

Proper vehicle maintenance not only helps to keep your vehicle in good working condition, but also helps the environment. All recommended maintenance is important. Improper vehicle maintenance can even affect the quality of the air we breathe. Improper fluid levels or the wrong tire inflation can increase the level of emissions from your vehicle. To help protect our environment, and to keep your vehicle in good condition, be sure to maintain your vehicle properly.

## Using the Maintenance Schedule

We want to help you keep your vehicle in good working condition. But we do not know exactly how you will drive it. You might drive very short distances only a few times a week. Or you might drive long distances all the time in very hot, dusty weather. You might use your vehicle in making deliveries. Or you might drive it to work, to do errands, or in many other ways.

Because of all the different ways people use their vehicles, maintenance needs vary. You might need more frequent checks and replacements. So please read the following and note how you drive. If you have any questions on how to keep your vehicle in good condition, see your dealer/retailer.

This schedule is for vehicles that:

- carry passengers and cargo within recommended limits. You will find these limits on the Tire and Loading Information label. See *Loading Your Vehicle on page 4-35*.
- are driven on reasonable road surfaces within legal driving limits.
- are driven off-road in the recommended manner. See *Off-Road Driving on page 4-15*.
- use the recommended fuel. See *Gasoline Octane on page 5-6*.

The services in *Scheduled Maintenance on page 6-3* should be performed when indicated. See *Additional Required Services on page 6-6* and *Maintenance Footnotes on page 6-8* for further information.

 **CAUTION:**

**Performing maintenance work on a vehicle can be dangerous. In trying to do some jobs, you can be seriously injured. Do your own maintenance work only if you have the required know-how and the proper tools and equipment for the job. If you have any doubt, see your dealer/retailer to have a qualified technician do the work. See *Doing Your Own Service Work on page 5-4*.**

Some maintenance services can be complex. So, unless you are technically qualified and have the necessary equipment, you should have your dealer/retailer do these jobs.

When you go to your dealer/retailer for your service needs, you will know that trained and supported service technicians will perform the work using genuine parts.

If you want to purchase service information, see *Service Publications Ordering Information on page 7-15*.

*Owner Checks and Services on page 6-9* tells you what should be checked, when to check it, and what you can easily do to help keep your vehicle in good condition.

The proper replacement parts, fluids, and lubricants to use are listed in *Recommended Fluids and Lubricants on page 6-13* and *Maintenance Replacement Parts on page 6-15*. When your vehicle is serviced, make sure these are used. All parts should be replaced and all necessary repairs done before you or anyone else drives the vehicle. We recommend the use of genuine parts from your dealer/retailer.

## Scheduled Maintenance

When the Change Engine Oil light comes on, it means that service is required for your vehicle. Have your vehicle serviced as soon as possible within the next 600 miles (1 000 km). It is possible that, if you are driving under the best conditions, the engine oil life system may not indicate that vehicle service is necessary for over a year. However, the engine oil and filter must be changed at least once a year and at this time the system must be reset. Your dealer/retailer has trained service technicians who will perform this work using genuine parts and reset the system.

If the engine oil life system is ever reset accidentally, you must service your vehicle within 3,000 miles (5 000 km) since your last service. Remember to reset the oil life system whenever the oil is changed. See *Engine Oil Life System on page 5-18* for information on the Engine Oil Life System and resetting the system.

When the Change Engine Oil light appears, certain services, checks, and inspections are required. Required services are described in the following for “Maintenance I” and “Maintenance II.” Generally, it is recommended that your first service be Maintenance I, your second service be Maintenance II, and that you alternate Maintenance I and Maintenance II thereafter. However, in some cases, Maintenance II may be required more often.

**Maintenance I** — Use Maintenance I if the Change Engine Oil light comes on within 10 months since the vehicle was purchased or Maintenance II was performed.

**Maintenance II** — Use Maintenance II if the previous service performed was Maintenance I. Always use Maintenance II whenever the light comes on 10 months or more since the last service or if the light has not come on at all for one year.

### Scheduled Maintenance

Service	Maintenance I	Maintenance II
Change engine oil and filter. See <i>Engine Oil on page 5-15</i> . Reset oil life system. See <i>Engine Oil Life System on page 5-18</i> . An <i>Emission Control Service</i> .	•	•
Visually check for any leaks or damage. See <i>footnote (j)</i> .	•	•
Inspect engine air cleaner filter. If necessary, replace filter. See <i>Engine Air Cleaner/Filter on page 5-20</i> . See <i>footnote (l)</i> .		•

## Scheduled Maintenance (cont'd)

Service	Maintenance I	Maintenance II
Rotate tires and check inflation pressures and wear. See <i>Tire Inspection and Rotation</i> on page 5-65 and "Tire Wear Inspection" in <i>At Least Once a Month</i> on page 6-10.	•	•
Inspect brake system. See <i>footnote (a)</i> .	•	•
Check engine coolant and windshield washer fluid levels and add fluid as needed.	•	•
Perform any needed additional services. See "Additional Required Services" in this section.	•	•
Inspect suspension and steering components. See <i>footnote (b)</i> .		•
Inspect engine cooling system. See <i>footnote (c)</i> .		•
Inspect wiper blades. See <i>footnote (d)</i> .		•
Inspect restraint system components. See <i>footnote (e)</i> .		•
Lubricate body components. See <i>footnote (f)</i> .		•
Automatic Transmission Only: Check automatic transmission fluid level and add fluid as needed.		•
Replace passenger compartment air filter. See <i>footnote (k)</i> .		•
L4 engine: Inspect throttle system. See <i>footnote (g)</i> .		•

## Additional Required Services

The following services should be performed at the first maintenance service (I or II) after the indicated miles (kilometers) shown for each item.

### Additional Required Services

Service and Miles (Kilometers)	25,000 (40 000)	50,000 (80 000)	75,000 (120 000)	100,000 (160 000)	125,000 (200 000)	150,000 (240 000)
Inspect fuel system for damage or leaks.	•	•	•	•	•	•
Inspect exhaust system for loose or damaged components.	•	•	•	•	•	•
Replace engine air cleaner filter. See <i>Engine Air Cleaner/Filter on page 5-20.</i>		•		•		•
Change automatic transmission fluid (severe service). See footnote (h).		•		•		•
Change automatic transmission fluid (normal service).				•		
Replace spark plugs. An <i>Emission Control Service</i> .				•		

### Additional Required Services (cont'd)

Service and Miles (Kilometers)	25,000 (40 000)	50,000 (80 000)	75,000 (120 000)	100,000 (160 000)	125,000 (200 000)	150,000 (240 000)
V6 engine: Change transfer assembly fluid (severe service). <i>See footnote (h).</i>	•	•	•	•	•	•
V6 engine: Change transfer assembly fluid (normal service). <i>See footnote (m).</i>				•		•
Engine cooling system service (or every five years, whichever occurs first). <i>An Emission Control Service.</i> <i>See footnote (i).</i>						•
Inspect engine accessory drive belt. <i>An Emission Control Service.</i> <i>See footnote (n).</i>						•

## Maintenance Footnotes

† *The U.S. Environmental Protection Agency or the California Air Resources Board has determined that the failure to perform this maintenance item will not nullify the emission warranty or limit recall liability prior to the completion of the vehicle's useful life. We, however, urge that all recommended maintenance services be performed at the indicated intervals and the maintenance be recorded.*

(a) *Visually inspect brake lines and hoses for proper hook-up, binding, leaks, cracks, chafing, etc. Inspect disc brake pads for wear and rotors for surface condition. Inspect other brake parts, including calipers, parking brake, etc.*

(b) *Visually inspect front and rear suspension and steering system for damaged, loose, or missing parts or signs of wear.*

(c) *Visually inspect hoses and have them replaced if they are cracked, swollen, or deteriorated. Inspect all pipes, fittings, and clamps; replace with genuine parts as needed. To help ensure proper operation, a pressure test of the cooling system and pressure cap and cleaning the outside of the radiator and air conditioning condenser is recommended at least once a year.*

(d) *Inspect wiper blades for wear, cracking, or contamination. Clean the windshield and wiper blades, if contaminated. Replace wiper blades that are worn or damaged. See Windshield Wiper Blade Replacement on page 5-50 and Windshield and Wiper Blades on page 5-91 for more information.*

(e) *Make sure the safety belt reminder light and safety belt assemblies are working properly. Look for any other loose or damaged safety belt system parts. If you see anything that might keep a safety belt system from doing its job, have it repaired. Have any torn or frayed safety belts replaced. Also see Checking the Restraint Systems on page 1-72.*

(f) *Lubricate all key lock cylinders, door hinges and latches, hood hinges and latches, glove box hinges, sunroof (if equipped), and any folding seat hardware. More frequent lubrication may be required when exposed to a corrosive environment. Applying silicone grease on weatherstrips with a clean cloth will make them last longer, seal better, and not stick or squeak.*

(g) *Check system for interference or binding and for damaged or missing parts. Replace parts as needed. Replace any components that have high effort or excessive wear.*

(h) *Severe service is when the vehicle is mainly driven under one or more of these conditions:*

- In heavy city traffic where the outside temperature regularly reaches 90°F (32°C) or higher.*
- In hilly or mountainous terrain.*
- When doing frequent trailer towing.*
- Uses such as found in taxi, police, or delivery service.*

(i) *Drain, flush, and refill cooling system. This service can be complex; you should have your dealer/retailer perform this service. See Engine Coolant on page 5-22 for what to use. Inspect hoses. Clean radiator, condenser, pressure cap, and filler neck. Pressure test the cooling system and pressure cap.*

(j) *A fluid loss in any vehicle system could indicate a problem. Have the system inspected and repaired and the fluid level checked. Add fluid if needed.*

(k) *Or every 12 months, whichever occurs first. If you drive regularly under dusty conditions, the filter may require replacement more often.*

(l) *If you drive regularly under dusty conditions, inspect the filter at each engine oil change.*

(m) *Change the fluid the first time the vehicle is serviced after 100,000 miles (166 000 km) and when the vehicle is serviced after each subsequent 50,000 miles (83 000 km).*

(n) *Visually inspect belt for fraying, excessive cracks, or obvious damage. Replace belt if necessary.*

## **Owner Checks and Services**

These owner checks and services should be performed at the intervals specified to help ensure the safety, dependability, and emission control performance of your vehicle. Your dealer/retailer can assist you with these checks and services.

Be sure any necessary repairs are completed at once. Whenever any fluids or lubricants are added to your vehicle, make sure they are the proper ones, as shown in *Recommended Fluids and Lubricants on page 6-13.*

## At Each Fuel Fill

*It is important to perform these underhood checks at each fuel fill.*

### Engine Oil Level Check

**Notice:** It is important to check the engine oil regularly and keep it at the proper level. Failure to keep the engine oil at the proper level can cause damage to the engine not covered by your warranty.

Check the engine oil level and add the proper oil if necessary. See *Engine Oil on page 5-15*.

### Engine Coolant Level Check

Check the engine coolant level and add DEX-COOL® coolant mixture if necessary. See *Engine Coolant on page 5-22*.

### Windshield Washer Fluid Level Check

Check the windshield washer fluid level in the windshield washer fluid reservoir and add the proper fluid if necessary.

## At Least Once a Month

### Tire Inflation Check

Inspect your vehicle's tires and make sure they are inflated to the correct pressures. Do not forget to check the spare tire. See *Inflation - Tire Pressure on page 5-58*. Check to make sure the spare tire is stored securely. See *Changing a Flat Tire on page 5-76*.

### Tire Wear Inspection

Tire rotation may be required for high mileage highway drivers prior to the Engine Oil Life System service notification. Check the tires for wear and, if necessary, rotate the tires. See *Tire Inspection and Rotation on page 5-65*.

## At Least Once a Year Starter Switch Check

### CAUTION:

When you are doing this inspection, the vehicle could move suddenly. If the vehicle moves, you or others could be injured.

1. Before you start, be sure you have enough room around the vehicle.
2. Firmly apply both the parking brake and the regular brake. See *Parking Brake on page 2-28*. Do not use the accelerator pedal, and be ready to turn off the engine immediately if it starts.
3. On automatic transmission vehicles, try to start the engine in each gear. The vehicle should start only in PARK (P) or NEUTRAL (N). If the vehicle starts in any other position, contact your dealer/retailer for service.  
On manual transmission vehicles, put the shift lever in NEUTRAL, push the clutch pedal down halfway, and try to start the engine. The vehicle should start only when the clutch pedal is pushed down all the way to the floor. If the vehicle starts when the clutch pedal is not pushed all the way down, contact your dealer/retailer for service.

## Automatic Transmission Shift Lock Control System Check

### CAUTION:

When you are doing this inspection, the vehicle could move suddenly. If the vehicle moves, you or others could be injured.

1. Before you start, be sure you have enough room around the vehicle. It should be parked on a level surface.
2. Firmly apply the parking brake. See *Parking Brake on page 2-28*.  
Be ready to apply the regular brake immediately if the vehicle begins to move.
3. With the engine off, turn the ignition to ON/RUN, but do not start the engine. Without applying the regular brake, try to move the shift lever out of PARK (P) with normal effort. If the shift lever moves out of PARK (P), contact your dealer/retailer for service.

## Ignition Transmission Lock Check

While parked, and with the parking brake set, try to turn the ignition to LOCK/OFF in each shift lever position.

- With an automatic transmission, the ignition should turn to LOCK/OFF only when the shift lever is in PARK (P). The ignition key should come out only in LOCK/OFF.
- With a manual transmission, the ignition key should come out only in LOCK/OFF.

Contact your dealer/retailer if service is required.

## Parking Brake and Automatic Transmission Park (P) Mechanism Check

### CAUTION:

**When you are doing this check, your vehicle could begin to move. You or others could be injured and property could be damaged. Make sure there is room in front of your vehicle in case it begins to roll. Be ready to apply the regular brake at once should the vehicle begin to move.**

Park on a fairly steep hill, with the vehicle facing downhill. Keeping your foot on the regular brake, set the parking brake.

- To check the parking brake's holding ability:  
With the engine running and transmission in NEUTRAL (N), slowly remove foot pressure from the regular brake pedal. Do this until the vehicle is held by the parking brake only.
- To check the PARK (P) mechanism's holding ability:  
With the engine running, shift to PARK (P). Then release the parking brake followed by the regular brake.

Contact your dealer/retailer if service is required.

## Underbody Flushing Service

At least every spring, use plain water to flush any corrosive materials from the underbody. Take care to clean thoroughly any areas where mud and other debris can collect.

## Recommended Fluids and Lubricants

Fluids and lubricants identified below by name, part number, or specification can be obtained from your dealer/retailer.

Usage	Fluid/Lubricant
Engine Oil	Engine oil which meets GM Standard GM6094M and displays the American Petroleum Institute Certified for Gasoline Engines starburst symbol. To determine the proper viscosity for your vehicle's engine, see <i>Engine Oil on page 5-15</i> .
Engine Coolant	50/50 mixture of clean, drinkable water and use only DEX-COOL® Coolant. See <i>Engine Coolant on page 5-22</i> .
Hydraulic Brake System	Delco® Supreme 11 Brake Fluid or equivalent DOT-3 brake fluid.

Usage	Fluid/Lubricant
Windshield Washer	Optikleen® Washer Solvent
Hydraulic Power Steering System	GM Power Steering Fluid (GM Part No. U.S. 89021184, in Canada 89021186).
Parking Brake Cable Guides	Chassis Lubricant (GM Part No. 12377985, in Canada 88901242) or lubricant meeting requirements of NLGI #2, Category LB or GC-LB.
Automatic Transmission	DEXRON®-VI Automatic Transmission Fluid.
Transfer Case	Synthetic Axle Lubricant (GM Part No. U.S. 89021677, in Canada 89021678).
Key Lock Cylinders	Multi-Purpose Lubricant, Superlube (GM Part No. U.S. 12346241, in Canada 10953474).

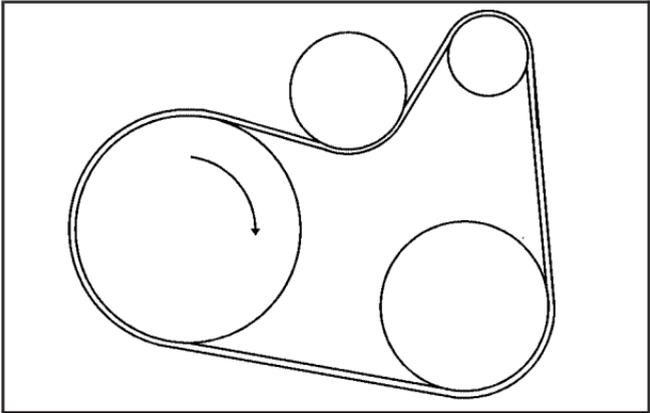
Usage	Fluid/Lubricant
Hood Latch Assembly, Secondary Latch, Pivots, Spring Anchor, and Release Pawl	Lubriplate Lubricant Aerosol (Saturn Part No. 21038869 or GM Part No. U.S. 12346293, in Canada 992723) or lubricant meeting requirements of NLGI #2, Category LB or GC-LB.
Hood, Liftgate Door, and Rear Folding Seat Hinges	Multi-Purpose Lubricant, Superlube (GM Part No. U.S. 12346241, in Canada 10953474).
Sunroof Track	Lubriplate Lubricant Aerosol (Saturn Part No. 21038869 or GM Part No. U.S. 12346293, in Canada 992723) or lubricant meeting requirements of NLGI #2, Category LB or GC-LB.
Weatherstrip Conditioning	Weatherstrip Lubricant (GM Part No. U.S. 3634770, in Canada 10953518) or Dielectric Silicone Grease (GM Part No. U.S. 12345579, in Canada 992887).

## Maintenance Replacement Parts

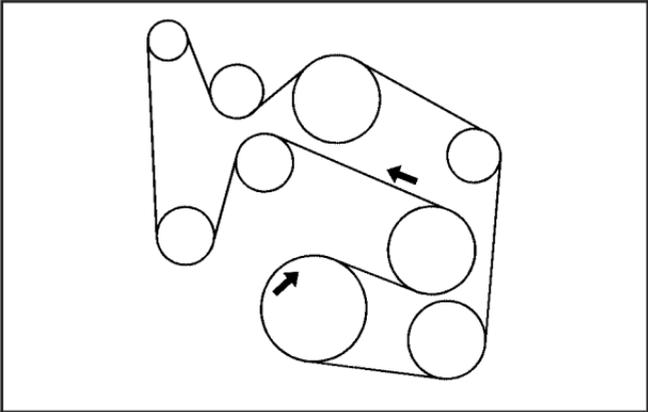
Replacement parts identified below by name, part number, or specification can be obtained from your retailer.

Part	Saturn Part Number	ACDelco Part Number
Engine Air Cleaner/Filter	96815102	—
Engine Oil Filter		
2.4L L4	12605566	PF457G
3.5L V6*	89017342 or 89017525	PF61 or PF63
3.6L V6	89017524	PF48
Passenger Compartment Air Filter Element	19130294	—
Spark Plugs		
2.4L L4	12598004	41-103
3.5L V6	12591131	41-100
3.6L V6	12597464	41-990
Wiper Blades		
Driver's Side – 24 inches (60.0 cm)	96830172	—
Passenger's Side – 16 inches (40.0 cm)	96830174	—
Rear – 12.0 inches (30.0 cm)	96624648	—
*Check the part number of the oil filter installed on the engine. 89017342 (PF61) and 89017525 (PF63) are not interchangeable.		

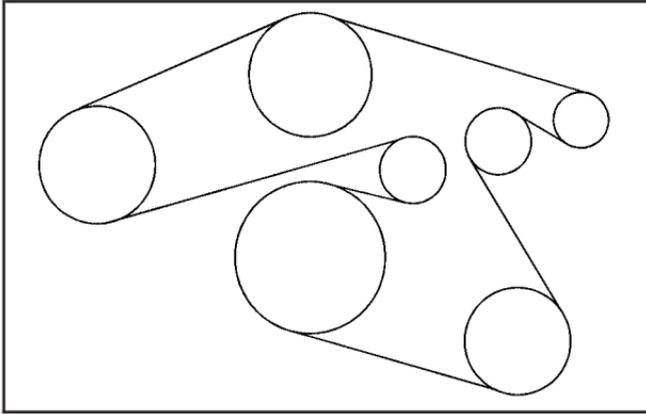
# Engine Drive Belt Routing



2.4L L4 (LE5) Engine



3.5L V6 (LZ4) Engine



**3.6L V6 (LY7) Engine**

## Maintenance Record

After the scheduled services are performed, record the date, odometer reading, who performed the service, and the type of services performed in the boxes provided. See *Maintenance Requirements on page 6-2*. Any additional information from *Owner Checks and Services on page 6-9* can be added on the following record pages. You should retain all maintenance receipts.

### Maintenance Record

Date	Odometer Reading	Serviced By	Maintenance I or Maintenance II	Services Performed



### Maintenance Record (cont'd)

Date	Odometer Reading	Serviced By	Maintenance I or Maintenance II	Services Performed

## Section 7 Customer Assistance Information

---

<b>Customer Assistance and Information</b> .....	7-2	<b>Reporting Safety Defects</b> .....	7-14
Customer Satisfaction Procedure .....	7-2	Reporting Safety Defects to the	
Online Owner Center .....	7-4	United States Government .....	7-14
Customer Assistance for		Reporting Safety Defects to the	
Text Telephone (TTY) Users .....	7-5	Canadian Government .....	7-14
Customer Assistance Offices .....	7-6	Reporting Safety Defects to Saturn .....	7-14
GM Mobility Reimbursement Program .....	7-6	Service Publications Ordering Information .....	7-15
Roadside Assistance Program .....	7-7	<b>Vehicle Data Recording and Privacy</b> .....	7-16
Scheduling Service Appointments .....	7-9	Event Data Recorders .....	7-16
Courtesy Transportation .....	7-9	OnStar® .....	7-17
Collision Damage Repair .....	7-11	Navigation System .....	7-17
		Radio Frequency Identification (RFID) .....	7-17

# Customer Assistance and Information

## Customer Satisfaction Procedure

Your satisfaction and goodwill are important to your retailer and to Saturn. Together we are committed to providing our customers with unparalleled service, before, during, and after the purchase of a Saturn vehicle, for total customer satisfaction. We call this the Saturn Difference. Normally, any concerns with the sales transaction or the operation of the vehicle are resolved by the retailer's sales or service departments. If, for any reason, your ownership experience falls below your expectations, we suggest you take the following action:

**STEP ONE:** Contact the Retail Customer Assistance Liaison. Any member of the retail management team has the authority and the desire to resolve your concerns. Normally, concerns can be quickly resolved at this level.

**STEP TWO:** Should you need additional assistance, in the U.S., contact the Saturn Customer Assistance Center by calling 1-800-553-6000. In Canada, call the Saturn Customer Communication Centre at 1-800-263-1999. A Saturn Customer Assistance Center team member will handle your call and assist in providing product and warranty information, the nearest retailer location, roadside assistance, brochures, literature and discuss any concerns you may have.

We encourage you to call the toll-free number in order to give your inquiry prompt attention. Please have the following information available to give the Customer Assistance Representative:

- Vehicle Identification Number (VIN). This 17-digit number can be found on the vehicle registration or title, on the upper driver side corner of the instrument panel, or on your roadside assistance key card.
- The name of your selling and servicing retail facility.
- Vehicle delivery date and present mileage.
- Your daytime and evening phone numbers.

When contacting Saturn, please remember that your concern will likely be resolved at a retailer's facility. That is why we suggest you follow Step One first.

**STEP THREE (U.S. Owners):** Both Saturn and its retailers are committed to making sure you are completely satisfied with your Saturn vehicle. However, if you continue to remain unsatisfied after following the procedure outlined in Steps One and Two, Saturn and its retailers offer the additional assistance of a neutral party through our voluntary participation in a mediation/arbitration program called Better Business Bureau (BBB) Auto Line.

The BBB Auto Line Program is an out-of-court program administered by the Council of Better Business Bureaus to settle automotive disputes regarding vehicle repairs or the interpretation of the New Vehicle Limited Warranty. This program is available at no cost to you, our customer.

Although you may be required to resort to this informal dispute resolution program prior to filing a court action, use of the program is free of charge and your case is generally heard within 40 days. If you do not agree with the decision given in your case, you can reject it and proceed with any other venue for relief available to you.

Contact the BBB Auto Line Program by using the toll-free telephone number or by writing them at the following address:

BBB Auto Line Program  
Council of Better Business Bureaus, Inc.  
4200 Wilson Boulevard  
Suite 800  
Arlington, VA 22203-1838  
Telephone: 1-800-955-5100

This program is available in all 50 states and the District of Columbia. Eligibility is limited by vehicle age, mileage and other factors. Saturn Corporation reserves the right to change eligibility limitations and/or discontinue its participation in this program.

### **STEP THREE (Canadian Owners):**

#### **General Motors Participation in the Mediation/Arbitration Program**

In the event that you do not feel your concerns have been addressed after following the procedure outlined in Steps 1 and 2, General Motors of Canada Limited has committed to binding arbitration of owner disputes involving factory-related vehicle service claims. The program provides for the review of the facts involved by an impartial third party arbiter, and may include an informal hearing before the arbiter.

The program is designed so that the entire dispute settlement process, from the time you file your complaint to the final decision, should be completed in approximately 70 days. We believe our impartial program offers advantages over courts in most jurisdictions because it is informal, quick, and free of charge.

For further information concerning eligibility in the Canadian Motor Vehicle Arbitration Plan (CAMVAP), call toll-free 1-800-207-0685. Alternatively, you may call the Saturn Customer Communication Centre, 1-800-263-1999, or you may write to:

Mediation/Arbitration Program  
c/o Customer Communication Centre  
General Motors of Canada Limited  
Mail Code: CA1-163-005  
1908 Colonel Sam Drive  
Oshawa, Ontario L1H 8P7  
Telephone: 1-800-955-5100

Your inquiry should be accompanied by the Vehicle Identification Number (VIN).

## Online Owner Center

### (United States only)

This is a resource for your Saturn ownership needs. Specific vehicle information can be found in one place.

#### The Online Owner Center allows you to:

- Get e-mail service reminders.
- Access information about your specific vehicle, including tips and videos and an electronic version of this owner manual.
- Keep track of your vehicle's service history and maintenance schedule.
- Find Saturn retailers for service nationwide.
- Receive special promotions and privileges only available to members.

Refer to [www.saturn.com](http://www.saturn.com) on the web for updated information and to register your vehicle.

## **My GM Canada (Canada only)**

My GM Canada is a password-protected section of gmcanada.com where you can save information on GM vehicles, get personalized offers, and use handy tools and forms with greater ease.

Here are a few of the valuable tools and services you will have access to:

- My Showroom: Find and save information on vehicles and current offers in your area.
- My Dealers/Retailers: Save details such as address and phone number for each of your preferred GM Dealers or Retailers.
- My Driveway: Receive service reminders and helpful advice on owning and maintaining your vehicle.
- My Preferences: Manage your profile, subscribe to E-News and use tools and forms with greater ease.

To sign up, visit the My GM Canada section within [www.gmcanada.com](http://www.gmcanada.com).

## **Customer Assistance for Text Telephone (TTY) Users**

To assist owners who have hearing difficulties, Saturn has installed special TDD (Telecommunication Devices for the Deaf) equipment in its Saturn Customer Assistance Center.

Any hearing or speech-impaired customer who has access to a TDD or to a conventional Text Telephone (TTY) can communicate with Saturn by dialing 1-800-TDD-6000. TTY users in Canada may dial 1-800-263-3830.

## Customer Assistance Offices

Saturn encourages customers to call the toll-free number for assistance. If a customer wishes to write to Saturn, the letter should be addressed to:

Saturn Customer Assistance Center  
100 Saturn Parkway  
Mail Code 371-999-S24  
Spring Hill, TN 37174-1500

1-800-553-6000  
1-800-833-6000 (For Text Telephone devices (TTYs))  
Roadside Assistance: 1-800-553-6000

In Canada, write to:

Saturn Customer Communication Centre  
General Motors of Canada Ltd.  
CA1-163-005  
1908 Colonel Sam Drive  
Oshawa, Ontario L1H 8P7

[www.gmcanada.com](http://www.gmcanada.com)  
1-800-263-1999  
1-800-263-3830 (For Text Telephone devices (TTYs))  
Roadside Assistance: 1-800-268-6800

## GM Mobility Reimbursement Program



This program, available to qualified applicants, can reimburse you up to \$1,000 toward eligible aftermarket driver or passenger adaptive equipment you may require for your vehicle such as hand controls, wheelchair/scooter lifts, etc.

The offer is available for a limited period of time from the date of vehicle purchase/lease.

For more details, or to determine your vehicle's eligibility, visit your Saturn retailer or call the Saturn Customer Assistance Center at 1-800-553-6000. Text telephone (TTY) users, call 1-800-833-6000.

In Canada, customers may call the Saturn Customer Communication Centre at 1-800-263-1999. TTY users in Canada may call 1-800-263-3830.

## Roadside Assistance Program

For vehicles purchased in the U.S., call **1-800-553-6000**;  
**(Text Telephone (TTY): 1-800-889-2438)**.

For vehicles purchased in Canada, call **1-800-268-6800**.

Service is available 24 hours a day, 365 days a year.

As the owner of a new Saturn vehicle, you are automatically enrolled in the Saturn Roadside Assistance Program.

### Who is Covered?

Roadside Assistance coverage is for the vehicle operator, regardless of ownership. In Canada, a person driving this vehicle without the consent of the owner is not eligible for coverage.

### Services Provided

The following services are provided in the U.S. and Canada up to 5 years/100,000 miles (160 000 km), whichever comes first, and, in Canada only, up to a maximum of \$100.

- **Fuel Delivery:** Delivery of enough fuel for the vehicle to get to the nearest service station (approximately \$5 Canada). In Canada, service to provide diesel may be restricted. For safety reasons, propane and other alternative fuels are not provided through this service.

- **Lock-Out Service:** Lock-out service is covered at no charge if you are unable to gain entry into your vehicle. A remote unlock may be available if you have an active OnStar® subscription. To ensure security, the driver must present personal identification before lock-out service is provided. In Canada, the vehicle registration is also required.
- **Emergency Tow From a Public Roadway or Highway:** Tow to the nearest Saturn retailer for warranty service or in the event of a vehicle-disabling crash. Winch-out assistance is provided when the vehicle is mired in sand, mud, or snow.
- **Flat Tire Change:** Installation of a spare tire in good condition, when equipped and properly inflated, is covered at no charge. The customer is responsible for the repair or replacement of the tire if not covered by a warrantable failure.
- **Jump Start:** A battery jump start is covered at no charge if the vehicle does not start.
- **Trip Routing Service (Canada Only):** Upon request, Roadside Assistance will send you detailed, computer personalized maps, highlighting your choice of either the most direct route or the most scenic route to your destination, anywhere in North America, along with helpful travel information pertaining to your trip.  
Please allow three weeks before your planned departure date. Trip routing requests are limited to six per calendar year.

- **Trip Interruption Benefits and Assistance (Canada Only):** In the event of a warranty related vehicle disablement, while en route and over 250 kilometres from the original point of departure, you might qualify for trip interruption expense assistance. This assistance covers reasonable reimbursement of up to a maximum of \$500 (Canadian) for (A) meals (maximum of \$50/day), (B) lodging (maximum of \$100/night), and (C) alternate ground transportation (maximum of \$40/day). This benefit is to assist you with some of the unplanned expense you may incur while waiting for your vehicle to be repaired.

Pre-authorization, original detailed receipts, and a copy of the repair order are required.

Once authorization has been given, your advisor will help you make any necessary arrangements and explain how to claim for trip interruption expense assistance.

- **Alternative Service (Canada Only):** There could be times when Roadside Assistance cannot provide timely assistance. Your advisor may authorize you to secure local emergency road service, and you will be reimbursed up to \$100 upon submission of the original receipt to Roadside Assistance.

In many instances, mechanical failures may be covered. However, any cost for parts and labor for non-warranty repairs are the responsibility of the driver.

Saturn and General Motors of Canada Limited reserve the right to limit services or reimbursement to an owner or driver when, in their sole discretion, the claims become excessive in frequency or type of occurrence.

## Calling for Assistance

For prompt and efficient assistance when calling, please provide the following to the Roadside Assistance Representatives:

- Your name, home address, and home telephone number
- Telephone number of your location
- Location of the vehicle
- Model, year, color, and license plate number of the vehicle
- Odometer reading, Vehicle Identification Number (VIN) and delivery date of the vehicle
- Description of the problem

## **Towing and Road Service Exclusions**

Specifically excluded from Roadside Assistance coverage are towing or services for vehicles operated on a non-public roadway or highway, fines, impound towing caused by a violation of local, Municipal, State, Provincial or Federal law, and mounting, dismounting or changing of snow tires, chains, or other traction devices.

Roadside Assistance is not part of or included in the coverage provided by the New Vehicle Limited Warranty. Saturn and General Motors of Canada Limited reserve the right to make any changes or discontinue the Roadside Assistance program at any time without notification.

## **Scheduling Service Appointments**

When your vehicle requires warranty service, contact your dealer/retailer and request an appointment. By scheduling a service appointment and advising your service consultant of your transportation needs, your dealer/retailer can help minimize your inconvenience.

If your vehicle cannot be scheduled into the service department immediately, keep driving it until it can be scheduled for service, unless, of course, the problem is safety-related. If it is, please call your dealership/retailer, let them know this, and ask for instructions.

If the dealer/retailer requests that you simply drop the vehicle off for service, you are urged to do so as early in the work day as possible to allow for the same day repair.

## **Courtesy Transportation**

To enhance your ownership experience, we and our participating retailers are proud to offer Courtesy Transportation, a customer support program for vehicles with the Bumper to Bumper (Base Warranty Coverage period in Canada) and extended powertrain warranty in both the U.S. and Canada.

Several courtesy transportation options are available to assist in reducing your inconvenience when warranty repairs are required.

Courtesy Transportation is not a part of the New Vehicle Limited Warranty. A separate booklet entitled "Warranty and Owner Assistance Information" furnished with each new vehicle provides detailed warranty coverage information.

## **Transportation Options**

Warranty service can generally be completed while you wait. However, if you are unable to wait, Saturn helps to minimize your inconvenience by providing several transportation options. Depending on the circumstances, your retailer can offer you one of the following:

### **Shuttle Service**

Shuttle service is the preferred means of offering Courtesy Transportation. Retailers may provide you with shuttle service to get you to your destination with minimal interruption of your daily schedule. This includes one-way or round trip shuttle service within reasonable time and distance parameters of the retailer's area.

### **Public Transportation or Fuel Reimbursement**

If your vehicle requires overnight warranty repairs, and public transportation is used instead of the retailer's shuttle service, the expense must be supported by original receipts and can only be up to the maximum amount allowed by Saturn for shuttle service. In addition, for U.S. customers, should you arrange transportation through a friend or relative, limited reimbursement for reasonable fuel expenses may be available.

Claim amounts should reflect actual costs and be supported by original receipts. See your retailer for information regarding the allowance amounts for reimbursement of fuel or other transportation costs.

### **Courtesy Rental Vehicle**

Your retailer may arrange to provide you with a courtesy rental vehicle or reimburse you for a rental vehicle that you obtain if your vehicle is kept for an overnight warranty repair. Rental reimbursement will be limited and must be supported by original receipts. This requires that you sign and complete a rental agreement and meet state/provincial, local, and rental vehicle provider requirements. Requirements vary and may include minimum age requirements, insurance coverage, credit card, etc. You are responsible for fuel usage charges and may also be responsible for taxes, levies, usage fees, excessive mileage, or rental usage beyond the completion of the repair.

It may not be possible to provide a like-vehicle as a courtesy rental.

## **Additional Program Information**

All program options, such as shuttle service, may not be available at every retailer. Please contact your retailer for specific information about availability. All Courtesy Transportation arrangements will be administered by appropriate retailer personnel.

*Saturn reserves the right to unilaterally modify, change or discontinue Courtesy Transportation at any time and to resolve all questions of claim eligibility pursuant to the terms and conditions described herein at its sole discretion.*

## **Collision Damage Repair**

If your vehicle is involved in a collision and it is damaged, have the damage repaired by a qualified technician using the proper equipment and quality replacement parts. Poorly performed collision repairs diminish your vehicle's resale value, and safety performance can be compromised in subsequent collisions.

## **Collision Parts**

Genuine GM Collision parts are new parts made with the same materials and construction methods as the parts with which your vehicle was originally built. Genuine GM Collision parts are your best choice to ensure that your vehicle's designed appearance, durability, and safety are preserved. The use of Genuine GM parts can help maintain your GM New Vehicle Warranty.

Recycled original equipment parts may also be used for repair. These parts are typically removed from vehicles that were total losses in prior crashes. In most cases, the parts being recycled are from undamaged sections of the vehicle. A recycled original equipment GM part, may be an acceptable choice to maintain your vehicle's originally designed appearance and safety performance, however, the history of these parts is not known. Such parts are not covered by your GM New Vehicle Limited Warranty, and any related failures are not covered by that warranty.

Aftermarket collision parts are also available. These are made by companies other than GM and may not have been tested for your vehicle. As a result, these parts may fit poorly, exhibit premature durability/corrosion problems, and may not perform properly in subsequent collisions. Aftermarket parts are not covered by your GM New Vehicle Limited Warranty, and any vehicle failure related to such parts are not covered by that warranty.

## Repair Facility

We recommend that you choose a collision repair facility that meets your needs before you ever need collision repairs. Your dealer/retailer may have a collision repair center with GM-trained technicians and state of the art equipment, or be able to recommend a collision repair center that has GM-trained technicians and comparable equipment.

## Insuring Your Vehicle

Protect your investment in your GM vehicle with comprehensive and collision insurance coverage. There are significant differences in the quality of coverage afforded by various insurance policy terms. Many insurance policies provide reduced protection to your GM vehicle by limiting compensation for damage repairs by using aftermarket collision parts. Some insurance companies will not specify aftermarket collision parts. When purchasing insurance, we recommend that you assure your vehicle will be repaired with GM original equipment collision parts. If such insurance coverage is not available from your current insurance carrier, consider switching to another insurance carrier.

If your vehicle is leased, the leasing company may require you to have insurance that assures repairs with Genuine GM Original Equipment Manufacturer (OEM) parts or Genuine Manufacturer replacement parts. Read your lease carefully, as you may be charged at the end of your lease for poor quality repairs.

## If a Crash Occurs

Here is what to do if you are involved in a crash.

- Check to make sure that you are all right. If you are uninjured, make sure that no one else in your vehicle, or the other vehicle, is injured.
- If there has been an injury, call emergency services for help. Do not leave the scene of a crash until all matters have been taken care of. Move your vehicle only if its position puts you in danger or you are instructed to move it by a police officer.
- Give only the necessary and requested information to police and other parties involved in the crash. Do not discuss your personal condition, mental frame of mind, or anything unrelated to the crash. This will help guard against post-crash legal action.
- If you need roadside assistance, call GM Roadside Assistance. See *Roadside Assistance Program on page 7-7* for more information.
- If your vehicle cannot be driven, know where the towing service will be taking it. Get a card from the tow truck operator or write down the driver's name, the service's name, and the phone number.
- Remove any valuables from your vehicle before it is towed away. Make sure this includes your insurance information and registration if you keep these items in your vehicle.

- Gather the important information you will need from the other driver. Things like name, address, phone number, driver's license number, vehicle license plate, vehicle make, model and model year, Vehicle Identification Number (VIN), insurance company and policy number, and a general description of the damage to the other vehicle.
- If possible, call your insurance company from the scene of the crash. They will walk you through the information they will need. If they ask for a police report, phone or go to the police department headquarters the next day and you can get a copy of the report for a nominal fee. In some states/provinces with "no fault" insurance laws, a report may not be necessary. This is especially true if there are no injuries and both vehicles are driveable.
- Choose a reputable collision repair facility for your vehicle. Whether you select a dealer/retailer or a private collision repair facility to fix the damage, make sure you are comfortable with them. Remember, you will have to feel comfortable with their work for a long time.
- Once you have an estimate, read it carefully and make sure you understand what work will be performed on your vehicle. If you have a question, ask for an explanation. Reputable shops welcome this opportunity.

## **Managing the Vehicle Damage Repair Process**

In the event that your vehicle requires damage repairs, GM recommends that you take an active role in its repair. If you have a pre-determined repair facility of choice, take your vehicle there, or have it towed there. Specify to the facility that any required replacement collision parts be original equipment parts, either new Genuine GM parts or recycled original GM parts. Remember, recycled parts will not be covered by your GM vehicle warranty.

Insurance pays the bill for the repair, but you must live with the repair. Depending on your policy limits, your insurance company may initially value the repair using aftermarket parts. Discuss this with your repair professional, and insist on Genuine GM parts. Remember if your vehicle is leased you may be obligated to have the vehicle repaired with Genuine GM parts, even if your insurance coverage does not pay the full cost.

If another party's insurance company is paying for the repairs, you are not obligated to accept a repair valuation based on that insurance company's collision policy repair limits, as you have no contractual limits with that company. In such cases, you can have control of the repair and parts choices as long as cost stays within reasonable limits.

## Reporting Safety Defects

### Reporting Safety Defects to the United States Government

If you believe that your vehicle has a defect which could cause a crash or could cause injury or death, you should immediately inform the National Highway Traffic Safety Administration (NHTSA), in addition to notifying Saturn Corporation.

If NHTSA receives similar complaints, it could open an investigation, and if it finds that a safety defect exists in a group of vehicles, it could order a recall and remedy campaign. However, NHTSA cannot become involved in individual problems between you, your retailer or Saturn Corporation.

To contact NHTSA, call the Vehicle Safety Hotline toll-free at 1-888-327-4236 (TTY: 1-800-424-9153); go to <http://www.safercar.gov>; or write to:

Administrator, NHTSA  
400 Seventh Street, SW.  
Washington D.C., 20590

You can also obtain other information about motor vehicle safety from <http://www.safercar.gov>.

### Reporting Safety Defects to the Canadian Government

If you live in Canada, and you believe that your vehicle has a safety defect, notify Transport Canada immediately, in addition to notifying General Motors of Canada Limited. Call them at 1-800-333-0510 or write to:

Transport Canada  
Road Safety Branch  
2780 Sheffield Road  
Ottawa, Ontario K1B 3V9

### Reporting Safety Defects to Saturn

In addition to notifying NHTSA (or Transport Canada) in a situation like this, please notify Saturn.

Call 1-800-553-6000, or write:

Saturn Corporation  
100 Saturn Parkway  
Mail Drop 371-999-S24  
Spring Hill, TN 37174-1500

In Canada, call 1-800-263-1999, or write:

Saturn Customer Communication Centre  
General Motors of Canada Limited  
CA1-163-005  
1908 Colonel Sam Drive  
Oshawa, Ontario L1H 8P7

## **Service Publications Ordering Information**

### **Service Manuals**

A variety of publications are available to you. Saturn service manuals are written for trained technicians, and in some cases, specialized tools and equipment are necessary to complete certain repairs. However, the manuals are available to owners who either have the training, or wish to gain a greater understanding of the technical aspect of their Saturn.

For additional publications information or to order publications in the United States, call toll free 1-800-2-SATURN or visit [www.saturn-publications.com](http://www.saturn-publications.com) to order on-line.

In Canada, Saturn service manuals are available by calling toll free 1-800-551-4123.

### **Owner Publications**

Information on how to obtain product bulletins and as described below is applicable only in the fifty U.S. states and the District of Columbia, and only for cars and light trucks with a Gross Vehicle Weight Rating (GVWR) less than 10,000 pounds (4 536 kg). Copies of individual bulletins are also at your participating Saturn retailer. You can ask to see them.

In Canada, information relating to product service bulletins can be obtained by contacting your Saturn retailer.

### **Service Bulletins**

Saturn regularly sends its retailers useful service bulletins about Saturn products. Saturn monitors product performance in the field. We then prepare bulletins for servicing our products better. You can get these bulletins, too.

Bulletins cover various subjects. Some pertain to the proper use and care of your vehicle. Some describe costly repairs. Others describe inexpensive repairs which, if done on time with the latest parts, may avoid future costly repairs.

Some bulletins tell a technician how to repair a new or unexpected condition. Others describe a quicker way to fix your vehicle. They can help a technician service your vehicle better.

Most bulletins apply to conditions affecting a small number of vehicles. Your Saturn retailer or a qualified technician may have to determine if a specific bulletin applies to your vehicle. To order Saturn bulletins, call Saturn Publications at 1-800-2-SATURN or visit [www.saturn-publications.com](http://www.saturn-publications.com) to order online.

## Vehicle Data Recording and Privacy

Your Saturn vehicle has a number of sophisticated computers that record information about the vehicle's performance and how it is driven. For example, your vehicle uses computer modules to monitor and control engine and transmission performance, to monitor the conditions for airbag deployment and deploy airbags in a crash and, if so equipped, to provide antilock braking to help the driver control the vehicle. These modules may store data to help your dealer/retailer technician service your vehicle. Some modules may also store data about how you operate the vehicle, such as rate of fuel consumption or average speed. These modules may also retain the owner's personal preferences, such as radio pre-sets, seat positions, and temperature settings.

## Event Data Recorders

This vehicle has an Event Data Recorder (EDR). The main purpose of an EDR is to record, in certain crash or near crash-like situations, such as an airbag deployment or hitting a road obstacle, data that will assist in understanding how a vehicle's systems performed. The EDR is designed to record data related to vehicle dynamics and safety systems for a short period of time, typically 30 seconds or less. The EDR in this vehicle is designed to record such data as:

- How various systems in your vehicle were operating
- Whether or not the driver and passenger safety belts were buckled/fastened
- How far, if at all, the driver was pressing the accelerator and/or brake pedal
- How fast the vehicle was traveling

This data can help provide a better understanding of the circumstances in which crashes and injuries occur.

**Important:** EDR data is recorded by your vehicle only if a non-trivial crash situation occurs; no data is recorded by the EDR under normal driving conditions and no personal data (e.g., name, gender, age, and crash location) is recorded. However, other parties, such as law enforcement, could combine the EDR data with the type of personally identifying data routinely acquired during a crash investigation.

To read data recorded by an EDR, special equipment is required, and access to the vehicle or the EDR is needed. In addition to the vehicle manufacturer, other parties, such as law enforcement, that have the special equipment, can read the information if they have access to the vehicle or the EDR.

Saturn will not access this data or share it with others except: with the consent of the vehicle owner or, if the vehicle is leased, with the consent of the lessee; in response to an official request of police or similar government office; as part of Saturn's defense of litigation through the discovery process; or, as required by law. Data that Saturn collects or receives may also be used for Saturn research needs or may be made available to others for research purposes, where a need is shown and the data is not tied to a specific vehicle or vehicle owner.

## **OnStar®**

If your vehicle has OnStar and you subscribe to the OnStar services, please refer to the OnStar Terms and Conditions for information on data collection and use. See also *OnStar® System on page 2-35* in this manual for more information.

## **Navigation System**

If your vehicle has a navigation system, use of the system may result in the storage of destinations, addresses, telephone numbers, and other trip information. Refer to the navigation system operating manual for information on stored data and for deletion instructions.

## **Radio Frequency Identification (RFID)**

RFID technology is used in some vehicles for functions such as tire pressure monitoring and ignition system security, as well as in connection with conveniences such as key fobs for remote door locking/unlocking and starting, and in-vehicle transmitters for garage door openers. RFID technology in Saturn vehicles does not use or record personal information or link with any other Saturn system containing personal information.



# A

About Driving Your Vehicle .....	iii	Anti-lock Brake, System Warning Light .....	3-37
Accessories and Modifications .....	5-3	Appearance Care	
Adding Equipment to Your Airbag-Equipped Vehicle .....	1-70	Aluminum Wheels .....	5-92
Additives, Fuel .....	5-7	Care of Safety Belts .....	5-89
Add-On Electrical Equipment .....	5-96	Chemical Paint Spotting .....	5-93
Air Cleaner/Filter, Engine .....	5-20	Cleaning Exterior Lamps/Lenses .....	5-90
Air Conditioning .....	3-19, 3-23	Fabric/Carpet .....	5-88
Airbag		Finish Care .....	5-90
Passenger Status Indicator .....	3-34	Finish Damage .....	5-93
Readiness Light .....	3-33	Instrument Panel, Vinyl, and Other Plastic Surfaces .....	5-89
Airbag System .....	1-55	Interior Cleaning .....	5-87
What Will You See After an Airbag Inflates? ....	1-64	Sheet Metal Damage .....	5-93
When Should an Airbag Inflate? .....	1-61	Tires .....	5-92
Where Are the Airbags? .....	1-58	Underbody Maintenance .....	5-93
Airbag Systems		Vehicle Care/Appearance Materials .....	5-94
Adding Equipment to Your Airbag-Equipped Vehicle .....	1-70	Washing Your Vehicle .....	5-90
How Does an Airbag Restrain? .....	1-63	Weatherstrips .....	5-89
Passenger Sensing System .....	1-65	Windshield and Wiper Blades .....	5-91
Servicing Your Airbag-Equipped Vehicle .....	1-70	Appointments, Scheduling Service .....	7-9
What Makes an Airbag Inflate? .....	1-63	Audio System .....	3-52
All-Wheel Drive .....	5-41	Audio Steering Wheel Controls .....	3-70
All-Wheel Drive Disabled Light .....	3-46	Fixed Mast Antenna .....	3-71
All-Wheel-Drive (AWD) System .....	4-10	Navigation/Radio System, see Navigation Manual .....	3-69
Antenna, Fixed Mast .....	3-71	Radio Reception .....	3-70
Antenna, XM™ Satellite Radio Antenna System ...	3-71	Setting the Clock .....	3-53
Antilock Brake System (ABS) .....	4-6	XM™ Satellite Radio Antenna System .....	3-71
		Audio System(s) .....	3-55
		Automatic Climate Control System .....	3-23

Automatic Door Lock .....	2-9
Automatic Door Unlock .....	2-10
Automatic Headlamp System .....	3-15
Automatic Transmission	
Fluid .....	5-22
Operation .....	2-22, 2-25

## B

Battery .....	5-36
Run-Down Protection .....	3-17
Brake	
Emergencies .....	4-6
Brakes .....	5-33
System Warning Light .....	3-37
Braking .....	4-5
Braking in Emergencies .....	4-6
Break-In, New Vehicle .....	2-18
Bulb Replacement .....	5-46
Front Turn Signal and Parking Lamps .....	5-47
Halogen Bulbs .....	5-46
Headlamp Aiming .....	5-43
Headlamps .....	5-46
License Plate Lamps .....	5-49
Replacement Bulbs .....	5-49
Taillamps, Turn Signal, Stoplamps and Back-up Lamps .....	5-48
Buying New Tires .....	5-68

## C

Calibration .....	3-50
California Fuel .....	5-6
California Perchlorate Materials Requirements .....	5-4
California Proposition 65 Warning .....	5-4
Canadian Owners .....	ii
Capacities and Specifications .....	5-104
Carbon Monoxide .....	2-32, 4-44
Care of	
Safety Belts .....	5-89
Cargo Cover .....	2-47
Cargo Management System .....	2-48
Cargo Tie Downs .....	2-48
CD, MP3 .....	3-64
Center Console Storage Area .....	2-45
Chains, Tire .....	5-74
Charging System Light .....	3-36
Check	
Engine Light .....	3-41
Checking Things Under the Hood .....	5-10
Chemical Paint Spotting .....	5-93
Child Restraints	
Child Restraint Systems .....	1-39
Infants and Young Children .....	1-36
Lower Anchors and Tethers for Children .....	1-43
Older Children .....	1-33
Securing a Child Restraint in a Rear Seat Position .....	1-49

Child Restraints (cont.)		Content Theft-Deterrent .....	2-14
Securing a Child Restraint in the Right Front		Control of a Vehicle .....	4-4
Seat Position .....	1-51	Convenience Net .....	2-47
Where to Put the Restraint .....	1-41	Coolant	
Cleaning		Engine Temperature Warning Light .....	3-40
Aluminum Wheels .....	5-92	Heater, Engine .....	2-21
Exterior Lamps/Lenses .....	5-90	Surge Tank Pressure Cap .....	5-25
Fabric/Carpet .....	5-88	Cooling System .....	5-27
Finish Care .....	5-90	Cruise Control .....	3-11
Instrument Panel, Vinyl, and Other Plastic		Cruise Control Light .....	3-45
Surfaces .....	5-89	Cupholders .....	2-44
Interior .....	5-87	Customer Assistance Information	
Tires .....	5-92	Courtesy Transportation .....	7-9
Underbody Maintenance .....	5-93	Customer Assistance for Text Telephone (TTY)	
Washing Your Vehicle .....	5-90	Users .....	7-5
Weatherstrips .....	5-89	Customer Assistance Offices .....	7-6
Windshield and Wiper Blades .....	5-91	Customer Satisfaction Procedure .....	7-2
Climate Control System .....	3-19	GM Mobility Reimbursement Program .....	7-6
Air Filter, Passenger Compartment .....	3-28	Reporting Safety Defects to Saturn .....	7-14
Automatic .....	3-23	Reporting Safety Defects to the	
Outlet Adjustment .....	3-28	Canadian Government .....	7-14
Clock, Setting .....	3-53	Reporting Safety Defects to the	
Collision Damage Repair .....	7-11	United States Government .....	7-14
Compact Spare Tire .....	5-86	Roadside Assistance Program .....	7-7
Compass .....	3-50	Service Publications Ordering Information .....	7-15

## D

Daytime Running Lamps .....	3-15
Defensive Driving .....	4-3
Delayed Locking .....	2-9
DIC Compass .....	3-50
Diesel	
Running Out of Fuel .....	2-32
Disc, MP3 .....	3-64
Doing Your Own Service Work .....	5-4
Dome Lamp .....	3-17
Door	
Ajjar Light .....	3-47
Automatic Door Lock .....	2-9
Automatic Door Unlock .....	2-10
Delayed Locking .....	2-9
Locks .....	2-9
Power Door Locks .....	2-9
Rear Door Security Locks .....	2-10
Driver	
Seat Height Adjuster .....	1-5
Driver Behavior .....	4-2
Driver Information Center (DIC) .....	3-49
DIC Operation and Displays .....	3-49
Driving	
At Night .....	4-27
Before a Long Trip .....	4-29
Defensive .....	4-3
Drunken .....	4-4
Environment .....	4-2

Driving (cont.)	
Highway Hypnosis .....	4-29
Hill and Mountain Roads .....	4-30
In Rain and on Wet Roads .....	4-28
Off-Road .....	4-15
Rocking Your Vehicle to Get it Out .....	4-35
Winter .....	4-31

## E

EDR .....	7-16
Electrical System	
Add-On Equipment .....	5-96
Fuses and Circuit Breakers .....	5-97
Instrument Panel Fuse Block .....	5-97
Power Windows and Other Power Options .....	5-96
Underhood Fuse Block .....	5-100
Windshield Wiper Fuses .....	5-96
Electronic Immobilizer	
PASS-Key® III+ .....	2-16
Electronic Immobilizer Operation	
PASS-Key® III+ .....	2-16
Electronic Stability Program .....	4-8
Engine	
Air Cleaner/Filter .....	5-20
Change Engine Oil Light .....	3-44
Check and Service Engine Soon Light .....	3-41
Coolant .....	5-22
Coolant Heater .....	2-21

Engine (cont.)	
Coolant Temperature Warning Light .....	3-40
Drive Belt Routing .....	6-16
Engine Compartment Overview .....	5-12
Exhaust .....	2-32
Oil .....	5-15
Oil Life System .....	5-18
Overheating .....	5-25
Reduced Power Light .....	3-45
Starting .....	2-20
Entry Lighting .....	3-17
Event Data Recorders .....	7-16
Extender, Safety Belt .....	1-32
Exterior Lamps .....	3-14

## F

Filter	
Engine Air Cleaner .....	5-20
Finish Damage .....	5-93
Fixed Mast Antenna .....	3-71
Flashers, Hazard Warning .....	3-6
Flash-to-Pass .....	3-8
Flat Tire .....	5-75
Flat Tire, Changing .....	5-76
Flat Tire, Storing .....	5-85

Fluid	
Automatic Transmission .....	5-22
Power Steering .....	5-31
Windshield Washer .....	5-32
Fog Lamp	
Fog .....	3-16
Fog Lamp Light .....	3-45
Folding Rear Seat .....	1-12
Folding Seatback, Passenger .....	1-10
Front Storage Area .....	2-44
Fuel	
Additives .....	5-7
California Fuel .....	5-6
Filling a Portable Fuel Container .....	5-10
Filling the Tank .....	5-8
Fuels in Foreign Countries .....	5-7
Gage .....	3-47
Gasoline Octane .....	5-6
Gasoline Specifications .....	5-6
Low Warning Light .....	3-48
Running Out of .....	2-32
Fuses	
Fuses and Circuit Breakers .....	5-97
Instrument Panel Fuse Block .....	5-97
Underhood Fuse Block .....	5-100
Windshield Wiper .....	5-96

## G

Gage	
Fuel .....	3-47
Speedometer .....	3-32
Tachometer .....	3-32
Garage Door Opener .....	2-38
Gasoline	
Octane .....	5-6
Specifications .....	5-6
Gate Ajar Light .....	3-46
Glove Box .....	2-43
GM Mobility Reimbursement Program .....	7-6

## H

Hazard Warning Flashers .....	3-6
Head Restraints .....	1-2
Headlamp	
Aiming .....	5-43
Headlamps .....	5-46
Bulb Replacement .....	5-46
Daytime Running Lamps .....	3-15
Exterior Lamps .....	3-14
Flash-to-Pass .....	3-8
Front Turn Signal and Parking Lamps .....	5-47
Halogen Bulbs .....	5-46

Headlamps (cont.)	
High/Low Beam Changer .....	3-8
Wiper Activated .....	3-14
Heated Seats .....	1-6
Heater .....	3-19, 3-23
Height Adjuster, Driver Seat .....	1-5
Highbeam On Light .....	3-46
High-Speed Operation, Tires .....	5-59
Highway Hypnosis .....	4-29
Hill and Mountain Roads .....	4-30
Hood	
Checking Things Under .....	5-10
Release .....	5-11
Horn .....	3-6
How to Wear Safety Belts Properly .....	1-19

## I

Ignition Positions .....	2-18
Infants and Young Children, Restraints .....	1-36
Inflation - Tire Pressure .....	5-58
Instrument Panel	
Brightness .....	3-16
Cluster .....	3-31
Overview .....	3-4
Storage Area .....	2-44

## J

Jump Starting ..... 5-37

## K

Keyless Entry System ..... 2-4

Keys ..... 2-3

## L

Labeling, Tire Sidewall ..... 5-52

### Lamps

    Dome ..... 3-17

    Reading ..... 3-17

Lap-Shoulder Belt ..... 1-27

### LATCH System

    Child Restraints ..... 1-43

License Plate Lamps ..... 5-49

### Liftgate

    Carbon Monoxide ..... 2-11

### Light

    Airbag Readiness ..... 3-33

    All-Wheel Drive Disabled ..... 3-46

    Anti-lock Brake System (ABS) Warning ..... 3-37

    Brake System Warning ..... 3-37

    Change Engine Oil ..... 3-44

    Charging System ..... 3-36

    Cruise Control ..... 3-45

### Light (cont.)

    Door Ajar ..... 3-47

    Electronic Stabilitrak Program Indicator ..... 3-39

    Engine Coolant Temperature Warning ..... 3-40

    Fog Lamp ..... 3-45

    Gate Ajar ..... 3-46

    Highbeam On ..... 3-46

    Low Fuel Warning ..... 3-48

    Low Oil Level ..... 3-44

    Low Washer Fluid Warning ..... 3-46

    Malfunction Indicator ..... 3-41

    Oil Pressure ..... 3-43

    Passenger Airbag Status Indicator ..... 3-34

    Reduced Engine Power ..... 3-45

    Safety Belt Reminders ..... 3-32

    Security ..... 3-44

    Service Vehicle Soon ..... 3-47

### Speed Sensitive Power Steering (SSPS)

    Warning Light ..... 3-38

    TCS Warning Light ..... 3-39

    Tire Pressure ..... 3-40

    Traction Control System (TCS) Warning ..... 3-39

### Lighting

    Entry ..... 3-17

### Lights

    Exterior Lamps ..... 3-14

    Flash-to-Pass ..... 3-8

    High/Low Beam Changer ..... 3-8

Loading Your Vehicle ..... 4-35

Lockout Protection ..... 2-10

Locks	
Automatic Door Lock .....	2-9
Automatic Door Unlock .....	2-10
Delayed Locking .....	2-9
Door .....	2-9
Lockout Protection .....	2-10
Power Door .....	2-9
Rear Door Security Locks .....	2-10
Loss of Control .....	4-13
Low Fuel Warning Light .....	3-48
Low Washer Fluid Warning Light .....	3-46
Luggage Carrier .....	2-46
Lumbar	
Manual Controls .....	1-6

## M

Maintenance Schedule	
Additional Required Services .....	6-6
At Each Fuel Fill .....	6-10
At Least Once a Month .....	6-10
At Least Once a Year .....	6-11
Introduction .....	6-2
Maintenance Footnotes .....	6-8
Maintenance Record .....	6-18

Maintenance Schedule (cont.)	
Maintenance Replacement Parts .....	6-15
Maintenance Requirements .....	6-2
Owner Checks and Services .....	6-9
Recommended Fluids and Lubricants .....	6-13
Scheduled Maintenance .....	6-3
Using .....	6-2
Your Vehicle and the Environment .....	6-2
Malfunction Indicator Light .....	3-41
Manual Lumbar Controls .....	1-6
Manual Seats .....	1-4
Manual, Using .....	iii
Mirrors	
Automatic Dimming Rearview .....	2-33
Manual Rearview .....	2-33
Outside Convex Mirror .....	2-34
Outside Power Mirrors .....	2-34
MP3 .....	3-64
MyGMLink.com .....	7-4

## N

Navigation System, Privacy .....	7-17
Navigation/Radio System, see Navigation	
Manual .....	3-69
New Vehicle Break-In .....	2-18

## O

Odometer .....	3-32
Odometer, Trip .....	3-32
Off-Road Driving .....	4-15
Off-Road Recovery .....	4-13
Oil	
Change Engine Oil Light .....	3-44
Engine .....	5-15
Low Oil Level Light .....	3-44
Pressure Light .....	3-43
Oil, Engine Oil Life System .....	5-18
Older Children, Restraints .....	1-33
Online Owner Center .....	7-4
OnStar, Privacy .....	7-17
OnStar® System, see OnStar® Manual .....	2-35
Operation, Universal Home Remote System .....	2-39
Outlet Adjustment .....	3-28
Outlets	
Accessory Power .....	3-18
Outside	
Convex Mirror .....	2-34
Power Mirrors .....	2-34
Owner Checks and Services .....	6-9
Owners, Canadian .....	ii

## P

Paint, Damage .....	5-93
Park Brake .....	2-28
Park (P)	
Shifting Into .....	2-29
Shifting Out of .....	2-31
Parking	
Over Things That Burn .....	2-31
Passenger Airbag Status Indicator .....	3-34
Passenger Compartment Air Filter .....	3-28
Passenger Sensing System .....	1-65
Passing .....	4-13
PASS-KEY® III+ Electronic Immobilizer .....	2-16
PASS-Key® III+ Electronic Immobilizer	
Operation .....	2-16
Perchlorate Materials Requirements, California .....	5-4
Power	
Door Locks .....	2-9
Electrical System .....	5-96
Reduced Engine Light .....	3-45
Retained Accessory (RAP) .....	2-19
Seat .....	1-5
Steering Fluid .....	5-31
Windows .....	2-13
Privacy .....	7-16
Event Data Recorders .....	7-16
Navigation System .....	7-17
OnStar .....	7-17
Radio Frequency Identification .....	7-17

## R

Radio Frequency Identification (RFID), Privacy ....	7-17
Radio(s) .....	3-55
Radios	
Navigation/Radio System, see Navigation	
Manual .....	3-69
Reception .....	3-70
Setting the Clock .....	3-53
Rainsense™ II Wipers .....	3-9
Reading Lamps .....	3-17
Rear Door Security Locks .....	2-10
Rear Seat Armrest .....	2-47
Rear Windshield Washer/Wiper .....	3-11
Rearview Mirror, Automatic Dimming .....	2-33
Reclining Seatbacks .....	1-7
Recommended Fluids and Lubricants .....	6-13
Recreational Vehicle Towing .....	4-41
Reduced Engine Power Light .....	3-45
Remote Keyless Entry (RKE) System .....	2-4
Remote Keyless Entry (RKE) System, Operation ...	2-5
Remote Vehicle Start .....	2-7
Removing the Flat Tire and Installing the Spare Tire .....	5-79
Removing the Spare Tire and Tools .....	5-77
Replacement Bulbs .....	5-49
Replacement Parts, Maintenance .....	6-15
Reporting Safety Defects	
Canadian Government .....	7-14
Saturn .....	7-14
United States Government .....	7-14
Restraint System Check	
Checking the Restraint Systems .....	1-72
Replacing Restraint System Parts After a Crash .....	1-73
Retained Accessory Power (RAP) .....	2-19
Roadside	
Assistance Program .....	7-7
Rocking Your Vehicle to Get it Out .....	4-35
Routing, Engine Drive Belt .....	6-16
Running Out of Fuel .....	2-32

## S

Safety Belt	
Reminder Light .....	3-32
Safety Belts	
Care of .....	5-89
How to Wear Safety Belts Properly .....	1-19
Lap-Shoulder Belt .....	1-27
Safety Belt Extender .....	1-32
Safety Belt Use During Pregnancy .....	1-32
Safety Belts Are for Everyone .....	1-14
Safety Warnings and Symbols .....	iii
Scheduled Maintenance .....	6-3
Seatback, Folding Passenger .....	1-10
Seats	
Driver Seat Height Adjuster .....	1-5
Heated Seats .....	1-6
Manual Lumbar .....	1-6
Passenger Folding Seatback .....	1-10
Power Seat .....	1-5
Reclining Seatbacks .....	1-7
Split Folding Rear Seat .....	1-12
Securing a Child Restraint	
Rear Seat Position .....	1-49
Right Front Seat Position .....	1-51
Security Light .....	3-44
Service .....	5-3
Accessories and Modifications .....	5-3
Adding Equipment to the Outside of Your Vehicle .....	5-5
Service (cont.)	
California Perchlorate Materials Requirements ....	5-4
California Proposition 65 Warning .....	5-4
Doing Your Own Work .....	5-4
Engine Soon Light .....	3-41
Publications Ordering Information .....	7-15
Vehicle Soon Light .....	3-47
Service, Scheduling Appointments .....	7-9
Servicing Your Airbag-Equipped Vehicle .....	1-70
Setting the Clock .....	3-53
Sheet Metal Damage .....	5-93
Shifting Into Park (P) .....	2-29
Shifting Out of Park (P) .....	2-31
Signals, Turn and Lane-Change .....	3-7
Spare Tire	
Compact .....	5-86
Installing .....	5-79
Removing .....	5-77
Storing .....	5-85
Specifications, Capacities .....	5-104
Speed Sensitive Power Steering (SSPS)	
Warning Light .....	3-38
Speedometer .....	3-32
Split Folding Rear Seat .....	1-12
Stabilitrak Program Indicator Light, Electronic .....	3-39
Start Vehicle, Remote .....	2-7
Starting the Engine .....	2-20
Steering .....	4-10
Steering Wheel Controls, Audio .....	3-70
Steering Wheel, Tilt Wheel .....	3-6

Storage Areas	
Cargo Management System .....	2-48
Center Console Storage Area .....	2-45
Convenience Net .....	2-47
Cupholders .....	2-44
Front Storage Area .....	2-44
Glove Box .....	2-43
Instrument Panel Storage Area .....	2-44
Luggage Carrier .....	2-46
Rear Seat Armrest .....	2-47
Sunglasses Storage Compartment .....	2-44
Stuck in Sand, Mud, Ice, or Snow .....	4-34
Sun Visors .....	2-14
Sunroof .....	2-49

## T

Tachometer .....	3-32
Taillamps	
Turn Signal, Stoplamps and Back-up Lamps ....	5-48
TCS Warning Light .....	3-39
Theft-Deterrent Systems .....	2-14
Content Theft-Deterrent .....	2-14
PASS-Key <sup>®</sup> III+ Electronic Immobilizer .....	2-16
PASS-Key <sup>®</sup> III+ Electronic Immobilizer	
Operation .....	2-16
Tilt Wheel .....	3-6

Time, Setting .....	3-53
Tire	
Pressure Light .....	3-40
Tires .....	5-51
Aluminum Wheels, Cleaning .....	5-92
Buying New Tires .....	5-68
Chains .....	5-74
Changing a Flat Tire .....	5-76
Cleaning .....	5-92
Compact Spare Tire .....	5-86
Different Size .....	5-70
High-Speed Operation .....	5-59
If a Tire Goes Flat .....	5-75
Inflation - Tire Pressure .....	5-58
Inspection and Rotation .....	5-65
Installing the Spare Tire .....	5-79
Pressure Monitor Operation .....	5-62
Pressure Monitor System .....	5-60
Removing the Flat Tire .....	5-79
Removing the Spare Tire and Tools .....	5-77
Storing a Flat or Spare Tire and Tools .....	5-85
Tire Sidewall Labeling .....	5-52
Tire Terminology and Definitions .....	5-55
Uniform Tire Quality Grading .....	5-70
Wheel Alignment and Tire Balance .....	5-72
Wheel Replacement .....	5-73
When It Is Time for New Tires .....	5-67

Towing	
Recreational Vehicle .....	4-41
Towing a Trailer .....	4-44
Your Vehicle .....	4-41
Traction	
Control System (TCS) .....	4-7
Control System Warning Light .....	3-39
Transmission	
Fluid, Automatic .....	5-22
Transmission Operation, Automatic .....	2-22, 2-25
Trip Odometer .....	3-32
Turn and Lane-Change Signals .....	3-7
Turn Signal/Multifunction Lever .....	3-7

## U

Uniform Tire Quality Grading .....	5-70
Universal Home Remote System .....	2-38
Operation .....	2-39
Using this Manual .....	iii

## V

Vehicle	
Control .....	4-4
Damage Warnings .....	iv
Design .....	4-3
Loading .....	4-35
Service Soon Light .....	3-47
Symbols .....	iv
Vehicle Data Recording and Privacy .....	7-16
Vehicle Identification	
Number (VIN) .....	5-95
Service Parts Identification Label .....	5-95
Vehicle, Remote Start .....	2-7
Ventilation Adjustment .....	3-28
Visors .....	2-14

## W

Warning Lights, Gages and Indicators .....	3-30
Warnings	
Hazard Warning Flashers .....	3-6
Safety and Symbols .....	iii
Vehicle Damage .....	iv
Washer Fluid, Low Warning Light .....	3-46
Wheels	
Alignment and Tire Balance .....	5-72
Different Size .....	5-70
Replacement .....	5-73
Where to Put the Restraint .....	1-41
Windows .....	2-12
Power .....	2-13
Windshield	
Rainsense™ II Wipers .....	3-9
Washer .....	3-10
Washer Fluid .....	5-32

Windshield (cont.)	
Wiper Blade Replacement .....	5-50
Wiper Blades, Cleaning .....	5-91
Wiper Fuses .....	5-96
Wipers .....	3-8
Windshield, Rear Washer/Wiper .....	3-11
Winter Driving .....	4-31
Wiper Activated Headlamps .....	3-14

## X

XM Radio Messages .....	3-68
XM™ Satellite Radio Antenna System .....	3-71

## Y

Your Driving, the Road and Your Vehicle .....	4-2
Your Vehicle and the Environment .....	6-2